



T. W. Gordon.

Geschenk des k. Forstrathes G. Dürig
an die k. Bibliothek.



R. mil.

86⁰₆

1

*Thos Wm Gordon.
Lt 3d Regt.*

RULES AND REGULATIONS
FOR THE
FIELD EXERCISE AND MANŒUVRES
OF THE
FRENCH INFANTRY.

RULES AND REGULATIONS
FOR THE
FIELD EXERCISE AND MANŒUVRES
OF THE
FRENCH INFANTRY,

Issued August 1, 1791.

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH.
IN TWO VOLUMES.

WITH EXPLANATORY NOTES, AND ILLUSTRATIVE REFERENCES TO
THE BRITISH, AND PRUSSIAN SYSTEMS OF TACTICS, &c. &c.

VOLUME I.

———— iracundus, inexorabilis; acer,
Jura negat sibi nata, nihil non arrogat armis.

BY JOHN MACDONALD, Esq. F. R. S. F. Ac. S.

Late Lieutenant Colonel of the Royal Clan Alpin Regiment;
Commandant of the Royal Edinburgh Artillery; and
Captain of the Corps of Engineers on the Bengal Establishment.

LONDON,

PRINTED FOR THE TRANSLATOR, BY A. WILSON, WILD-COURT;
AND TO BE HAD OF T. EGERTON, WHITEHALL; R. FAUL-
DER, BOND-STREET; J. DEBRETT, AND J. HATCHARD,
PICCADILLY; AND W. CREECH, EDINBURGH.

1803.



TO
FIELD MARSHAL
HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS
FREDERICK DUKE OF YORK,
Commander in Chief of His Majesty's Forces,
&c. &c. &c.

SIR,

A PERMISSION to dedicate these Volumes to your Royal Highness, has afforded a gratifying opportunity of recording the respect I feel for a character justly high in the estimation of the British Army. You were called by your Sovereign, whose Throne is founded on the loyalty and attachment of a grateful people, to occupy one of the most important stations under the Crown, at a period when the condition of the army required amelioration, and the judicious application of salutary regulations.

The new-modelling of the Forces of a great and powerful Empire demanded profound reflection, intense study, and a decided procedure, divested of all partial considerations. You had

an arduous and difficult duty to discharge, and you have not disappointed the public expectation. If there is any one sentiment which meets with the general accord more than another, it is that which bears testimony to the wisdom of your conduct, and conveys the praise it merits. An indefatigable zeal to promote the welfare of the army; an unwearied application in expediting duties, by simplifying official-details; and a beneficial promptitude of decision in business, have distinguished your Royal Highness's military arrangements, calculated to obviate defects of an evident description. The establishment of a tactical uniformity in discipline, has been introduced under your auspices, and constitutes one of the prominent features of your administration.

The vast machine of the British Army, voted periodically in a free nation, moves with a regularity and efficacy hitherto unknown, and rather wished for than expected. The springs of its action, skilfully and ably regulated by your comprehensive mind, are calculated to produce a result ascertained by multiplying promptitude into power, judiciously applied.

Professional merit and military talents of every description experience from you, Sir, kind attention, and marked encouragement. Length of service, when unaccompanied by abilities, meets from your Royal Highness, with as much indulgence as the good of the service can, consistently, authorize.

The crying evil arising from premature and hasty promotion, you have removed : and have, thus, rendered a lasting and effectual service to your country. You early saw that extreme youth and advanced rank were incompatible, and might be attended with consequences detrimental to the best interests of the state. Hence originated the salutary checks you have established to prevent a rapidity of promotion, that would have been unsanctioned by the requisite degree of professional experience.

Every department of the Army, following the precepts and example given by your Royal Highness, is systematically arranged, methodically regulated, and ably conducted.

How

How far the ardour of your military character has been felt and imitated, let the recent brilliant, and unparalleled actions of the army tell. The celebrity of such distinguished achievements Britain proudly contemplates. Their renown cannot exceed the truth :—

“ ————— Viresque acquirit eundo;”

every additional narration reflects new lustre on them.

The dissemination of military knowledge forcibly arrests the attention of your Royal Highness. An object of such general utility you are known to promote with unremitting care, and to patronize and encourage all such, however feeble their efforts, who exert themselves in contributing to this purpose.

No species of military knowledge can be reckoned of greater importance, or more useful, than that which puts the army in possession of the Tactics, internal discipline, and elementary instruction of the Forces of the most inveterate and dangerous enemy of Britain. To oppose, effectually,

tually, the operation of any military system, it is indispensably necessary that its principles and modes of action should be developed, explained, and made generally known, through the medium of publication. Impressed with this conviction, I entered on the present undertaking. After passing nineteen years in a foreign service, (if the East India Company's may be termed such,) I had the honour of continuing in his Majesty's during a period of five years. I omitted no opportunity, at home or abroad, of prosecuting my inquiries into the state of French tactics, and of procuring authentic information on so interesting a subject.

I have, now, the honour of submitting to your Royal Highness, and the British Army, the result of my labour; and feel a humble confidence that I have directed my attention, inquiries, and time, to the accomplishment of a laudable object, if effected—*that of adding my mite to the general stock of military knowledge.*

It has been, during the course of the revolutionary war, a prevalent opinion, that the move-
ments

ments of the French Army were not regulated by any fixed military principles. To ascertain, clearly, so very important a circumstance as the truth, or reverse of this supposition, I repaired to their armies, and conversed with their officers.— The *fact* appears to be, that the system of tactics which I have translated, is ordered to be strictly followed throughout the French Army. Proficiency in military science by a perpetual enemy, must be always deemed a subject of considerable interest in this country, and it excites not a little surprise, that this work has not been communicated to the Public at an earlier period.

I have the honour to remain,

With the utmost deference and respect,

YOUR ROYAL HIGHNESS'S

Most devoted, and

Faithful humble Servant,

JOHN MACDONALD.

Kingsburgh, Monmouthshire, Oct. 1, 1803.

P R E F A C E,

BY THE

TRANSLATOR.

“ La guerre est un métier pour les ignorans,

“ Et une science pour les habiles gens.”

CHEVALIER DE FOLARD.

London, October 10, 1803.

THE Grecian and Roman Republics rose to an unparalleled pre-eminence in arms and the fine arts, by the cultivation of science, an enthusiastic attachment to liberty, and a superiority in military knowledge. The barbarian nations were incapable of opposing their steady discipline. A handful of Tacticians discomfited the numberless forces of Xerxes; and the disciplined mercenaries of Hannibal, the greatest general of his day, yielded to the powerful efficacy of Roman tactics *. The accidental discovery of gunpowder by a Monk in the middle of the fourteenth century,

* *Tactics*, derived from the Greek *τάξις*, from *ΤΑΣΣΩ* vel *TATTΩ*, *ordino, colloco, statuo*, to place, or arrange.

century, constituted a new epoch in the science of war. The destructive effect of artillery required a reduction of the depth of formation of the Roman legion, and missile weapons and pikes* were replaced by the musquet and bayonet. Gustavus Adolphus may be justly regarded as the parent of modern tactics. He modified the Grecian and Roman systems, and adapted them to the species of armour

* The *pike* is the *sarissa* of the Macedonians, and the *basta* of the Romans. The French derived the use of this formidable weapon from the Swiss, about the time of Louis IX. The Swiss, after shaking off the yoke of the House of Austria, made use of pikes in modern war, as a defence against the Austrian cavalry. The pike was laid aside in the reign of Louis XIV, and was succeeded by the bayonet; which was, at first, fixed in the barrel, and afterwards, by means of a socket. It is a question by no means decided, whether bows, arrows, and pikes are, or are not, more serviceable weapons than the musquet and bayonet. Officers of repute argue the point variously. The advantage of fire-arms can, however, hardly admit of dispute. Doctor Franklin, writing to General Lee, relative to a scarcity of fire-arms, says, "but I wish with you, that pikes could be introduced, and I would add, bows and arrows; these were good weapons, not wisely laid aside." Pikes (*limiting* their manufacture) might, joined to a pistol, *be always* an eligible weapon for a *part* of the volunteer force. The ancient-pike-exercise is useless. That in the military catechism published at Leipsic, in 1794, is, by much, too complicated. The translator had the honour to command a fine corps of artillery, consisting of gentlemen of Edinburgh. They were armed with pikes, with the approbation of Sir Ralph Abercrombie of immortal memory. The translator wrote a treatise on some practical and theoretical parts of artillery, for the use of his corps only. This treatise contains a new drag-rope-exercise, and a pike-exercise, simple, and readily acquired, with the motions corresponding to those of the manual-exercise.

mour in use, to recent inventions, and to the general prejudices which pervaded society. The improvements and innovations which he introduced into the military art, were attended with a degree of astonishment proportioned to the victories they ensured. With inferior forces he overran Germany, defeated armies commanded by the greatest generals of that age, and shewed the ascendancy of genius over the barbarous and uninformed habits of the times he lived in. It was reserved for Frederic the Great to see the defects of existing systems, and his extraordinary talents enabled him to remedy them by important and decisive improvements. He had nearly lost the battle of Mollvitz by a close imitation of the favourite order of battle of Gustavus Adolphus. He discovered that ancient tactics had been ill understood, or injudiciously applied; and added, or re-formed the application of the Roman art of movement and manœuvre. He saw that cavalry are better calculated for offensive, than defensive operations; for making, than sustaining an attack; and that the spur tends as much to overthrow an enemy, as the sword to complete his defeat. Unnecessary intervals betwixt squadrons he abolished; and established rapid attacks in full lines, where velocity multiplied into momentum, produced advantages followed up by reserves. In the campaigns of 1757, 1758, and 1759, against the Russians, he found that they made use of a species of horse-artillery. He introduced this improvement in 1759,

which enabled his armies to move with a rapidity and effect hitherto unknown. No European power has derived more important advantages from this new artillery than the French, who make use of eight-pounders, and six-inch-howitzers, attended by light caissons, and mounted artillery-men. The British horse-artillery is brought to great perfection; but it ought to be heavier, or of larger caliber, more numerous, and accompanied with more howitzers.

The king of Prussia's discernment pointed out to him the inconvenience arising from tedious formations in the processional manner. His sagacity suggested to him that before a disposition could be changed, by relative motions of lines, on the principles then acted on, the decisive moment of action was lost in explaining new and necessary arrangements, without which the order of the whole would be endangered. The remedy he derived from the resources of an extraordinary genius. It consisted chiefly in the application of the marching and close column, combined with attacks in great echellons. Simplicity and generality of principle, founded on the regularity of science, form the leading features of the Prussian system, the movements of which have been very frequently successful in the face of an enemy. The ancients enjoyed the tactical advantage of performing their evolutions close to the enemy. The destructive effect of artillery refuses this advantage to the modern General. The king
of

of Prussia commenced the war of seven years with a decided partiality for the manœuvre of extensive deployment close to the enemy. The loss occasioned by this evolution, at the battles of Lowositz, Reichenberg, and Great Jagerndorf, gave rise to distant deployments, and subsequent advancement in line ; or to other eligible modes of formation.

It has been frequently asserted by those uninformed on this subject, that the French have no regular system of tactics. Their uncommon success on the continent has been ascribed to power of numbers,—a revolutionary spirit,—rewarding and promoting military merit,—a system of terror,—and treachery in the ranks of their continental enemies.—Many, and probably all of these causes, operated powerfully in aid of a system of tactics mathematically accurate, uncommonly correct in arrangement, clearly and minutely described in detail, and simple when reduced to practice. The French system of tactics was composed from the compared experience of centuries ; was issued under the monarchy ; and during the revolutionary war, has been acted on, and adhered to, without undergoing any material alteration. Many of the general principles are analogous to those of the Prussian movements ; but it will appear, on a perusal of these volumes, that the French tactics are more peculiar and unique, than borrowed, or founded on others : that they possess all the advantages of foreign systems, by the introduction of similar principles simplified in their

application : and that the movements resulting from the operation of these principles, are safe, the shortest leading to the object in view, and, obviously, the least complex. The primary principle in all tactics is strictly adhered to, viz. *that of moving over the shortest possible line, in the shortest space of time, with the least degree of bodily motion, consistent with the maintenance of ensemble, regularity, and order, during the movement that is executing.* This rule affords a test for ascertaining comparative excellence in tactics ; and the inferences will be just, from being founded in science. There may be many modes of executing the same manœuvre, but there can be only *one* that may be deemed the best and most eligible. Independent of considerations of physical power, and particular habits of action, the movement combining rapidity and facility with security, connection, and compact order, directed on fixed points, will, ultimately, prove successful. Hence European nations have, at all times, borrowed from the systems of each other, and grafted on their own, such improvements as they deemed calculated to give to their tactics a character of superior excellence. These occasional meliorations, sanctioned by authority, and introduced with a judicious reference to national character and prejudices, improve the science of war, establish a military balance of power, and ensure the relative security of nations. General Dundas's principles of military movements, illustrated by manœuvres of the Prussian

sian

sian troops, published in 1788, gave rise to the British *Rules and Regulations*, which have produced a beneficial uniformity, and established fixed principles previously wanting in the discipline and movements of the army. The British tactics are principally deduced from the Prussian art of war. Though there is a difference in the application of principles, whoever attentively compares both, will discover a striking similarity between the general structure, arrangement, manner, turn of expression, precepts, and reasoning, in the British and French *Rules and Regulations*. There is in the two works, a *concordia discors*, which, when intimately examined, will be found to involve a difference more in minute method and detail of description, than in general matter common to both. It is like a picture of the same object taken by two painters, in different distant points of view. With a variation in the particular application of general rules, the spirit of execution remains the same in both systems. To prove the reality of this concordance, where there may be an apparent difference, we will take the instance in our tactics, of the wheel on a moveable pivot, and demonstrate the impossibility of effecting it, unless the files, successively, and rapidly, move on the principle of the French wheel in open column, made on the pivot-flank (*sur le côté du guide*): or, unless the officer describing the smaller curve takes, conformable to the French mode, steps of such diminished length, as will enable the files describing

the relative greater concentric curves, to conform, so as to maintain the dressing, or alignment, during the wheel. When the officer marches over the larger curve, the British rules (Sections 22, 52, 80,) direct, that he shall not alter either the rate of march, or length of step; and that the other flank (meaning all the other files) having less ground to go over, shall take steps of proportional diminished length. The French rule is deduced from the same principle, with the advantage of directing the file on the smaller curve to take, in open column, steps of six inches.—When on the contrary, the pivot-officer describes the *lesser curve*, the British rules direct him to march also, *without altering in the least, the time, or length of his pace*; and the other files *to conform, on the principle of dressing, by quickening the time, and stepping out*.—It remains to be made out, by the projection of a figure, and a few simple calculations, that, in this latter instance, the files towards the major curve, cannot conform their steps to those of the officer describing the lesser curve, by lengthening their steps to the utmost possible stretch in quickest time: and that, therefore, *on the principle of dressing* (which always supposes successive formations to a *point of appui*) the files must dress up, *successively, during the wheel*, on the French principle, so as to be reformed, and ready to move on, together, in the new direction, on receiving the word, “*forward*.”—The wheel on a moveable pivot is used, “when a column of march, on a small front

front (in order to follow the windings of a route) changes its direction, in general, less than the quarter-circle." Let aen be the old, and eh , the new direction, forming an angle hef , of 35° , with fe perpendicular to the old direction.—Let the subdivision 1, be supposed the front rank of the leading subdivision of a column with the right in front.—Let the subdivision consisting of twelve file-leaders, be supposed arrived at b , where the wheel on a moveable pivot is to commence; and let this point b , be supposed distant from the point of intersection of the two directions, half the extent of the front of the subdivision.—Let BC be the larger curve described, and bd the smaller concentric curve described round, or from the common centre A . The radius Ab , the minor curve bd , and the major curve BC , must be found by calculation.— be equal to the front of six files occupying, each, a space of twenty-two inches, is given.—The angle gem (the complement to a quadrant mt) of 35 degrees, being added to the right angle mer , and the half of the sum being taken, will give the angle $Aeb = 62^\circ 30'$. Because the four angles of the trapezium $Abcd$, are $=$ to 4 right angles, take away the constant right angles Abe , and Ade , and the $\angle hen$ (the complement to two right angles of the obtuse angle ach formed by the two directions) will be equal to the angle at the centre bAd , the half of which is $= \angle bAe$. In the right-angled triangle Abe , we have all the angles, and

and the base $b e =$ to six files, or 132 inches, to find the perpendicular $A b$. The statement will be,

As sine of $e A b, = 27^{\circ} 30' = \log^m. S. = 9.6644056$

Is to $b e, = 132$ inches, $= \log^m. = 2.1205736$

So is sine of $A e b, = 62^{\circ} 30' = \log^m. S. = 9.9479289$

12.0685025

9.6644056

To radius $A b, = 254$ inch. $= \log^m. = 2.4040969$

The diameter, therefore, of the circle of which $b d$ is a part of the circumference, will be twice $254 = 508$. To find the circumference, as

1 : 3.14159 :: 508.

508

2513272

15707950

1595.92772 = circumfer.

The angle at the centre $b A d$ is $=$ to twice $27^{\circ} 30' = 55$ degrees. If 360 degrees are equal to the whole circumference, 55 degrees will be subtended by the arc $b d$, equal to 243.6 inches. 243.6 divided by 30 inches, will give 8 steps (and an inconsiderable fraction,) which the officer, No. 1, moving over the lesser curve, will take to pass over it, *without the least alteration of the rate of march, or length of the ordinary step of 30 inches.*

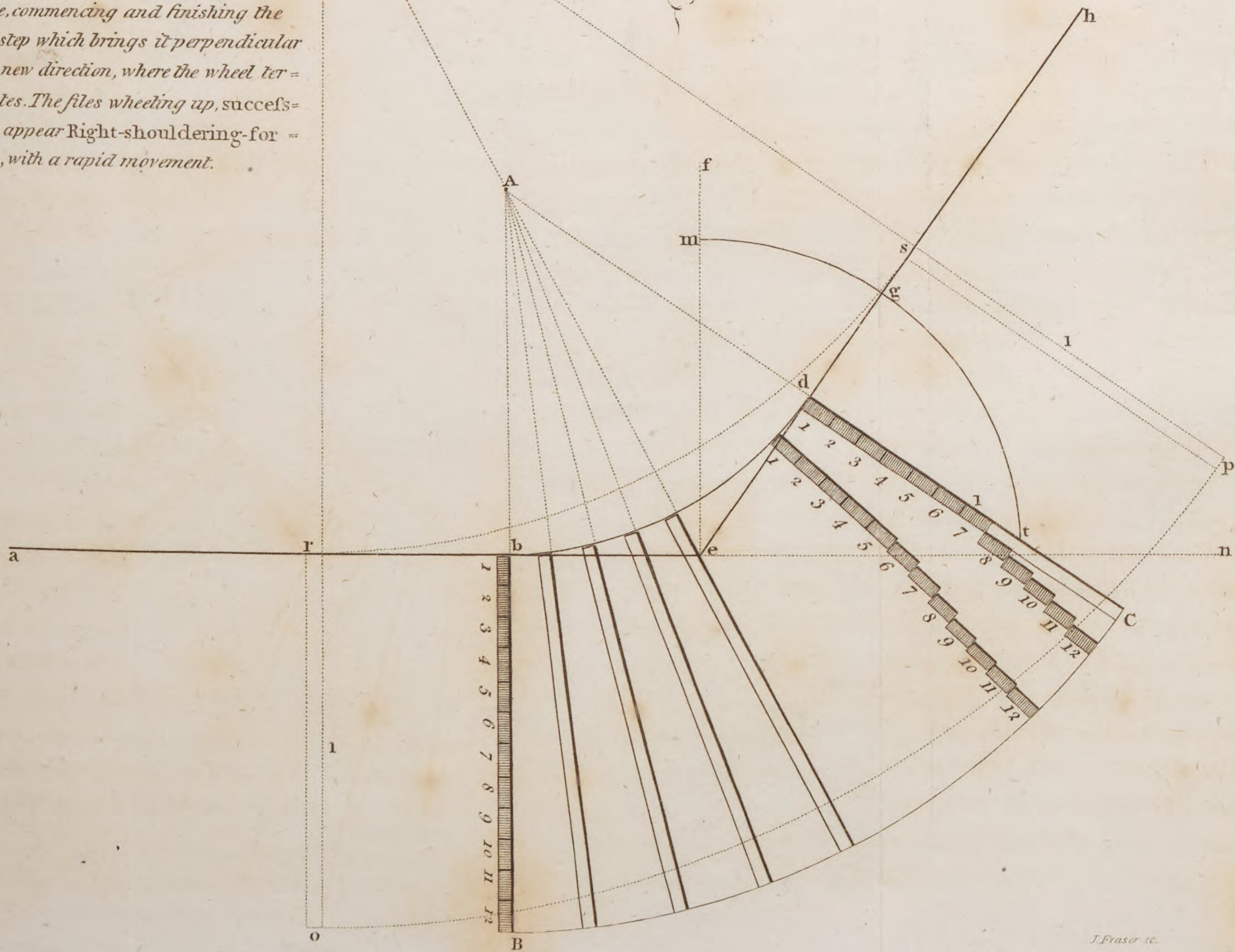
The

PLATE for the PREFACE

by the

Translator

N.B. To render the representation distinct, one rank, only, is represented wheeling, on a moveable pivot, on the principle of dressing. The rank appears in the figure, commencing and finishing the last step which brings it perpendicular to the new direction, where the wheel terminates. The files wheeling up, successively, appear Right-shouldering-forward, with a rapid movement.



The radius A b, has been found to be = 254 inches. Add to this the length of the subdivision 1, of 12 files, allowing twenty-two inches for each file, and the radius, A B, of the concentric circle, will be ascertained. From having the radius, the circumference will be found to be 3254 inches, and the curve, B C, which subtends the angle at the centre B A C, will prove to be 497 inches, which, divided by eight (the number of steps of 30 inches taken by the pivot officer describing the lesser curve) will give the number of inches in each *corresponding step* to be taken by the file-leader, No. 12, who moves over the larger curve B C, on the supposition of maintaining uniformity of front during the wheel, by stepping out with a quickened pace. The length of step to be taken by the outer file-leader will be 62 inches *. By calculating as above, it will appear, that the second and third files, *only*, can maintain their dressing, or line during the wheel; and to effect this, the third file must take steps of 38.3 inches. All the other files must, necessarily, be retired farther, and farther, from the front of the officer; and two files only can be able to continue wheeling on

* Strictly reasoning, it is the cord of the curve of each step which the foot moves over; but the curve, and cord subtending it, approximate so nearly to equality, as almost to coincide. At every step taken in wheeling, the radius of the circle is a tangent to the projecting point of the breast of the pivot officer, who turns a little in his described arc, in planting each foot. Every step, is, therefore, nearly a straight line, on this principle; or a mixed curve, if the body turns in the arc, when the foot is in the air. From either consideration, no sensible error arises in the demonstration, or calculation.

on an uniform front. All the file-leaders and files, excepting three, (including the officer and his covering serjeant) must, unavoidably, break, at the first step of the wheel, and by wheeling, separately, in quickest time, must regain their front, towards the conclusion of the wheel. In taking the seventh step, five files, as represented in the figure, will be probably formed up. When the last step is taking by the officer and files reformed, the remaining files are moving quickly up to be ready to march on, arranged in uniform front, side by side, in the new direction, at the word, *forward*. The figure represents this conclusion of the wheel, at the moment when the outer five files are forming rapidly up. The figure also shews the position of the subdivision, after taking the first four steps, on the erroneous supposition that *all* the files, in wheeling, could maintain their front-dressing, and that the outer file could possibly step *sixty-two inches*. The inference to be drawn from what has been stated, and delineated, is, that the British Rules, in directing this species of wheel to be made *on the principle of dressing*, (always supposing *successive formation*) *evidently means*, that the wheel is to be conducted as described in page 101 and following, and represented in figure 2, plate VIII. of French Tactics. From the habit of wheeling on a halted pivot, subdivisions advance *nearer* to the point of intersection than is here represented, before the wheel commences. This will increase still more the difference between the two curves,

curves, and will add to the difficulty, or rather confirm the impossibility of maintaining uniformity of front, when the pivot-officer moves over the lesser curve with *steps of 30 inches*. The angle in which the direction is changed, the number of files in the subdivision, and the distance of commencement of wheel from the point of intersection, have been assumed under a medium-consideration, in order to render the reasoning fair, and the conclusions just. Supposing the wheel to commence at r, or subdivision distance from e, it will appear, that by comparing the relative dimensions of the dotted curves r s, and o p, the file 12 would have steps of about 44 inches to take in attempting to preserve uniformity of front in wheeling. It may be said here, that the files, when wheeling on a moveable pivot, do not break, and form up, as described. They do not, and the reason is obvious.—The pivot officer, when describing the lesser curve, *does not*, as directed, take steps of 30 inches, but naturally enough, *conforms his step*, on the French principle, to those of the file describing the major-curve. We are not here attempting, nor is it our wish to introduce any innovations. Every intelligent officer will immediately perceive that existing practices are reconciled by the general scope of the above reasoning. The British system of tactics is copious and minute, and an officer who is perfectly master of it, can never be at a loss in throwing a body of men into any shape which exigency of situation may require ; but to say that

it is not susceptible of farther improvements, and that it does not require the farther amelioration of method, arrangement, simplicity, abbreviation, or additions, would be assertions equally unwarrantable and absurd. Sciences and arts are progressive. When longitude can be ascertained with the same facility as latitude; when the transmutation of metals, and a perpetual motion are discovered; when the hidden causes of the attraction and variation of the magnetic needle, and of the daily variation of the variation*, are ascertained, a *maximum* in scientific knowledge may not be very far distant. As things are, discoveries and inventions must be continually increasing the general stock of human knowledge. The science of tactics, like those of magnetism and electricity, may be yet in its infancy. Being founded on the doctrine of lines and angles, combined with common curves, it has a fairer chance, from its simplicity, of attaining to perfection at an earlier period than others, the theories of which are merely hypothetical. By comparing the extant systems, the imperfections of each may be ascertained, and improvements

* See two papers written by the Translator, in the Philosophical Transactions of 1796 and 1798, "On the Diurnal Variation of the Magnetic Needle, at Fort Marlborough, on the island of Sumatra, and on the island of St. Helena," with some reasoning on the cause of that wonderful and unaccountable phenomenon; and an account of the process of laying off a meridian, as necessarily connected with the observations of variation. These papers are mentioned to justify assertion, and in order to shew that the science of magnetism is still in its infancy, and unfounded on any rational theory, or even on a tolerable conjectural hypothesis.

provements in each may result from a general and intimate collation of the whole. One system may be too complex, or deficient in the application of science to the principles it details ; another may be defective in arrangement of matter, in mathematical accuracy, and military style of language ; and a third may be redundant in matter, desultory in manner, devoid of precision of method, and either too copious or too concise in description. It is by a critical examination, and an accurate investigation of existing theories, that these varying, important, and essential considerations can be reduced to one uniform standard, *adapted to national character*, excluding all obvious imperfections, and adopting all that may be founded on science and experience. It is, principally, by making foreign systems generally known that this can be effected. To the laborious and able researches and studies of a British general-officer of distinguished talents and merit, the army is indebted for a system of tactics sanctioned by authority. Many may suggest what might not occur to an individual, and the military discussions of enlightened officers of rank, would afford results productive of incalculable advantage to the science of tactics. This consideration naturally points (with submission it is mentioned) to the establishment of a perpetual BOARD OF TACTICS, consisting of General-officers selected by, and acting under the directions and controul of the Commander in Chief. The

object of this useful board might be, to improve the system of tactics by occasional revisals ; to receive and decide on the merits of all communications tending to promote this object ; to encourage all attempts of such a description ; to stimulate latent talents scattered over the vast mass of the army, to professional reflection ; to concentrate into general utility, practical knowledge and theoretic ideas floating and lost in oral remarks ; and above all, to compare intimately, foreign systems with the British, in order to ascertain such ameliorations as might from time to time be eligible. The *Board of Tactics* might embrace a variety of other important considerations attached to the welfare of the army ; such as improvements in artillery, in the armour, camp equipage, accoutrements, clothing, internal economy, and discipline of the troops ; occasional animadversion to the comfort and convenience of detachments embarked on board of transports ; and considerations of local, and general topography. The labours of this important board would amply merit the remuneration of liberal salaries to the members composing it ; and a small portion of the public money could not be better appropriated. The military despotism established in a neighbouring Republic renders it more than heretofore necessary, that the art of war, in all its branches, should be cultivated with unremitting care ; and that the martial spirit of the nation should be *perpetually* sustained by the
confi-

confidence of discipline applied, systematically, to the general mass of the people able to bear arms* .

The formidable aggrandizement of France, and her repeated professed designs of destroying the constitution and liberties of this country, fully justify unprecedented exertions commensurate to the danger. The treaty of Amiens, so much decried, has unmasked the views of the enemy; and has, after a long and successful war, attended with a dereliction of the cause, by Prussia and Russia, afforded a lull, a pause, and a breathing time, which have renovated the exhausted spirit of the nation, and will enable her to meet and terminate the contest with invigorated powers, new resources, and a magnitude of effort and operation beyond all former example. The military spirit of Rome fell with her freedom. Britain alone, where all have a share in the formation and execution of free and equal laws, shews to the appalled nations of Europe the sublime spectacle of a million † of freemen in arms, vindicating the insulted rights of humanity, and

c 2

preserving

* “ Walled towns, (says Lord Bacon, in the quaint, but expressive language of former times) stored arsenals and armouries, goodly races of horses, chariots of war, elephants, ordnance, artillery, and the like; all this is but a sheep in a lion’s skin, except the breed and *disposition* of the people be *stout* and *warlike*.”

† History records what *volunteers* have atchieved in arms. Volunteers opposed, and ultimately defeated the veterans of Charles V. The Hugonots and volunteers of the Netherlands repeatedly routed regular

regular

preserving the established privileges of civilized society.

It must, however, be recollected, that the enemy we contend with has numerous armies well-disciplined, under the influence of tactics of no common accuracy. The intentions of an enemy are generally made manifest, from the nature of previous movements. Without an accurate knowledge of his system of tactics, no proper estimate can be formed of the prior dispositions and designs which lead to the ultimate attack. Influenced by such important considerations, the officers of the British army have, recently, directed their attention to the study of French tactics. To facilitate, and to render general this useful pursuit, the following translation is now offered to the public.

The French army is ordered by its despotic commander,

regular armies. In the end of the 16th century, the volunteers of Ireland, successfully, combated the French, under James II. though aided by the Catholics. Bunker's Hill, Lexington, Charles Town, and Saratoga, have witnessed what volunteers can effect. The battle of Jemappe was gained by volunteers animated by a love of liberty which a tyrant has converted into a military despotism. Volunteers drove the Spaniards of Philip II. out of Holland, and by actions scarcely surpassed in ancient times, finally established the liberties of that unfortunate country. If there is on earth a character more transcendently pre-eminent than another, it is that of William Pitt, the son of Chatham. His vigilance and vigour, equalled only by his incorrupt integrity and wonderful talents, saved his country from the miseries of revolutionary horror. Volunteers will feel a dignified pride to see associated with them in arms, the first character of this, or any other age.

mander, to adhere to these *rules and regulations*, without deviating from them in any degree *. Their officers are examined periodically, relative to their acquirements in theoretical and practical military knowledge. The superior officers, subalterns, and non-commissioned officers are required to be thoroughly acquainted with the *rules and regulations* now translated ; and their promotion depends, in a very great measure, on the favourable and frequent reports made of their progress in professional knowledge. Regiments in garrison, or lying in quarters, are kept in high discipline by unremitting practice

c 3

of

* “ *De l'examen, sur le terrain, de l'instruction pratique du Corps.*”

“ L'Inspecteur fera rassembler le corps sur un terrain assez vaste, pour qu'il puisse manœuvrer. Il examinera si les manœuvres sont ponctuellement exécutées dans l'infanterie, d'après le *Règlement du 1 Août, 1791*, (*meaning the work now translated*). Il étendra cet examen depuis l'école du soldat jusqu'à celle du bataillon ; et pour s'assurer de nouveau si chaque officier, et sous-officier connaît parfaitement, non seulement ce qu'il doit faire dans son grade, mais ce qu'il doit pratiquer dans celui auquel il pourra monter ; ou dont il pourra momentanément remplir les fonctions ; il les fera varier, dans la manœuvre, et dans la pratique, d'un grade à l'autre.”

“ *De l'examen des connaissances théoriques des officiers et sous-officiers, dans toutes les parties des lois et réglemens militaires.* L'Inspecteur fera rassembler chez lui, les officiers, et sous-officiers ; il les questionnera, alternativement, sur les connaissances théoriques qu'ils doivent avoir, chacun dans son grade ; des dispositions des lois, et réglemens que l'on va citer.”

INDICATION.

“ *Des lois, réglemens, et arrêtés, sur lesquels les officiers, et sous-officiers devront être interrogés.*”

“ *Règlement*”

of manœuvres and field-exercise: and the commanding officers are held deeply responsible for the state of discipline, internal economy, regularity, and order of their brigades, regiments, battalions, companies, and recruits. Brigades are assembled, *at periods least expected*, to be practised in the higher branches

“Règlement ci-dessus cité, du premier Août (meaning this work) relatif aux exercices et manœuvres.”

“Règlement provisoire sur le service de l'infanterie en campagne, du 5 Avril 1792.”

“Règlemens concernant le service interieur, la police, et la discipline de l'infanterie, du 4 Juin 1792.”

See *“Instruction pour les revues d'inspection générale des troupes d'infanterie, et de cavalerie de la Republique.”*

The three last-mentioned small works contain about 320 pages, duodecimo. They detail much highly useful matter applicable to any army, and relating to internal economy, and duties in the field, garrison, and quarters. These useful works will be, probably, translated, and published in one small volume.

Early in May, an intention was announced, when leisure would admit of it, of translating, in addition to the above small works, a duodecimo-volume of 203 pages, entitled *“Instruction concernant le service de l'infanterie légère en campagne.”* A translation of it came out, by authority, in September. Had the translator of the French tactics known that the work had been undertaken, he would not, on any account, have animadverted to it, in any communication whatever. Circumstances of a similar description frequently occur, without any intention of anticipation. An admirable work on the field-duties of light troops, was published in France some years ago. It is entitled, *“Instruction destinée aux troupes légères, et aux officiers qui servent dans les avant-postes, rédigée sur une instruction de Frederic II. à ses officiers de cavalerie.”* It has run through several editions, is applicable to both cavalry and light infantry, and any officer who can find time to translate it, would render an essential service to the army.

branches of tactics. The slightest fault, or deficiency, does not remain overlooked: no high studied complimentary orders are issued, unless justly merited. Excellence and proficiency meet with due encouragement: movements are minutely examined by the *standard of this work*: and full, detailed, and impartial reports are made of the *real state* of discipline. Numerous detachments march to considerable distances, practising the evolutions of grand tactics, on the supposition of the presence of an enemy. The soldiers are kept constantly on the alert, and feel little or no difference between peace and war, excepting the substitution of ball for blank cartridges. It is to be lamented that this mischievous activity is not exerted in a better cause; and that it has for its object, the total subversion of all social order, and the gratification of the inordinate ambition of a foreign usurper, the hero of *Acre* and *Jaffa*, whose height I estimated, when I saw him in the *Place de Carousel*, probably rather highly, at five feet three inches and a quarter. The cold and melancholy desperation, depicted in a cadaverous countenance, drew away my attention from an insignificant figure.

Writers on the art of war, and military characters of distinguished eminence, have always recommended the study of mathematics, in all its branches, as necessary to constitute a completely instructed officer. To be thoroughly grounded in this science is indispensably requisite for engineers, and artillery-officers,

officers, and their education is calculated accordingly. It is not expected that officers of infantry and cavalry should be equally conversant in the abstruse and abstract parts of mathematics. All tacticians agree, that officers of these descriptions ought to possess a competent knowledge of this science, inclusive of practical geometry, the collateral branches on which it is founded, and a thorough skill in the use of instruments, and their ready application to plain, and astronomical surveying. A moderate degree of information in the theory and practice of gunnery, and fortification, cannot, certainly, be attained without considerable study; but continual occasions occur, where instruction in these branches proves of vast use and importance, and recommends to immediate notice. Field-engineering demands no intense application, and opportunities of displaying an acquaintance with this plain and useful science, perpetually present themselves in the field. There are few officers in the British service who do not now, if not previously instructed, direct their attention to these essential studies. This, and a recently established institution, will, more than heretofore, join the beneficial operation of professional and scientific acquirements, to the distinguished intrepidity, military enthusiasm, and enterprizing spirit and zeal of the officers of the British army. The resolute and steady courage of our soldiers, thus guided and directed, will ever sustain a character high among

among surrounding nations, distinguished in the annals of fame, and not less remarkable for prowess and gallantry in the field, than for the exercise of beneficence and every manly virtue in the hour of peace. The achievements of the British navy are infinitely beyond all praise. A series of brilliant and splendid victories stand unrivalled in the pages of modern history; and the heroism of single actions has not a parallel in the records of antiquity. Naval tactics have risen almost to their acme of perfection. With such an army, and such a navy, actuated by loyalty to the best of Sovereigns; attached to an Heir-apparent of high accomplishment and promise, a Prince who is the pride of the nation; defending a constitution founded on the best experience of past ages; and animated by a high sense of patriotism and honour; what has the free and united kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland to dread, while her councils are guided by integrity, ability and wisdom? *Nothing*—she securely, as she has hitherto done, bids a proud defiance to the united efforts of the world, *feeling as she ought*, how highly distinguished she pre-eminently stands, as the best, the wisest, the wealthiest, and the most favoured of Nations.

Officers in foreign services have long been in habits of repairing to the scene where military experience in the wars of other nations, was to be obtained. Many officers in the British service have imitated this example, founded on a sensible conviction,

viction,

viſtion, that he who joins the reſult of actual experience to accuracy of knowledge of detail of exerciſe in peace, takes the field perfectly at his eaſe, and devoid of the embarraſſment ariſing from inexperience *. Where it may be inconvenient to have reſource to actual warfare, military institutions offer the beſt remedy which can be applied. To the very aſſiduous attention of the commander in chief, in promoting, invariably, the beſt intereſts of the British army, the military college recently eſtabliſhed owes its origin. The ſcientific inſtruction, and formation of officers in this ſchool ſo long wanted, will, in ſome meaſure, ſtand in lieu of experience, and introduce into military operations a high degree of tactical precision.

The translator proceeded to France when the excellent Highland regiment he belonged to was diſbanded,

* Il eſt facile que l'on ſe croye militaire en s'attachant en tems de paix, aux minuties néceſſaires au ſervice, mais bien différentes du talent de la guerre, comme le peuple confond l'image avec l'objet qu'elle repreſente. On a remarqué qu'en général, les officiers les plus brillans en tems de paix, ne corréſpondent pas, durant la guerre, à ce qu'ils avoient fait attendre d'eux: un officier de cette claſſe qui a ſervi pendant vingt ou trente ans, a de la peine à changer ſes habitudes pacifiques: il hait la guerre: on fait mal les choſes pour les quelles on n'a pas de goût. Hormis les génies vraiment militaires, ceux qui commencent la guerre dans des grades ſupérieurs, ſont embarraſſés; ils le ſeroient à ſe conduire eux-mêmes, et ils doivent conduire les autres."

See page 90, "Caractère militaire des Armées Européennes," translated by an officer who has written ſome uſeful works.

banded, in consequence of the peace of Amiens. His immediate object was, a minute and diligent inquiry into the present state of French tactics, and to witness their actual application to the evolutions and manœuvres of the armies of the French Republic. He found their tactics so extremely accurate, and so thoroughly and systematically founded on science, that he deemed it his duty to his Sovereign and to his Country, to give them publicity. The methodical arrangement of the work, offers a standard and model for compositions of this description. It proceeds in a regular connected gradation, from the first position of the recruit, to the complicated evolutions of the line. The references made in the progress of the work, to rules and principles previously established, enable the reader to comprehend clearly, what he is immediately considering, and to retain what he has already perused. The manual and platoon-exercises differ more from the British, than other parts of the system*: but
the

* The Spaniards, whose infantry was then the best in Europe, are supposed to have first made use of musquets. Prince Maurice of Nassau, justly called "the Reviver of the Military Discipline of the Ancients," invented the manual-exercise, or rather improved the Spanish exercise. The French, ever ready to claim the honour of inventions, have owned that they learned the use of the musquet from the Spaniards; and that they had not any regular system of exercise till they received it from the Dutch, whose heroic deeds, under the above great captain, are honourably narrated in history. When matchlocks were succeeded by firelocks, Frederick-William I. abolished the wide and uncouth motions of the matchlocks, modifying

the general degree of similarity is such, that British officers will derive information and advantage from a studied and close comparison of the English and French rules and regulations.

On many occasions, it may prove of essential importance to be thoroughly acquainted with the French words of command, both of *precaution* and *execution*. In perusing works on tactics, a knowledge of their meaning is indispensable ; and in the field, momentous consequences may frequently arise from being conversant in these, as it were, *texts* of the science of movement. Influenced by these considerations, the *French words of command*, whether of *precaution*, *illustration*, or *execution*, are inserted, immediately annexed to their corresponding import in the language of English tactics.

To enable the officers of the British army *readily* to compare the corresponding (S) sections of both systems,

modifying them into a musquet manual-exercise, afterwards further improved by Frederick the Great. In the year 1757, the King of France directed a certain number of general officers to compose, each a manual and platoon exercise. When they respectively performed their assigned tasks, it was left to Marshal Saxe to review parties instructed in each exercise, and to decide which would be the most eligible to adopt. He declared in favour of the present system, nearly, as it approached to that used by the Prussians. In the year 1757, we had a manual exercise introduced which resembled the Prussian only in the closeness of the motions, and in the firing and loading parts. This exercise has been advantageously altered by his Royal Highness the Duke of York, and rendered capable of greater quickness and effect than the former system was susceptible of.

systems, and to trace the correspondence between them in various respects, *Sections, numbers, and paragraphs*, in the *British Rules*, where they have an intimate, or certain *bearing* on the subject, are referred to at the bottom of the page, but without entering into a comparison, or forming any estimate of relative excellence.

There are no notes attached to the French Rules and Regulations; *all written are by the Translator*. Whether they are of any interest and utility, the intelligent reader will judge. The substance of works referred to is condensed into notes. Quotations would have swelled the work beyond a portable size: they are given only in some instances, where the sense was prominent and striking.

A technical description of delineated movements, a minute detail of primary rules and elementary principles, and a laboured, but correct application of these to the tactics of the line, excluded a loose and figurative, and demanded a close and literal translation. Expression for expression has been rendered, and the number of lines in the prototype and copy, of similar size, nearly correspond. Conciseness has been only occasionally deviated from, where the sense of the text underwent the smallest hazard of obscurity, by too studied an attempt to condense the language expressive of the meaning.—The punctuation of the original, by continued *semicolons*, has been followed. They are certainly better adapted than *puncta*, to keep up, and lead to a close, the concatenated sense of descriptive paragraphs.

In the detail of the course of French tactics, the use of the *future tense* recurs, on the average, *twelve times, at least, in each page*. In the translation of a work of this nature, which, to be correct, must be literal, the corresponding repetition of the *English futures* became, in a great degree, unavoidable.—The grammatical distinction between the third person singular of the auxiliary foretelling *future, will*, and the commanding *future, shall*, has not been strictly attended to, in order to relieve the ear, mind, or eye, from the very frequent recurrence of either *. In rigid propriety, the positive, *shall*, only ought to have been used ; but in such works, *will* is more frequent, though not so strictly in rule. To obviate,

* “ *Will*, in the first persons singular and plural promises and threatens ; and in the second and third persons, only foretels :—*shall*, on the contrary, in the first person, simply foretels ; in the second and third persons promises, commands, or threatens.” In a note it is observed, “ this distinction was not observed formerly, as to the word *shall*, which was used in the second and third persons, to express simply the event.”—See pages 62, and 89, of the late Bishop of London’s Introduction to English Grammar, with critical notes.

A gentleman of North Britain observed to Mr. Horne Tooke, that he, in common with the rest of his countrymen, was apt, frequently, to confound *shall* and *will* ; and that he wished to have from so able a grammarian, some rule respecting the proper use of these futures. “ I shall,” said Mr. Tooke, “ give you an extremely simple one : when you sit down to write, go on as your pen leads you ; then revise what you have written ; and wherever you find *will*, substitute *shall* ; and where you find *shall*, write *will*.—Tacticians will discover, certainly, something very new in a work of this sort—a good joke.

obviate, sometimes, this tedious repetition, the defective verbs, *must*, *ought*, and *should* have been substituted ; and also, *is*, the third person of the present of the *indicative*, has been placed before the *infinitive* of the verb used in the text, in the *future*. The use of the present and past participles passive, has been, occasionally, introduced in lieu of the *future*, still unavoidably, often repeated.

It will appear that the translator had a few errors in the original text to rectify, so as to reconcile the plates to the text. To effect this, the different editions have been collated, and any small requisite alteration made, is fully accounted for in notes, to enable the reader to judge of its propriety.

There are three French editions of this work ;—the first in quarto, with a volume of plates in folio, is for the use of the General officers ; the second, in octavo, is almost out of print ; the third, a large duodecimo, is that translated in the shape in which it appears. The Plates of the Mentz edition are given on account of the superiority of execution. The engravings of them made in this country are better finished than those of the original set brought by the translator from Paris.

The movements of French cavalry are laid down in two octavo volumes, one of which contains 152 small plates. The book is entitled “*Instruction concernant les Manœuvres des troupes à Cheval.*” Allowing for the difference of peculiar and particular bodily movement in *facing*, *filig*, *wheeling*, and *forming*, arising
d 2 from

from the dissimilarity of formation, and habits of bipeds and quadrupeds, the broad, general principles regulating the higher tactics of cavalry-movements, are analogous, in a great degree, to the details in the more advanced parts of this work. It might afford *amusement* to some intelligent cavalry-officer to give the public a translation of the above work ; and the book might prove of very considerable utility.

A few *errata* are inseparable from a complicated, minute, and technical work of this description. The reader ought, in all cases, to correct the *errata*, previous to the perusal of a book. A few mere typographical errors, such as the disagreement of French adjectives and substantives in gender, or number, have not been noticed, being of no consequence in regard to the sense of the expression. There are not above four or five such *errata*.

The translator begs leave to disclaim the most distant idea of dealing out lessons, or of dictating, in any of the hints he throws out. An earnest wish to promote what may prove useful is the only motive that actuates him. Those who judge otherwise, know him but little: and are incapable of estimating the just latitude of liberal discussion, applied to considerations of vast public importance.

If we look into the page of history, we there find the enmity of France towards this country handed down from father to son, as a hereditary bequest. Under whatever form of government the restless inhabitants of that country are placed, this principle, disguised

disguised in peace, under the form of treaties, operates systematically, and has one fixed object in view, the *subjugation* and *destruction* of a hated rival, whose happiness, greatness, and prosperity are regarded with envious rancour, and deep-rooted malignity. The merits of Frenchmen, individually, we can liberally appreciate; but collectively, as a nation, we must always view, and guard against them, in the steady attitude of *distrust*. Were the Bourbons restored to the throne, deeply sensible as they might be of the noble treatment they experienced in this country, the aggrandizement of France, and the reduction of the *power* and *resources* of Britain, would still be the *leading* object which would occupy their minds. The frantic fury, and the unrelenting hatred of a Buonaparté * would be succeeded

d 3

by

* The celebrated Duke of Sully has admirably drawn the *best* part of the character of the little hero of Jaffa in the latter lines of the following Reflections on the conduct of Rulers: "—— but this must be owned, to the advantage of virtue, that it secures, by the most infallible means, the success of all great enterprizes.— Wisdom, equity, discipline, order, courage, good fortune, qualities which succeed each other in the order they are mentioned, form the chain of action of truly great men. The proceedings of those who *unjustly arrogate to themselves that title*, offer, on the contrary, nothing but *rashness and obstinacy*, the companions of *blind ambition*.— A *vain confidence* in their talents; *presumptuous* dependence on their *good fortune*; all consequences of flattery, generally *enable* no persons so much as those *false heroes who think themselves born to subject the whole world*."

Sir Robert Wilson, in his very able publication, has established the horrid fact by the most decisive and incontrovertible evidence,
that

by dignified enmity, and war conducted on the chivalrous and heroic principles of the old *régime*.—

The

that the great Consul of France, did, at and near Jaffa, cause 580 sick Frenchmen, and 3800 Turkish prisoners, to be poisoned, and murdered, in cold blood. The virtuous physician who refused to obey the dreadful mandate to poison the sick; the wretched apothecary who administered the fatal opium, and who has since confessed his guilt, and a part of the division of *Bon*, who were forced to massacre the unfortunate Turks, *all these evidences* could be adduced in addition to *Eastern attestations numberless*, were it necessary, to prove the committing of the most atrocious *cruelty that has ever stained the page of history*. In vain did Kleber, whose assassination remains a mystery, and the other French officers, endeavour to divert and dissuade the ferocious Corsican from the perpetration of a deed of such unparalleled barbarity. They little knew Buonaparté. At Toulon and Marseilles, he had served his apprenticeship to the work of massacre and murder in cold blood. The vile miscreant, and pretended Mahometan, coolly looked on through a telescope, and grinned a ghastly smile of satisfaction at this scene of unexampled horror. Frenchmen! in times past, honour marked your sentiments, and the voice of justice did not in vain cry for vengeance against the murderer of the innocent. Your national character is implicated, and your honour is tarnished by the *Massacre of Jaffa*. The scourge whom Providence has placed over you, *has filled up the measure of his wickedness and iniquities*. Rejoice that he is a foreign adventurer. Restore the happiness of your nation; vindicate your injured honour; hurl from his usurped throne the enemy of the human race; restore it to the amiable and rightful heirs, tried in the school of adversity; and bring to condign punishment a monster, doomed sooner or later to expiate his crimes by the hands of the common executioner. The strangling of sick French, Copts, Egyptians, and Italians, is well authenticated, as cases of *minor atrocity*. Napoleone Buonaparté, compared to whom a Caligula or Nero may be deemed merciful, when accused by the above physician, Citizen Degenettes, before the Institute at Cairo, of crimes so revolting to humanity, with a characteristic effrontery, justified them

The inimical principle would *equally* remain, though tempered and modified by liberality of feeling. All
past

them on the Machiavelian principle of "*doing evil, that convenience may arise from it.*" The records of this Institute, *at present kept back*, may at some future period be produced to substantiate *this* fact. General Andreossi's awkward allusion (in one of his last official letters) to Sir Robert Wilson's clear and conclusive narrative, awakened the dormant remorse of the Corsican, and called the attention of the public, with renovated interest, to the assassin of Jaffa, trembling in the inmost recesses of St. Cloud. Andreossi's indiscreet zeal has occasioned the disgrace in which he is now said to be. It was once intended at Paris, to avow the whole of this unprincipled transaction, and to justify it on the dark system of Machiavel, and the still darker system of modern philosophy: but *some little deference* to what they termed the *prejudices of the age*, in other words, to *our religion and morality*, pointed out the danger of so bold a stretch of innovation; and the chief Consul now conveniently pretends to despise and treat as a calumny what, at the same time, the *manes of the murdered thousands* and the *wounded and indignant* feelings of Europe, dare and defy him to even *attempt to refute*. Assalini, in his work on the plague, has ascribed to the massacre near Jaffa, a corruption of the air, which increased the ravages of that disorder. Sir Sidney Smith, the conqueror of the tyrant, a man who is an honour to the military profession, as an accomplished hero, has distinctly mentioned the murder of the Turkish prisoners, perpetrated three days after the capture of Jaffa. Mr. Morier, secretary to Lord Elgin, has narrated the circumstance as an undoubted and palpable fact. Dr. Wittman, in his Travels into Syria, has stated the fact. He makes the number of prisoners put to death amount to 4000, independent of between 5 and 600 of the garrison of El Arisch. He relates *his having seen the skeletons* of the murdered lying scattered on the sand-hills near Jaffa. To Dr. Wittman, when in Egypt, the wretch was pointed out, who poisoned the French sick by order of Buonaparté, who himself, in his dispatches to the Directory of the 14th May 1799, writes—he had been merciful to the Egyptians, but *severe* on the garrison of Jaffa. His of-

past experience justifies these suppositions, and suggests the policy of the measures eligible to procure indemnity

fficers refused to obey so execrable an order as the *deliberate murder of thousands*. They demanded a written order. The *wily* disciple of Machiavel, *conscious* of the *great* atrocity of this deed of horror, *refused* the order, sent Berthier to *enforce* obedience, and at a convenient distance, *witnessed* the barbarous execution with *visible signs of satisfaction*. “*Monstrum horrendum, informe ingens, cui lumen ademptum.*” Another *damning proof* is at hand!

A *French officer of rank*, now a prisoner in the west of England, whose name it would be improper to mention, has recently declared *publicly in a Coffee-house*, in the hearing of many respectable characters, who have stated the fact in the *public prints*, that *he* commanded a division of the French troops employed in putting to death, near Jaffa, in his estimation, full 5000 Turkish prisoners. This is a climax to evidence already but too decisive. Every book should record this tragedy of horror, and hold up to the execration of the 19th century this opprobrium to human nature, that can only be wiped away by the punishment of the most guilty of criminals.—A report has gone abroad that a certain description of Frenchmen (probably commercial consuls) were to set London on fire, in many places, in the event of an invasion. The loyalist-emigrants are men of probity and honour, utterly incapable of being, in any respect concerned in so infernal a plan. So flagitious a project exceeds credibility. A pamphlet of repute has distinctly and impressively stated the circumstance, acquitting the emigré-priests, and tracing this laudable design to the benign and merciful agents of the great Pacificator. It is said that a certain chosen gang of these worthy students of modern philosophy, had instructions to exhibit this *sine qua non* of Machiavelism, all at the same instant. We leave the public to judge under whose directions and injunctions these *illuminati* were to give this warm proof of proficiency in their enlightened studies, of their inflammatory principles, and of devotion to the champion of jacobinism, the *chief* of their diabolical sect, which can distinctly trace its origin to a *great incendiary*, to whom Milton ascribes the invention of cannon, gunpowder, and such harmless discoveries.

indemnity for the past, and security for the future. It is now an ascertained fact, that the great Consul was disinclined to enter on the present war. He was meditating vast schemes, which it required *time* to mature. He was consolidating and increasing a prodigious empire on the continent of Europe: he was restoring a reduced navy, re-establishing annihilated commerce, securing the prosperity of his colonies, undermining what remained of the liberties of the continent, and strengthening himself on the throne of the Bourbons, when the temperate firmness and decision of Britain threw him off his guard, and hurried him, unwillingly, into the war. His emissaries, under the appellation of commercial agents, or disguised officers, were distributing Louis d'ors, seducing the well-affected from their allegiance, and confirming, in their evil designs, a numerous description of the unprincipled, who have nothing to lose, and every thing to gain by innovation. Buonaparté thought the spirit of Britain humbled and broken, and that she would have yielded in the late negociation. His alleged correspondence with the ci-devant worthy Churchman, Talleyrand, proves the extent of the designs meditated. War was to commence suddenly in 1806. England, Scotland, Ireland, the islands, and Egypt were to be invaded at the same period. Jamaica was to fall by a coup-de-main from Cuba, or St. Domingo. The capture of the other colonies was deemed a matter of course. A war, if possible, was to be rekindled in India;—
the

the powers of Europe were to be cajoled and wheedled into acquiescence, by *promises of the division of the English colonies*. It was proposed to feed the ambition of Russia by the dismemberment of the shattered Ottoman empire, for the farther aggrandizement of France; and the alluring prospect was to be thrown out of placing a Russian Arch-Duke on the throne of Byzantium. These mighty projects have all been rendered abortive. Buonaparté is sensible that the *game of chance*, in which his extreme irritability prematurely involved him, promises but a melancholy conclusion. He is averse to commit his personal dignity, and is secretly engaging the powers of Europe to mediate a peace, which alone may enable him to carry into effect the plans he has formed against this country. An invasion of Great Britain, and of Ireland, but unquestionably of the latter, Buonaparté will attempt, but not in person, for his personal courage is by no means highly estimated in France. Though the contest may be severe, no doubt whatever is entertained with respect to the issue.—Indeed a million of men in arms, actuated by a patriotic spirit, of which history hardly furnishes an example, eagerly wish to meet the insolent foe, and, thus, to set the question of invasion *asleep, and at rest for ever*. Buonaparté, irritated by disappointment, and in order to employ his armies, will, probably, again set Europe in a blaze of general war. The issue may be, the reduction of the overgrown territories and influence of France, and the re-establishment

blishment of the general balance of power of Europe. If we remain *single-handed* in the contest, feeling his invading hopes disappointed, and influenced by *consequent* considerations of *personal safety*, he will, reluctantly, yield to terms, *safe* and *honourable* to this country. The discussions of a General Congress would be inimical to the best interests of Britain. The measure would prove nugatory and inadequate, and would lower and break that grand spirit which now pervades the kingdom. Foreign powers envy and hate our prosperity, and little good would result from a Congress possessing these feelings, worked on and managed by the malignant genius, and bribed, systematically, by the gold of Buonaparté; independent of the influence of the *ci-devant* B—— of A——'s seduction-corps of circumambulating *élegantes*. Malta is, now, totally out of the question. Sebastiani's impudent report sanctions our retaining that island for the preservation of our empire in the east, where we ought *immediately* to occupy Acheen-harbour, which the king of that country would readily agree to, and to fortify that key to India, and that valuable possession of Prince of Wales's island. *No peace can be secure that does not restore the guaranteed independence of Holland, Switzerland, and Italy.* Belgium may remain with France *on these conditions alone.* Buonaparté has always derived his principal successes from *armistices* and *cessations of arms.* His character is now sufficiently developed to shew that no preliminary articles can *safely* be

be signed. He declared himself Sovereign of Italy during the very time that the treaty of Amiens was negotiating. The terms of peace must be dictated with the sword in one hand, and signed with the pen in the other. Experience warrants this procedure. *Usage* constitutes the *common law* of nations, and regulates their general intercourse. Our ancestors acknowledged this principle, and acted on it ; but the authorities of departed Sages are often confuted by, and here must yield to the practical lessons of experience. We are placed in a political situation and relative state, at once unprecedented and difficult. Our Forefathers, at no period, had to deal with an incarnate fiend, an improver of the system of *Machiavel*, a Chief of modern philosophers ; nor with a Mahometan, a Christian, an Infidel, an Atheist, or a Deist, characters assumed by one and the same person, when calculated to promote his individual interest and convenience.

The French revolution, and the contest arising out of it, have effected a change in the habits, dispositions, and sentiments of European nations, unfavourable to general and individual happiness.—Visionary theories of liberty have, by the ill-disposed, been made a pretext for removing the salutary restraints of sound government ; for introducing impracticable systems ; and for disturbing the tranquillity of the civilized world. The licentious and fallacious doctrines of a preposterous liberty have sunk deep into the human mind. Experience of
their

their futility and destructive tendency is gradually weakening the impression. To establish equality would be impossible if it were endeavoured, and would be useless if it were possible. It forms no part of the great Creator's design. Two men cannot converse five minutes without feeling this truth. The mischief is, in a great measure, however, done, and must be guarded against. The well-disposed are sensible that equal laws and security to persons and property constitute the only liberty founded in reason. To defend this, they must remain associated in arms till surrounding nations re-establish a safe balance of power, and return to the habits of sober reflection. It is, probably, not the least striking excellence of the British Constitution that it can readily adapt itself to existing circumstances, without endangering its admirable structure and beauty. The public proceedings, during the turbulent period of the last twelve years, sufficiently evince the justness and force of this truth. Standing Armies, which would have been formerly regarded with jealousy, are now wisely considered as interwoven with the constitution, and necessary to retain empire. France is an armed nation, surrounded by subjugated states, whose resources she commands. Her navy is low, but the period of its reformation may arrive. In this country it is eligible to calculate on this supposition. In Commerce, Agriculture, and Manufactures, Britain will remain long unrivalled; but our independence must rest on a surer and

more stable basis. The spirit of the nation is, and must be *kept martial*. England is safe while the *military* predominates over the *commercial spirit*. That this is the general feeling of the country, the multitudes in arms inspired with an enthusiastic ardour to repel unmerited insult, are a sufficient proof. The mighty and proud spirit actuating and pervading all ranks of society, at this moment, is the natural result of a free constitution, and just laws. What is felt worth defending will be defended *voluntarily*.— France, at no period of the revolutionary exertion, had 1,000,000 of citizens in arms; and two-thirds of her soldiery were *dragged in chains* to her armies, and supported in action by brandy, the hopes of plunder, and the dread of Artillery in their rear.— In cursorily turning over the pages of the English History, it appeared, that from the year 1116 to the present period, from 160 to 190 years nearly, out of the whole six hundred and eighty-seven, have been occupied by wars. This gives the average period of 21 wars, at eight years and a fraction. The cause of this melancholy truth may be traced to the ambition of rulers, the weakness of ministers, at various periods, and the operations of the evil passions of mankind perpetually in search of new luxuries and gratifications. Were nations *more* prepared for war, its return might be *less* frequent. Man is an *encroaching animal*, kept in check by resolute determination of opposition. A steady, permanent, hostile (or rather defensive) attitude would prevent aggression, and

deter from an attack invited and encouraged by relaxation, indifference, and false security. The state of Europe renders it necessary that Britain should remain *armed in peace*. This principle is that *only* which will secure independence to nations. The regular army of Britain will remain, in future, on a high peace establishment; and from the well known character of the illustrious Commander in Chief, that army will always be kept in constant activity, high discipline, and the strictest order. The zeal of the officers keeps pace with the vigilance of the Commander, and the Nation may, as securely reckon on the discipline of the army, as on the courage and enterprise that distinguish it. The time assigned by the act of parliament for the annual discipline of the militia, can *hardly* be deemed sufficient for doing justice to that high-spirited and admirable body of men. It is humbly presumed that the constant exercise of *two months every year*, is the *least* that can be supposed indispensable for retaining this essential force in the *requisite state of discipline*. The volunteer description of the army it may be a measure of *sound and wise policy* to keep up, *judiciously limited*, and *eligibly regulated*. They will be composed of a class in society which will feel a laudable pride in maintaining those habits of discipline and order which may ensure the approbation of the Commander in Chief, and consequently of the Country at large. This useful establishment will occasion little public disbursement, and will cherish and support the *general military spi-*

rit constituting, in the *changed* state of human affairs, the safety and independence of the Nation. The maintenance of a superior navy it is unnecessary to mention ; the very existence of the country depends on it, in the first instance. To meet such increased establishments, great expenditure is unavoidable, and great sacrifices must be submitted to * ; but the reflection of a moment will shew that such must be cheerfully made. Every British subject who feels the value and blessing of liberty, guarded by the salutary restraints arising from the very nature of

* When in Paris, I was informed by the money-changers, that they gave above their current value in Britain, for guineas, in order to melt them down. This practice yielded them a great profit.— To prevent the melting, and exportation of guineas, what is termed the *money-unit* might be diminished, that is to say, by a new coinage, the standard might be advantageously debased, by subtracting gold, and adding alloy. This measure would not materially affect the course of exchange, alter the state of the markets, or disturb the equilibrium supposed to subsist between metals in currency. The nominal value of silver, by adulteration and other practices of deterioration, has become out of proportion to its real value. It appears that gold has not become depreciated in the same proportion. A re-coinage of gold, on the principle suggested, would restore the lost balance between guineas and shillings ; would check melting down and exportation ; and would *probably* afford the safest means of removing the restriction on the Bank, which it may be dangerous to take off without some judicious precautions of finance. The standard has been *occasionally* altered. Guineas were originally issued at twenty shillings, being less than their value in silver. They were, *afterwards*, raised to twenty shillings and sixpence, from a scarcity of gold. The rate and value were *finally* fixed at twenty-one shillings, in the year 1728. Independent of securing the objects stated, the public would gain, *considerably*, by the measure recommended.

of an unrivalled constitution, will contribute a proportion of his means to insure the general prosperity, or stand tamely prepared to surrender *all* to a merciless and rapacious foe. Never was a war begun under fairer auspices than the present : and let it not be forgot that the happiness of Europe depends on the *vigour* and *wisdom* with which it may be conducted, and above all, *on the terms* on which *Peace* will be re-established *.

*Hæ tibi erunt artes, pacisque imponere morem,
Parcere subjectis, et debellare superbos.*

* It is the policy of the cunning Corsican to conceal from his army, by cutting off all intercourse with this country, the patriotic spirit which pervades society here, and the active arrangements for defensive and offensive operations. He endeavours to persuade the French army of an ideal *superiority*, totally unfounded on any one historical fact, where the comparison is fairly made. Did this vaunted superiority exist in the wars of Marlborough ? Has it appeared in any instance of *single-handed* contest on the Continent ? Is it in Egypt, in India, or at Acre that we are to look for it ? It subsists only, as it ever has, in the despicable vanity attached to the French character. If Buonaparté, H. B. Maret, and Co. issue decrees to construct docks where there is little water, they will, on the same principle of misleading a deluded people, propagate every species of falsehood. Their drummers are taught to despise our Army of Reserve and Volunteers, and to believe that they are all formed from Corporations or Municipalities, *actuated by a spirit unknown in France*. By the bye, the Tyrant is very inimical to liberty in the shape of a Corporation, for one of his very first acts of wanton cruelty was putting to death the whole Municipality of Pavia.

Seneca, when banished into Corsica, wrote an epigram, descriptive of the character of the people of that island. *Revenge, Rapine, Falsehood, or Treachery, and Atheism*, are the qualities he ascribes to the great Consul's Countrymen in ancient times. It most evidently appears that Buonaparté has not only equalled, but far surpassed his ancestors in characteristic depravity :

“ Prima illis lex, ulcisci ; altera, vivere rapto ;

“ Tertia, mentiri ; quarta, negare Deos.”

Seneca.

ADVERTISEMENT.

AN eligible Commentary on the rules and regulations for the discipline and movements of the British army, has been long a *desideratum*. Such a work will constitute an useful and necessary accompaniment to the *rules*, and enable the younger part of the army to comprehend intimately, their *perfect* meaning and spirit, not unfrequently, misunderstood.

The mathematical and natural principles on which the drill,—the discipline of the company,—the instruction of the battalion,—the general manœuvres,—and the more complicated evolutions of the line are founded, will be clearly explained, and illustrated by projections, examples, and notes; with references to other systems, for elucidating what is treated of.

The eighteen manœuvres, and procedure of review, will be accurately detailed, with their corresponding light-infantry movements; and where any doubt may arise, as to the genuine import of the original, explanations will be given in notes, tending to shew that the spirit of the text is preserved.

Some useful additional manœuvres of the battalion, and evolutions of the line will be given, to exhibit farther essential movements deduced from the rules and regulations.

The

The strictest adherence to General Dundas's book will be maintained throughout the work, consistently with the amplification and explanatory reasoning arising out of, and connected, collaterally, with the subject.

Method and arrangement will be objects of primary consideration and importance; and a very minute drill-detail, calculated to establish a speedy knowledge of discipline, will constitute not the least essential part of a work, which will consist of a portable quarto volume, inclusive of numerous Plates—and an Appendix of duties and regulations in camp, garrison, and quarters.

The Translator of the French Tactics has long had it in contemplation to write a work so much wanted: and he trusts that the continued study he has bestowed on the science of tactics, &c. &c. will enable him to execute an undertaking of some importance, which even to some officers of more advanced rank, may not prove *altogether* useless or uninteresting.

P. S. It is *no easy task* to compose a work of the above description, which will bear the test of *accurate tactical criticism*. Many will appear that may be found inadequate under a trial equally severe, and necessary. A conscious, but moderate, sense of a close attention to the subject can alone give that humble confidence, without the support of which, no work either of utility or genius, would ever be undertaken.

TABLE.

TITRE. I *

	<i>Page</i>
FORMATION d'un régiment en bataille -	1
Places des officiers et sous-officiers dans l'ordre de bataille -	4
Places des officiers supérieurs, adjudans-majors et adjudans -	5
Places des tambours et musiciens - - - -	6
Garde du drapeau - - - - -	<i>ibid.</i>
Instruction des régimens - - - - -	7
Instruction des officiers - - - - -	<i>ibid.</i>
Instruction des sous-officiers - - - - -	8

TITRE II.

<i>Ecole du Soldat</i> - - - - -	10
Division de l'école du soldat - - - - -	11

PREMIER PARTIE. - - - 13

<i>Première Leçon.</i> Position du soldat sans armes -	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Deuxième Leçon.</i> A droite, à gauche, demi-tour à droite -	17
<i>Troisième Leçon.</i> Principes du pas ordinaire direct -	18
<i>Quatrième Leçon.</i> Principes du pas oblique -	21

SECONDE

* "Titre" is rendered, figuratively, "Section," as the work is divided into four *Sections*, and each *Section* into a certain number of *parts*.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

SECTION I.

	<i>Page</i>
FORMATION of a regiment in order of battle, or line -	1
Situations of the officers and non-commissioned officers, in the order of battle, and line - - - -	4
Situations of the superior officers, adjutant-majors and adju- tants, in line - - - -	5
Posts of the drummers and musicians in line - - -	6
Guard of the colours - - - -	<i>ibid.</i>
Instruction of regiments * - - - -	7
Instruction of the officers - - - -	<i>ibid.</i>
Instruction of the non-commissioned officers - -	8

SECTION II.

<i>Discipline of the Soldier, or Recruit</i> † - - -	10
Division of the discipline of the soldier, or recruit -	11

PART I. - - - 13

First Lesson. Position of the soldier without arms -	<i>ibid.</i>
Second Lesson. To the right, left, and right about face -	17
Third Lesson. Principles of the ordinary step direct -	18
Fourth Lesson. Principles of the oblique step - -	21

PART

* “ *Instruction*” means, in the language of Tactics now in use, being trained in, and habituated to the process of military discipline. “ Mais quant à la tenue, à l’instruction, et au bon ordre, son infanterie ne laissoit rien à désirer.”—*Precis Historique des Campagnes de l’Armée de Rhin et Moselle.*

† See note, page 269.

	<i>Page</i>
SECONDE PARTIE.	- 24
<i>Première Leçon.</i> Principes du port d'armes	- 25
<i>Deuxième Leçon.</i> Maniement des armes	- 26
<i>Troisième Leçon.</i> Charge précipitée	- 43
Charge à volonté	- 44
<i>Quatrième Leçon.</i> Feux directs	- 45
Feux obliques	- <i>ibid.</i>
Feux de deux rangs	- 47
 TROISIÈME PARTIE.	 - 51
<i>Première Leçon.</i> Marche de front	- <i>ibid.</i>
<i>Deuxième Leçon.</i> Marche de flanc	- 56
<i>Troisième Leçon.</i> Alignement	- 58
<i>Quatrième Leçon.</i> Conversion	- 61

TITRE III.

ÉCOLE DE PELOTON	- 66
------------------	------

PREMIÈRE LEÇON.

ART. 1. Ouvrir les rangs	- 68
2. Alignemens à rangs ouverts	- 70
3. Maniement des armes	- 72
4. Serrer les rangs	- 73
5. Alignemens à rangs serrés	- <i>ibid.</i>

DEUXIÈME LEÇON.

ART. 1. Charge précipitée	- 75
2. Charge à volonté	- <i>ibid.</i>
3. Feu de peloton	- 76
4. Feu de deux rangs	- 77
5. Feux en arrière	- 78

TROISIÈME LEÇON.

ART. 1. Marcher en bataille	- 80
-----------------------------	------

ART.

	<i>Page</i>
PART II. - - -	24
First Lesson. Principles of shouldered arms -	25
Second Lesson. The platoon exercise -	26
Third Lesson. Loading in quick time -	43
Loading in quickest time -	44
Fourth Lesson. Direct firings -	45
Oblique firings -	<i>ibid.</i>
Firing of two ranks, by independent files -	47
PART III. - - -	51
First Lesson Marching to the front -	<i>ibid.</i>
Second Lesson. March to a flank -	56
Third Lesson. Dressing, or aligning -	58
Fourth Lesson. Wheeling -	61

SECTION III.

DISCIPLINE OF THE PLATOON, OR COMPANY -	66
---	----

LESSON I.

ART. 1. To open ranks -	68
2. Alignment, or dressing at open ranks -	70
3. The manual exercise -	72
4. To close ranks -	73
5. Alignment of closed ranks -	<i>ibid.</i>

LESSON II.

ART. 1. Loading in quick time -	75
2. Loading in quickest time -	<i>ibid.</i>
3. Firing by the platoon three deep -	76
4. Independent file firing -	77
5. Firing to the rear -	78

LESSON III.

ART. 1. Marching in line -	80
ART.	

	<i>Page</i>
ART. 2. Arrêter le peloton marchant en bataille et l'aligner	84
3. Marche oblique en bataille	- - - <i>ibid.</i>
4. Marquer le pas, marcher le pas accéléré, et le pas en arrière	- - - 86
5. Marcher en bataille, par le troisième rang	- 88

QUATRIEME LEÇON.

ART. 1. Marcher par le flanc	- - - 89
2. Changer de direction par file	- - - 90
3. Arrêter le peloton marchant par le flanc, et le remettre face en tête	- - - 91
4. Le peloton étant en marche par le flanc, le former par file, sur la droite, ou sur la gauche, en bataille	- <i>ibid.</i>
5. Le peloton étant en marche par le flanc, former le peloton, ou les sections, en marchant	- - 93

CINQUIEME LEÇON.

ART. 1. Rompre en colonne par section	- - - 95
2. Marcher en colonne	- - - 98
3. Changer de direction	- - - 101
4. Arrêter la colonne	- - - 105
5. Etant en colonne par section, se former à gauche, ou à droite, en bataille	- - - 106

SIXIEME LEÇON.

ART. 1. Mettre des files en arrière, et les faire rentrer en ligne	- - - 109
2. Marcher en colonne au pas de route, et exécuter les divers mouvemens de file, prescrits dans l'article précédent	- - - 113
3. Rompre et former le peloton	- - - 115
4. Contre-marche	- - - 119
ART.	

	<i>Page</i>
ART. 2. To halt the platoon marching in line, and to align, or dress it - - - - -	84
3. Oblique marching in line - - - - -	<i>ibid.</i>
4. To mark time, to march in quick time, and the back step - - - - -	86
5. To march in line, with the rear rank leading - - - - -	88

LESSON IV.

ART. 1. To march to a flank - - - - -	89
2. Wheeling in file - - - - -	90
3. To halt the platoon marching to a flank, and to form it to a flank, or to front it - - - - -	91
4. To form the platoon marching to a flank, by files, to the right flank, if marching to the right; or, by files, to the left flank, if marching to the left - <i>ibid.</i>	
5. The platoon marching to a flank, forming to the front, from file, either in platoon, or by sub- division - - - - -	93

LESSON V.

ART. 1. Wheeling forward, by subdivision, from line - - - - -	95
2. March in open column - - - - -	98
3. In open column of subdivisions, wheeling into a new direction, on a moveable pivot, turning on the march - - - - -	101
4. To halt the column - - - - -	105
5. When a column of subdivisions wheels to the left, or right, into line - - - - -	106

LESSON VI.

ART. 1. To break off files, and to move them up again to the front - - - - -	109
2. To march in column of route, and to execute the va- rious file movements prescribed in the preceding article - - - - -	113
3. Diminishing and increasing the front of a column of companies, on the march - - - - -	115
4. The Counter-march - - - - -	119

	<i>Page</i>
ART. 5. Etant en colonne par section, se former sur la droite, ou, sur la gauche, en bataille - - -	- 121
Instruction pour tirer à la cible - - -	- 126
Maniement de l'arme des sous-officiers - - -	- 127
Maniement de l'épée des officiers - - -	- 131
Salut de l'épée - - -	- <i>ibid.</i>
Salut du drapeau - - -	- 132
Instruction pour le tambour-major - - -	- <i>ibid.</i>

TITRE IV.

ECOLE DE BATAILLON - - - - -	- 135
------------------------------	-------

PREMIERE PARTIE.

ART. 1. Ouvrir les rangs - - -	- 136
2. Maniement des armes - - -	- 138
3. La charge à volonté, et les feux - - -	- <i>ibid.</i>

DEUXIEME PARTIE.

ART. 1. Rompre à droite, ou à gauche - - -	- 144
2. Rompre en arrière, à droite, ou, à gauche - - -	- 146
3. Ployer le bataillon en colonne ferrée - - -	- 149

TROISIEME PARTIE.

ART. 1. Marcher en colonne, avec distance entière - - -	- 156
2. Colonne en route - - -	- 164
3. Changement de direction en colonne, avec distance entière - - -	- 174
4. Changer de direction en colonne, avec distance en- tière, par la prompte manœuvre - - -	- 177

ART. 5. Arrêter

	<i>Page</i>
ART. 5. To form to either flank, from open column of subdivisions - - - - -	120
Instructions for firing at a target - - - - -	126
Manual Exercise of the non-commissioned officers - - - - -	127
Sword-manual of the officers - - - - -	131
Sword-salute, whether in the ranks or marching - - - - -	<i>ibid.</i>
Salute by the colours - - - - -	132
Instructions for the drum-major - - - - -	<i>ibid.</i>

SECTION IV.

DISCIPLINE OF THE BATTALION - - - - -	135
---------------------------------------	-----

PART I.

ART. 1. To open ranks - - - - -	136
2. The manual exercise - - - - -	138
3. Loading in quickest time, and the firings - - - - -	<i>ibid.</i>

PART II.

ART. 1. When the battalion halted in line, wheels forward by companies into open column, the right, or left, in front - - - - -	144
2. To file to the rear into open column, with the right, or left, in front - - - - -	146
3. To form close column, from line - - - - -	149

PART III.

ART. 1. March in open column, at full distance of companies	156
2. Column of route - - - - -	164
3. Change of direction of the open column on the march, at full distance of companies, or subdivisions	174
4. When the battalion open column, at full distance, changes direction, into which the rear companies are filed in quick time, previous to halting or prolonging the new direction - - - - -	177

	<i>Page</i>
ART. 5. Arrêter la colonne - - -	180
6. Serrer la colonne à distance de section, ou en masse	182
7. Marcher en colonne, à distance de section, ou, en masse - - -	184
8. Changement de direction en colonne à distance de section - - -	185
9. Changement de direction en masse -	<i>ibid.</i>
10. La contre-marche - - -	189
11. Etant en colonne par peloton, en masse de pied ferme, la droite ou la gauche en tête, former les divisions - - -	192

QUATRIEME PARTIE.

ART. 1. Manière de déterminer la ligne de bataille	196
2. Différentes manières de former la colonne avec dis- tance entière, la droite, ou, la gauche, en tête, sur la ligne de bataille - - -	198
1. Colonne avec distance entière, la droite en tête à gauche en bataille - - -	<i>ibid.</i>
2. Colonne avec distance entière, la droite en tête, sur la droite en bataille - - -	201
3. Colonne avec distance entière, la droite en tête, en avant en bataille - - -	205
4. Colonne avec distance entière, la droite en tête, face en arrière en bataille - - -	209

ART. 3. Formation en bataille, composée de deux mouve- mens - - -	211
--	-----

4. Différens moyens de former la colonne à demi-dis- tance sur la ligne de bataille, la droite, ou, la gauche en tête - - -	213
Colonne	

	<i>Page</i>
ART. 5. To halt the column - - -	180
6. To close to half distance, or to form close, from open column - - -	182
7. To march in close column, or in column at half-distance - - -	184
8. When the open column, at half distance, wheels into a new direction, on a moveable pivot - -	185
9. When a close column halted, changes its direction	<i>ibid.</i>
10. The counter-march - - -	189
11. To form close column of two companies, or grand divisions, from a halted close column of companies, right in front, or left in front - -	192

PART IV.

ART. 1. Manner of ascertaining the line to be formed on	196
2. Different modes of forming the line, from open column, at full distance, with the right, or left in front	198
1. When the open column, at full distance, with the right in front, is to wheel up to the left, into line	<i>ibid.</i>
2. When the battalion open column, with the right in front, is to form to the right flank - -	201
3. When the open column at full distance, with the right in front, is to form line on the head company	205
4. When a column, open at full distance of companies, right in front, forms line, fronting to its then rear - - -	209
ART. 3. When a battalion open column marches up to, and enters a new position, at a point where a central company is to rest, from a cessation of movement in the front, and that the rear companies form in line, by an echelon-movement - -	211
4. Different modes of forming a column, at half-distance of companies, in line, with either the right, or left, in front - - -	213

	<i>Page</i>
1. Colonne à demi-distance, la droite en tête, à gauche en bataille, en prenant les distances par la tête de la colonne - - -	213
2. Colonne à demi-distance, la droite, ou, la gauche en tête, sur la droite, ou, sur la gauche en bataille - - -	215
3. Colonne à demi-distance, en avant en bataille -	<i>ibid.</i>
4. Colonne à demi-distance, face en arrière en bataille - - -	215
ART. 5. Deploîment des colonnes ferrées - -	<i>ibid.</i>

CINQUIEME PARTIE.

Marche en Bataille.

ART. 1. Marcher en bataille en avant -	222
2. Passage d'obstacle, en marchant en avant, ou en retraite - - -	231
3. Changement de direction en marchant en bataille -	236
4. Marche oblique par bataillon - - -	239
5. Arrêter le bataillon marchant en avant, et l'aligner	241
6. Marche en retraite - -	243
7. Arrêter le bataillon marchant en retraite, et le remettre face en tête - -	245
8. Marcher par bataillon par le flanc -	246
9. Former le bataillon sur la droite, ou, sur la gauche, par file, en bataille - -	248
10. Passage des lignes - - -	250

ART. II. Change-

	<i>Page</i>
1. When the column at half-wheeling distance, with the right in front, is to wheel to the left into line, by previously taking wheeling distances of companies, opening out, successively, from the head of the column put in march -	213
2. When a column at half wheeling-distance, with the right, or left, in front, is to form line to the right, or left flank - - -	214
3. When a column at half-wheeling-distance, is to form forward to the front of the march, in line, by an echelon-movement -	<i>ibid.</i>
4. When a column at half-wheeling-distance, is to form line, fronting to its, then, rear	215
ART. 5. Deployment * of close columns into line	<i>ibid.</i>

PART V.

March in Line.

ART. 1. When the battalion halted, and correctly dressed, is to advance in line - - -	222
2. Passage of obstacles, when the battalion is advancing, or retreating - - -	231
3. Change of direction of the battalion marching in line - - -	236
4. Obliquing a battalion in a parallel direction, to a given flank - - -	239
5. To halt the battalion marching to the front, and to dress it - - -	241
6. When the battalion is to retire - - -	243
7. To halt, and front the battalion, when retiring	245
8. To march, in file, to a flank - - -	246
9. To form in line, from file, to either flank	248
10. Passage of battalions, from line, through each other	250

ART. II. Change

* From *deployer*, to unfold, or display.

	<i>Page</i>
ART. II. Changement de front - - -	256
12. Passer le défilé en retraite par l'aile droite, ou, par l'aile gauche - - -	262
13. Colonne d'attaque - - -	264
14. Ralliement - - -	268
Ecole de bataillon classée par leçons -	269

TITRE V.

EVOLUTIONS DE LIGNE * - - -	273
-----------------------------	-----

Places du Commandant en Chef, des chefs de brigade
et de régiment, soit en ligne, soit en colonne *ibid.*

Règles générales pour les commandemens -	275
Formation des régimens en bataille, devant leur quar- tier - - -	277
Composition et marche du détachement qui ira chercher les drapeaux - - -	278

PREMIERE PARTIE.

ART. I. Ouvrir les rangs - - -	279
2. Maniement des armes - - -	280
3. Charge et feux - - -	<i>ibid.</i>

DEUXIEME

* Les *évolutions* sont des mouvemens que fait un corps de gens de guerre, lorsque pour se conserver dans un terrain, ou que pour en gagner un autre, il veut changer de forme, ou de disposition, afin d'attaquer avec avantage, ou de se défendre de même; soit que l'attaque ou la résistance se fasse de front, sur la queue, ou par les ailes. Les *Evolutions* sont simples, ou composées, &c. &c.—Dictionnaire Militaire de l'an LVIII.

	<i>Page</i>
ART. II. Change of front - - -	256
12. The battalion formed in line, may have to pass a de- file in its rear, by successive filing of companies from the right, or left flank - - -	262
13. Column of attack - - - - -	264
14. Rallying, or assembling to form after breaking off	268
The discipline of the battalion, arranged in lessons	269

SECTION V.

EVOLUTIONS OF THE LINE - - -	273
The situations of the Commander in Chief, of a commandant of brigade, and of a colonel, in line, and in column * - - -	<i>ibid.</i>
General rules for the words of command -	275
Formation of regiments in line, in front of their quarters - - - - -	277
Formation and order of march of a party for trooping the colours - - - -	278

PART I.

ART. 1. To open ranks - - - - -	279
2. The manual exercise - - - - -	280
3. Loading and firings - - - - -	<i>ibid.</i>

* *Commandant en Chef* has been rendered as above, but means in general, the Senior Officer present, and commanding.

DEUXIEME PARTIE.

ART. 1.	Rompre à droite ou à gauche	- -	283
2.	Rompre en arrière à droite (ou à gauche)	-	284
3.	Rompre par la droite, pour marcher vers la gauche		285
4.	Ployer la ligne en colonne ferrée	- -	286

TROISIEME PARTIE.

ART. 1.	Marcher en colonne avec distance entière		291
2.	Colonne en route	- - - -	293
3.	Changement de direction en colonne, à distance entière	- - - -	294
4.	Changement de direction par la prompte manœuvre		<i>ibid.</i>
5.	Arrêter la colonne à distance entière	-	296
6.	Serrer la colonne à distance de section, ou, en masse		299
7.	Marcher en colonne à distance de section, ou, en masse	- - - -	300
8.	Changement de direction en colonne, à distance de section	- - - -	301
9.	Changement de direction en colonne ferrée en masse		302
10.	Contre-marche	- - - -	303
11.	Etant en colonne par peloton de pied ferme, former les divisions	- - - -	304

QUATRIEME PARTIE.

ART. 1.	Manière de déterminer la ligne de bataille	-	305
2.	Différentes manières de passer de l'ordre en colonne, à l'ordre en bataille	- - -	<i>ibid.</i>
			Colonne

PART II.

- ART. 1. To break to the right, or left, into open column,
by wheeling forward to the left, or right, from line 283
2. To form open column, by filing into it from the
right, or left of companies, so as to stand in co-
lumn, on the line, with either the right or left, in
front - - - - - 284
3. To wheel forward to the right, into open column,
in order to march towards the left - - 285
4. To form close column of the line - - 286

PART III.

- ART. 1. To march in open column, at full distance 291
2. Column of route - - - - 293
3. Change of direction of an open column, at full dis-
tance of companies - - - 294
4. Change of direction, when the rear battalions turn
on the march, into file, and file into the new di-
rection - - - - - *ibid.*
5. To halt the column marching at full distance - 296
6. To close to half distance, or to move up into close
column - - - - - 299
7. To march in column at half distance, or, in close
column - - - - - 300
8. Change of direction of a column at half distance 301
9. Change of direction of a close column - 302
10. Countermarch of the open, and close columns 303
11. When the close column of companies, halted, forms
column of two companies, or grand divisions 304

PART IV.

- ART. 1. Taking up lines of formation, or march - 305
2. Different modes of forming line, from open, close,
and columns at half-distance - - - *ibid.*

	<i>Page</i>
1. Colonne avec distance entière, à gauche (ou à droite) en bataille - - -	306
Inversion - - -	<i>ibid.</i>
Règles générales pour les formations successives	307
2. Colonne avec distance entière, sur la droite (ou sur la gauche) en bataille - -	308
3. Colonne avec distance entière, en avant en bataille - - -	311
4. Colonne avec distance entière, la droite en tête, face en arrière en bataille - - -	314
ART. 3. Formation qui s'exécute par la réunion de deux mouvemens - - -	317
4. Différentes manières de former une colonne à demi-distance en bataille, la droite, ou, la gauche en tête - - -	324
1. Prendre les distances par la tête de la colonne	<i>ibid.</i>
2. Colonne à demi-distance, sur la droite (ou sur la gauche) en bataille - - -	325
3. Colonne à demi-distance, en avant en bataille	326
4. Colonne à demi-distance, face en arrière en bataille - - -	<i>ibid.</i>
ART. 5. Déploiement de colonnes en masse - -	327
1. Face en avant - - -	<i>ibid.</i>
2. Face en arrière - - -	339
3. Face à gauche - - -	<i>ibid.</i>
4. Face à droite - - -	340

	<i>Page</i>
1. When the open column, at full distance of wheeling, halts, wheels up into line, and dresses	305
Inversion - - - - -	306
General rules for successive formations -	307
2. When a column, at full wheeling distance, is to form to the right (or left) flank, into line	308
3. When a column, at full wheeling distance, forms forward, or to the front of the march, on the leading division - - -	311
4. When a column, at wheeling distance, with the right, or, left, in front, forms line, fronting to the rear of the march - -	314
ART. 3. When a line of several battalions thrown into open column, changes position on a fixed central division of any one battalion - -	317
4. Different manners of forming a column, at half distance, in line, with either right, or, left, in front	324
1. To take wheeling distances, successively, from the head of the column put in march -	<i>ibid.</i>
2. When a column at half-distance of companies, forms line by the successive wheel of companies, to the right (or left) flank - -	325
3. When a column at half-distance, forms line forward, or on the leading division -	326
4. When a column at half-distance, forms line fronting to the rear - - -	<i>ibid.</i>
ART. 5. When close columns deploy into line - -	327
1. When a column of march (by companies) of several battalions, forms close column, and, then, extends into line - - -	<i>ibid.</i>
2. When a close column deploys into line fronting to its, then, rear - - -	339
3. When the column is to deploy, obliquely, at right angles, fronting to the left - -	<i>ibid.</i>
4. When a column is to deploy, obliquely, or at right angles, fronting to the right - -	340

CINQUIEME PARTIE.

ART. 1. Marche en bataille	- - -	341
2. Changement de direction en marchant en bataille		349
3. Arrêter la ligne, et l'aligner	- - -	352
4. Feu en avançant	- - -	355
5. Marcher en retraite	- - -	357
6. Changement de direction en retraite	-	358
7. Feu en retraite	- - -	361
8. Passage du défilé en avant	- -	363
9. Passage du défilé en arrière	- -	367

10. Changemens de front	- -	370
Changement de front sur deux lignes	-	375

Changement de front perpendiculaire, en avant, sur
l'extrémité de l'aile droite de la première ligne 376

Changement de front perpendiculaire, en arrière,
sur l'extrémité de l'aile droite de la première ligne *ibid.*

Changement de front perpendiculaire, l'aile gauche
en avant, sur le centre de la première ligne 378

Changement de front oblique, en avant, sur l'extré-
mité de l'aile droite de la première ligne - 379

Changement de front oblique, en arrière, sur l'ex-
trémité de l'aile droite de la première ligne 382

Changemens

PART V.

ART. 1. March in line	-	-	-	341
2. Change of direction, when marching in line				349
3. When the line is to halt, and dress	-	-	-	352
4. Firing advancing	-	-	-	355
5. When the line retires	-	-	-	357
6. When a line changes direction, in retiring	-	-	-	358
7. Firing, retiring in line	-	-	-	361
8. When a considerable line has to pass a defile in front				363
9. When a considerable line has to pass a defile in its rear	-	-	-	367
10. Changes of front	-	-	-	370
Change of position of two lines, on a flank, or central point of the first line *	-	-	-	375
When two lines change position, perpendicularly, forward, on the right flank of the first line				376
When two lines change position, backward, perpendicularly, on the right flank of the first line				<i>ibid.</i>
When two lines change position, perpendicularly, on a fixed central point of the first line, by throwing forward the left wing	-	-	-	378
When two lines change position forward, obliquely (or less than a right angle), on the right flank of the first line	-	-	-	379
When two lines change position, backward, obliquely (or in less than a right angle), on the right flank of the first line	-	-	-	382

g 2

When

* The detail of the text in the following work, is translated as literally as the military idioms of both languages would admit of. In translating the headings, or titles of sections and articles; of words of command; and of words of *caution*, *illustration*, or *execution*; the expression is full, in order to give the complete sense in the adequate language of English Tactics.

	<i>Page</i>
Changemens de front obliques, en avant, et en arrière, sur l'extrémité de l'aile gauche de la première ligne - - -	383
Changement de front oblique, l'aile gauche en avant, sur le centre de la première ligne	<i>ibid.</i>
Changement de front oblique, l'aile droite en avant, sur le centre de la première ligne -	385
ART. II. Ordre en Echelon* - -	389
12. Retraite en échiquier - - -	398
13. Passage des lignes - - -	400
14. Disposition contre la cavalerie -	403
Ordre dans lequel les régimens devront défiler	411
Honneurs au saint-sacrement - -	414

* "*Echelon*," *the step of a ladder*, because a formed military echelon bears a resemblance to the steps of a ladder-stair, viewed in profile, the horizontal steps representing the parallel echellons, the perpendicular steps, the distance of echellons, and the ground step, the refused extreme of an echelon. Or, it may be derived from "*echelle*," *a scale*, because the delineation of various *scales*, in the same plane, resembles a formed military echelon.

Echelon means also, in a figurative sense, what we understand by a *step* in military promotion—See Grades Militaires, Nouveau Dictionnaire Militaire.

When two lines change position, backwards, or forward, obliquely (or in less than a right angle), on the fixed left flank of the first line	- -	383
When two lines change position, obliquely (or in less than a right angle), on a fixed central point of the first line, by throwing forward the left wing		<i>ibid.</i>
When two lines change position, obliquely (or in less than a right angle), on a fixed central point of the first line, by throwing forward the right wing		385
ART. II. Echelon-movements of the line	- -	389
12. Chequered retreat of the line*	- -	398
13. Passage of lines	- - -	400
14. When the column of march forms an oblong hollow square, six deep, in order to oppose cavalry		403
When regiments are to pass a reviewing-General, in ordinary time, and are to pay military honours		411
Military honours paid to the holy sacrament, or consecrated host	- - - -	414

* The chequered arrangement of troops is founded on the Roman system of Tactics, by which the intervals in the lines were nearly equal in extent to the front of the divisions of the line immediately in the rear; in order that the lines might pass through each other; support each other; or renew the attack in full line, composed of divisions of different lines. The chequered retreat derives its name from its resemblance, in figure, to a Chess-board, (*échiquier*.) See *note, page 402.*

ERRATA.

VOL. I.

- Page 5 Line first, after "*director*," read "*of the left*,"
— 51 after LESSON I, read $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{marche de front,} \\ \text{marching to the front.} \end{array} \right\}$
— 90 Line 28 for "*per*," read "*par*,"
— 101 No. 181 — "*marching*," — "*marking*,"
— 148 — 66 — "*command*," — "*commands*,"
— 175 — 192 — "*he*," — "*the captain*,"
— 177 after No. 198, — "*Article fourth*,"
— 193 No. 282 for "*directors*," — "*director*,"
— 217 — 413 "*from its immediate position in his front*," is a
pleonasm of translation, and the expression applies strictly,
when the deployment is made on a front grand division. It
applies also to all the grand divisions in rear of a central
one deployed on. The expression is not absolutely necessary
to the sense, and may be considered redundant,
— 236 No. 504 for "*file*," read "*line*,"
— 237 — 506 — "*himself*," — "*itself*,"
— 310 — 149 — "*pacing*," — "*placing*,"
— 351 line third, after "*flank*," — "*of his battalion*. The
adjutant-major faces to the right, and will align himself on the
markers stationed before the battalion on the right."
— 408 — 20 — "*flanc*," — "*flank*."

VOL. II.

- Page 50 In the note, for "*cuncus*," read "*cuneus*,"
— 56 In French note, — "*couvrier*," — "*couvrir*."

Page 206, No. 359, for "*he*," read "*the captain*."

In Plate XXV, the letter a ought to have been engraved
in front of the left of the fifth company in the etched, or
shaded battalion.

ERRATA.

VOL. I.

Page 1	Line 1st, after "there," read "of the day."
21	after "reason," read "reason."
20	line 23 for "for," read "for."
101	No. 181 — "reading," read "reading."
146	— 60 — "reading," read "reading."
177	— 102 — "for," read "for."
177	after No. 198, — "there," read "there."
193	No. 282 for "there," read "there."
217	— 417 — "from the fountain," read "from the fountain."
230	No. 401 for "for," read "for."
237	— 410 — "reading," read "reading."
310	— 410 — "reading," read "reading."
311	interlined, after "there," read "there."
401	— 401 — "there," read "there."

VOL. II.

Page 20	In the next, for "there," read "there."
20	In the next, for "there," read "there."

RULES AND REGULATIONS

FOR THE

Field Exercise and Manœuvres of the Infantry,

Established 1st of August 1791.

BY THE KING'S AUTHORITY.

HIS MAJESTY having directed a report to be laid before him, of the provisional ordinances and instructions formerly given relative to the discipline and manœuvres of the Infantry; and being desirous to regulate, definitively, whatever appertains to these objects, has been pleased to order, and hereby orders, that the following system shall be followed*.

SECTION I.

Formation of a Regiment in order of Battle, or Line.

Formation d'un Regiment en Bataille.

WHATEVER may be the situation of a brigade in the order of battle, or line, the older of the two regiments of which it shall be composed, shall be formed on the right, and the younger on the left.

Whatever may be the situation of regiments in the brigade they belong to, the first battalion of each shall be

VOL. I.

B

drawn

* N. B. The edition of 1793 omits this paragraph.

drawn up on the right, and the second on the left. The interval between the battalions shall be eight * toises †.

The ‡ first battalion of each regiment shall be composed of the first company of grenadiers, and of the companies of the first, third, fifth, seventh, ninth, eleventh, thirteenth, and fifteenth battalion-captains of the regiment.

The second battalion of each regiment shall be composed of the second company of grenadiers, and of the companies of the second, fourth, sixth, eighth, tenth, twelfth, fourteenth, and sixteenth battalion-captains of the regiment.

In the first battalion, the battalion-companies shall be drawn up from right to left, in the following order: first, ninth, third, eleventh, fifth, thirteenth, seventh, fifteenth.

In the second battalion, the battalion-companies shall be likewise arranged from right to left, in the following order: second, tenth, fourth, twelfth, sixth, fourteenth, eighth, sixteenth.

When the two battalions, forming a regiment, are separated, and act separately, the above arrangement shall take place, relative to each battalion. When united again, the same arrangement will take place in proportion to the total strength of the regiment, arranged as above.

The two companies of grenadiers shall be denominated, first and second, according to the seniority of the captains who command them. The first company shall be posted
on

* The French foot being to the English in the proportion of 12 inches to 12.785, a toise of France will be = 76 inches, and nearly seven-tenths English. The French toise is reckoned, inaccurately, two English yards.

† There are, occasionally, three battalions in a regiment; in which case, the appellation of *demi-brigade* is now in more frequent use than *regiment*, though these terms are nearly synonymous.

‡ The arrangement of companies differs from our system. They are so disposed, that their rank in grand divisions runs from right to left of each battalion of a regiment, divided into sixteen companies, and two of grenadiers.

Light infantry does not constitute a part of the strength of a regiment, which is now, not unfrequently, called a half brigade, commanded by a colonel, or *chef de demi-brigade*. A *chef de brigade* is the senior colonel of a brigade, who acts as general of brigade in the absence of that officer.—See notes under *Evolutions of the Line*.

on the right of the first battalion, and the second on the left of the second battalion.

Each battalion shall be divided into two half battalions, which will be called *right* and *left wings* (*demi-bataillon de droite, et demi-bataillon de gauche.*)

Each company, whether of grenadiers or a battalion company, shall constitute a * platoon; and the platoons shall be reckoned by the names of the *first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, and eighth*, successively; commencing on the right, and ending on the left of each battalion. The platoon of grenadiers of each battalion will not be included in the number, and will retain its denomination of *grenadiers*.

The first and second platoons of each battalion will form the first grand division; the third and fourth platoons the second grand division; the fifth and sixth platoons the third grand division; and, finally, the seventh and eighth platoons will form the fourth grand division †.

Each platoon will be divided into two equal parts, which shall be denominated subdivisions; that on the right shall be called the first subdivision, and that on the left the *second* subdivision ‡.

Each company, whatever may be its place in the battalion, shall be formed of men numbered in distinct ranks by size, from right to left. One third part, consisting of the tallest men, will form the front rank; one third, composed of the shortest men, will form the centre rank; and the remaining third, the rear rank §.

The distance from rank to rank will be one foot, which will be measured from the breasts of the men of the second and third ranks, to the backs of the men who are in front of them, respectively, in their files. When the knapsack

B 2 .

is

* A *company* and a *platoon* are synonymous terms.

† *Grand divisions* are, in the French system, termed *divisions*.

‡ An English *subdivision* is denominated a *section*.

§ The men are sized in their respective ranks from right to left, and the shortest men of the company form the centre rank. In the Prussian service, the men are sized from right to left in the right wing; and from left to right in the left wing of each battalion; otherwise, the arrangement of the men is as above.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, page 257.

is on, the foot will be measured to the back of the knapsack.

When regiments are on a peace establishment, and are exercised by regiments, or by battalions, the platoons will be formed two deep, in order to occupy, nearly, the same extent of ground as if formed three deep, and on a war establishment. The platoons must be always equalized, by assigning over men, if necessary, from one company to another.

The grenadier company of each battalion will remain attached to its own battalion when singly exercised; but when the entire regiment is drilled, the grenadiers of the second battalion will join those of the first, on their left. The united companies will constitute two platoons of equal strength, which will be termed the *first and second platoons of grenadiers* *.

Situations of the Officers and Non-commissioned Officers in the order of Battle and Line.

Places des officiers et sous-officiers, dans l'ordre de bataille.

The captain in the first rank, on the right of his company or platoon.

The lieutenant in the fourth rank, two paces in the rear of the centre of the second subdivision †.

The second lieutenant, or ensign, in the fourth rank, two paces in the rear of the centre of the first subdivision.

The serjeant major in the fourth rank, in the rear of the right of the second subdivision ‡.

The first serjeant in the rear of the captain, and covering him in the third rank. In the evolutions, this serjeant will be named, *the covering or replacing § non-commissioned officer*, and will be the *director*, or guide, of the right of his platoon.

The second serjeant in the fourth rank, in the rear of the left of the second subdivision. This serjeant, in the

* So called originally; from their commencing attacks by throwing grenades—See *Tactique Prussienne*, page 96.

† The officers and non-commissioned officers have regular posts assigned to them in the fourth rank.

‡ Each company has one of its three serjeants termed a *serjeant-major*.

§ *Sous-officier de remplacement*.

the evolutions, will be the guide or *director* of ~~the~~ *left* platoon.

In the eighth platoon of the first battalion, the second serjeant will be posted on the left of the battalion, in the front rank, covered by a corporal in the rear rank *.

In the second battalion also, whether the platoon on its left consists of grenadiers or of a common company, the second serjeant in the front rank, covered by a corporal in the rear rank, will be posted on the left of the battalion.

The corporal of the department of quarters is posted with the guard or reserve of the colours of his battalion †.

The corporals, according to their height, will be placed on the right and left of their platoons, and in the front and rear ranks, in preference to the centre rank.

The replacing of officers in each company, and also of non-commissioned officers, will be regulated by rank, but in the absence of the captain, and of the lieutenant of a company, the commander of the regiment, should he deem it necessary, may detach a lieutenant from another company to command that, during the drill, whose captain and lieutenant may be absent.

When the regiment is on a war establishment, the third serjeant of each company will be stationed in the fourth rank, in the rear of the left of the first subdivision of his platoon.

Situations of the superior Officers, Adjutants-Major, and Adjutants in Line.

Places des officiers supérieurs, adjudans-majors, et adjudans.

The colonel and the two lieutenant colonels will be mounted. The adjutants-major, and adjutants, shall be on foot.

The colonel shall be posted thirty paces in the rear of the fourth rank, and opposite to the centre of the in-

B 3

terval

* A serjeant, and not an officer, is posted on the left of the battalion. On a war establishment, there are four serjeants to a company.

† The French term this corporal (*caporal fourrier*) of infantry "bas officier d'une compagnie, chargé par le quartier-maître de marquer les logis dans une marche."

the two platoons here mean the left half of the company

terval between the two battalions forming his regiment *.

Each of the lieutenant colonels, twenty paces in the rear of the fourth or supernumerary rank, and opposite to the colours-supporting files.

The adjutant-major of each battalion, eight paces in the rear of the fourth rank of his battalion, and opposite to the centre of its right wing †.

The adjutant of each battalion, eight paces in the rear of the fourth rank of his battalion, and opposite to the centre of its left wing.

Posts of the Drummers and Musicians in Line.

Places des tambours et musiciens.

The drums of each battalion formed in rank entire, if the regiment is on a peace establishment; and in two ranks, if on a war establishment; will be placed fifteen paces in the rear of the fifth platoon of their battalion. The drum-major will be in front of the drummers of the first battalion, and the corporal of the drums in front of those of the second. The musicians, in one rank, will be placed two paces in the rear of the first battalion drummers ‡.

Guard files of the Colours.

Gardes du drapeau.

The guard of the colours of each battalion shall consist of eight corporals of the quarter-master's department, and belonging to the battalion companies. This guard shall be posted on the left of the second subdivision of the fourth platoon, and will constitute a part of that subdivision §.

The first rank of this guard shall be composed of the serjeant major, who shall carry the colours, and of two corporals

* See Rules and Regulations, part III, Formation of the battalion.

† Each battalion has an adjutant major and an adjutant.

‡ The drums and music are in rear of the fifth battalion company. The terms "chef de demi-brigade," and "chef de bataillon," are falling into disuse, and the old appellations of colonel and lieutenant-colonel are again becoming current.

§ The guard of the colours forms a part of the fourth company, and is not distinct from the two centre companies.

corporals of the above department, one on his right, and the other on his left *.

The centre and rear ranks of the guard of the colours shall be formed of three corporals of the same department. These corporals, the non-commissioned officers, covering captains of companies, and likewise the serjeants in the supernumerary † ranks, shall have their arms advanced.

The three corporals of the quarter-master's department, who may be distinguished for regularity, and perfect appearance under arms and in marching, shall be placed in the centre rank of the guard of the colours.

The colonel, and in his absence the commanding officer of the regiment, shall select in each regiment, the serjeant-major who ought to carry the colours.

It is of the utmost importance in marching in battle order, or line, that this serjeant should be thoroughly instructed to observe the precise length, and exact cadence of step; and, in his own person, to prolong a given direction without deviation.

Instruction of Regiments.

Instructions des régimens.

The colonel, and in his absence the commanding officer of each regiment, shall be responsible for the general instruction of the officers, non-commissioned officers, and soldiers of his regiment.

Instruction of Officers.

Instruction des officiers.

The instruction of officers includes what is taught under the three heads, *the discipline of the soldier, that of the platoon, and that of the battalion.* It cannot be completely established without joining theory to practice.

Independent

* Il y a dans chaque compagnie un bas officier gentilhomme, qui passe à son tour au rang d'officier, c'est le porte-enseigne. A person must hold this situation some years before he can be appointed an officer. This regulation generally establishes excellent non-commissioned officers.—*Tactique Prussienne*, page 82.

† Serre-file or fourth rank. “On nomme ainsi le soldat du dernier rang d'une compagnie, d'un bataillon, &c. qui termine la hauteur par la queue, comme le chef de file la termine par la tête.”—*Nouveau Dictionnaire Militaire*.

Independent of field drills, there shall be, in each regiment, a theoretical instructor *.

In conformity to this, the commandant of each regiment will, as often as he may deem it requisite, assemble the officers at his own quarters, or at those of the senior officer of each battalion, in order to explain, or cause to be explained to them, the principles on which are founded these three species of discipline.

No officer shall be deemed instructed, until he shall be capable of commanding, and of perfectly explaining the three parts composing this system.

In these instructions, the principles and theoretic spirit of the evolutions shall be principally attended to, without ever requiring from the officers to learn the literal detail of the text.

The officers shall be frequently exercised by the superior officers in marching, and the utmost pains must be bestowed in giving them an accurate position under arms; in teaching them to form regularly; and to observe the exact length and cadence of the step.

Instruction of the Non-commissioned Officers.

Instruction de sous-officiers.

The instruction of the non-commissioned officers shall comprehend the *discipline of the soldier*, and that of the *platoon*; and they shall be required to possess an accurate knowledge of the exercise and use of their own arms, and of the manual exercise, and also of all that has a reference to the manual exercise of the soldier, and to the firings and marching.

The adjutants-major, and adjutants, being especially entrusted with the instruction of the non-commissioned officers, the chiefs of regiments shall commence by ascertaining the certainty, that these are themselves instructed, and shall then render them responsible for the instruction of the non-commissioned officers.

The adjutants-major and adjutants shall begin by instructing, with the greatest care, all the serjeants-major, and

* In the expressions "*école du soldat, école du peloton, école du bataillon*," *école* is translated figuratively and comprehensively, by the word that conveys its import here, "*discipline*."

and two of the most intelligent non-commissioned officers of each company.

These serjeants being thoroughly instructed, shall each choose two or three other non-commissioned officers in their respective companies, and shall instruct them in the same manner, under the directions of the adjutants and serjeants-major.

This first degree of instruction, including only *the discipline of the soldier*, being established, the non-commissioned officers of each battalion * shall be formed into one platoon of three deep, with a fourth rank, and commanded by a chief of platoon, having his covering serjeant. This platoon will be drilled by the adjutant-major and adjutant, according to the directions laid down for the *discipline of the platoon*.

This instruction having principally for its object to enable the non-commissioned officers thoroughly to instruct the recruits, all the principles of the two first species of discipline must be explained to them, first, on the field of exercise, and afterwards in their respective theoretic schools, including the various duties of the guides, or *directing serjeants*, during the exercise of the battalion.

In order that this system of instruction may be afterwards constantly maintained, the adjutants-major and the adjutants shall from time to time, assemble the non-commissioned officers, either for the purpose of drill, or for that of inculcating a knowledge of theory.

In the event of casualties, or promotion taking place among the non-commissioned officers, the serjeants-major shall be required to instruct the new serjeants and corporals, each those of his own company; and the adjutants-major and adjutants must be attentive in seeing this duty diligently discharged.

The commanders of regiments are to cause the platoons of the colours, and the *general directing serjeants* of the battalion, to be frequently exercised in the practice of marching in the order of battle, or in line †.

The

* A French battalion consists generally of between 800 and 900 men. "Les bataillons Français sont de 8 à 900 hommes, l'un dans l'autre."—Campagnes de Moreau.

† To be drawn up in "order of battle" or "in line" are expressions of synonymous import.

The most scrupulous attention must be bestowed on giving to the bearers of the colours the habit of prolonging, without varying to right or left, a certain given direction, and of maintaining, with the utmost precision, the length, as well as the cadence of the step.

SECTION II.

Discipline of the Soldier.

*E'cole du Soldat *.*

THIS species of discipline, which has for its object the instruction of recruits, having an influence on, and being intimately connected with, the discipline or instruction of companies, on which depends the discipline of the battalions and of regiments, ought to be established and inculcated with the utmost care and attention on the part of the superior officers. The adjutants-major will peculiarly direct and command this department; and they will be responsible to the commanding officer of the regiment for the accuracy and progress of the instruction. In consequence of this, the two adjutants-major and the two adjutants shall constantly attend at this drill, each in turn, according to a roster.

Young officers, recently joined, shall be drilled and occupied at least six months, in the *school of discipline of recruits*, under the orders of the adjutants-major; and such officers cannot be exempted from this attendance, but by the order of the officer commanding the regiment, when they shall be able to execute duties on their own parts; to command well; and explain clearly all that shall be laid down for *the discipline of the soldier, and for that of the platoon* †.

The

* *Soldier*, from *soldat*, derived from *solde*, pay. The term *soldat* was not used previous to the time of Francis the first. They were called, originally, *avanturiers*.—See Nouveau Dictionnaire Militaire.

† In the Prussian service, the supernumerary rank is termed, from its great utility in keeping the ranks compact, in order, and filling up openings arising from casualties, *the closing officers and non-commissioned officers*.—See Saldern's Tactics, page 171.

The captains of companies being responsible to the colonel of the regiment, and to the superior officer of their battalion, for the general instruction of their respective companies, shall by no means neglect that of their recruits. They will, consequently, point out the serjeants and corporals most capable of drilling them, and will give it in charge to the officers and serjeant-major of their company, to pay a strict attention to the progress of their discipline.

There shall be always, when conveniently possible, a general parade appointed, where the recruits of each regiment shall assemble; and one of the superior officers shall attend there, when his other occupations may admit of it *.

When there shall be a certain number of recruits qualified to enter on *the discipline of the platoon*, the adjutant-major will unite them, and cause them to be drilled, either by one of the young officers attached to the school of platoon discipline, or by a non-commissioned officer. He will himself overlook this instruction, and will direct the progression laid down in *the discipline of the platoon* to be followed.

When the adjutant-major judges that one or more of the recruits composing the platoon are qualified to join the battalion, he will cause the same to be reported to the officers commanding the companies to which such men belong, and will direct them to be exercised in their presence. The officers commanding companies, if they find them sufficiently instructed, will, in that case, direct their joining the battalion.

Division of the Discipline of the Soldier † or Recruit.

Division de l'école du Soldat.

The discipline of the soldier shall be divided into four parts. The first part will include all that ought to be taught the recruit before his arms are delivered to him.

The second will include the manual exercise, the loadings and firings.

The

* In the French service, by a superior officer, a field-officer is generally meant.

† See Rules and Regulations, part I. Recruit.

The third will comprehend the different steps, the principles of marching to the front, and to a flank, the alignments and dressings, the wheelings, and the changes of direction.

Each part shall be divided into four lessons, as follows.

Part First.

- Lesson 1. { Position of the soldier without arms.
 { Motion of the head to right and left.
 Lesson 2. Facing to the right, left, and right about.
 Lesson 3. Principles of the ordinary step direct.
 Lesson 4. Principles of the oblique step.

Part Second.

- Lesson 1. Principles of shouldered arms.
 Lesson 2. The platoon exercise.
 Lesson 3. Loading in quick, and quickest time.
 Lesson 4. The direct fire, the oblique fire, and firing by independent files.

Part Third.

- Lesson 1. The junction of from five to nine men, in order to march to the front; and practising the different steps.
 Lesson 2. March to a flank.
 Lesson 3. Principles of the alignment, or dressing.
 Lesson 4. Principles of wheeling and changes of direction.

Each lesson shall be followed by observations demonstrating the utility of the principles which shall have been prescribed. The instructors cannot study them too much, nor be too particular in their application in conveying their instructions to the recruits.

The word of command shall be always animated and loud, in proportion to the number of recruits at exercise.

There shall be two species of words of command, viz. those of *caution* and *execution* *.

The words of *caution*, which shall be distinguished in the instructions *by italics*, must be distinctly pronounced, at the full extent of the voice, dwelling a little on the last syllable.

The

* *D'avertissement, et ceux d'exécution.*

The commands of *execution* will be distinguished in the instructions by *capitals*, and shall be pronounced with a firm, short, tone of voice.

The words of command, the expression of which in the instructions shall be separated by hyphens, shall be cut, or divided, in the same manner, in pronouncing them.

The instructors will always explain what they teach, in few words, clearly and distinctly. They shall, themselves, always execute what they command, in order thus to exemplify the principle they are explaining. They will particularly attend to accustoming the recruit to assume, of his own accord, the position he ought; and they shall not place him in the proper position, till his want of comprehension shall oblige them so to do.

PART I.

1. The *first part* of the *discipline of the soldier* shall be taught, as much as possible, recruits singly, or two or three together, at most, when the number of recruits to be trained, and of the instructors that can be spared for the purpose, shall render it necessary. In this case, they shall be placed in one rank, without arms, at the distance of one pace from each other.

LESSON I.

Position of the Soldier.

Position du Soldat.

(Pl. III. Fig. 1. and 2.)

2. The heels on the same line, as near each other as the conformation of the man will admit of; the feet forming with each other, an angle something less than a right one, and turned out equally; the knees straight, but not stiff; the body perpendicular on the haunches, and leaning forward; the shoulders kept back, and falling equally; the arms hanging naturally; the elbows not separated from the body; the palm of the hand turned a little outwards; the little finger back, or behind, and touching the seam of the breeches; the head well up, without being constrained; the chin tending towards the neck, without covering it; and the eyes fixed on the ground, at the distance of fifteen paces in front.

3. *Observations relative to the position of the soldier.**Observations relatives à la position du Soldat.*

The heels on the same line ;

Because that, if one was more behind than the other, the shoulder would either incline in the direction of the retired heel, or the position of the soldier would be constrained.

The heels more or less distant from each other ;

Because men whose legs are curved, or who have the calf of the leg brawny, cannot join the heels.

The feet equally turned out, and not forming too large an angle ;

Because that if one foot was turned out more than the other, the shoulder would follow the motion ; and if the feet were turned out too much, it would not be possible to incline forward the upper part of the body, without rendering unsteady the whole position.

The knees straight, but not stiff ;

Because that if they were straightened back, or stiffened too much, constraint and fatigue would naturally arise.

The body perpendicular on the haunches ;

Because it is the only mode of giving a man a perfect equilibrium. The instructor will observe, that the major part of recruits have a bad habit of inclining or stooping a shoulder, of bending the side, or of advancing the haunch, particularly the left, when under arms. He will attend to the correction of these faults.

The upper part of the body leaning forward ;

Because recruits are inclined, in general, to do just the contrary ; to project the belly, to bend, or hollow the reins, and to reverse or hang back the shoulders, when they wish to hold themselves upright ; circumstances attended with the greatest disadvantages in marching, as will be explained in the observations on the principles of the step. The habit of leaning forward the upper part of the body, is so important to acquire, that the instructor, in the beginning, ought to establish this position by force, especially with respect to such men whose natural position, or carriage, is of a contrary tendency.

The shoulders kept back ;

Because

Because that if the shoulders projected forward, rendering the back rounded, the general defect in the appearance of men from the country, men of such description could neither dress themselves in line, nor use their arms with dexterity. The instructor will, therefore, see that the dress and the vest of the recruits are sufficiently easy and wide, so as not to oppose any restraints to the position which he teaches them. In keeping in, or back, the shoulders, the instructor must not press them too far back, which will occasion a hollow in the region of the reins, a thing that must be carefully avoided.

The arms hanging naturally; the elbows not separated from the body; the palm of the hand turned a little outwards, the little finger behind, or back, and placed against, or touching the seam of the breeches * ;

Because these positions are necessary to enable the soldier to carry shouldered arms perfectly, and to occupy in the ranks only the space requisite for using his arms with facility, for which purposes the placing of his elbows properly is essentially necessary. This position of the arms, elbows, and hands, answers these purposes, and is besides effectual in keeping back the shoulders.

The head well up, without being constrained ;

Because that if the head was held awkwardly stiff, the effect would be communicated to the upper part of the body, the movement of which would be constrained, besides rendering the general attitude painful and fatiguing.

The eyes fixed straight to the front ;

Because this position of the head direct to the front, is the surest means of accustoming the soldier to maintain the squareness of the shoulders, an essential principle, to which he must be habituated with the greatest care.

4. The instructor having established the position, shall teach the recruit the motions of the head, called, *Eyes to*

C 2

the

* They place the little finger, and not the thumb, at the seam of the pantaloons, as being the natural position, when the arms hang naturally, with the body leaning forward. When the arms are thus suspended, the palms of the hands must necessarily be a little turned outwards. In the Prussian service, the seam of the sleeve is directed to be seen, and the flat of the hand is to touch the thigh.—See Saldern's Tactics, page 4.

the right, and *Eyes to the left*, for which purpose, he will give the words of command, as follow :

1. *Eyes to the* = RIGHT. (*Tête à Droite.*)

2. FRONT. (*Fixe.*)

5. At the conclusion of the second part of the first word of command, the soldier will turn his head to the right, but not suddenly, so that the corner of the left eye, nearest to the nose, shall be in a line with the buttons of the waistcoat, his eyes being fixed in the line of the eyes of the men of the rank he stands in.

6. On hearing the second word, he will turn back the head horizontally, to the direct position to the front, which ought to be the habitual position of the soldier.

7. The motion of *Eyes* = TO THE = LEFT, (*Tête à gauche*) will be executed in the contrary manner.

8. The instructor shall take care that the motion of the head may not alter the squareness of the shoulders, which might happen, if this motion were too quick.

9. When the instructor sees it necessary to order the rank *to stand at ease*, he will give the word,

STAND AT EASE. (*Repos.*)

10. On hearing this word of command, it will not be required from the soldier to maintain either his position or immobility.

11. The instructor, to make him resume both, will give the following word of command :

1. ATTENTION. (*Garde à vous.*)

2. PLATOON * (or SQUAD.) (*Peloton.*)

12. At the first word, the soldier will fix his attention. At the second, he will resume the prescribed position, and immobility.

LESSON

* *Peloton* means, in battalion arrangement, "a company." In carrying on a drill, as here, it amounts in signification to the word "squad."

LESSON II.

To the right, left, and right about face.*

A droite, à gauche, demi-tour à droite.

13. The facings to the *right* and *left* shall be executed by one word. The instructor will give the word,

1. *Platoon (or Squad) will face to the right flank (or left.)* (*Peloton par le flanc droit (ou gauche.)*)

2. *To the right (or left) = FACE.* (*A droite, (ou à gauche.)*)

14. At the second word of command, the recruit will turn on his left heel, raising a little the point of the left foot, and will, at the same time, carry back the right heel to the side of the left, placing it on the same line.

15. *To the right about face*, shall be executed in two motions. The instructor will give the word,

1. *Squad.*

2. *To the right about = FACE.* (*Demi tour = a droite.*)

First word (or time) of the second command.

16. At the word, *to the right about*, make a half face to the right, and the right foot must be slipped back to the rear, so that the buckle shall be opposite to, and three full inches from, the left heel; laying hold, at the same time, of the cartouch-box by the corner, with the right hand.

Second word of the second command.

17. At the word *face*, the recruit raising the points of the feet, or toes, and keeping the hams straight, will turn on both heels, and face to the rear, carrying back, at the same time, the right heel to the side of the left, and quitting the cartouch-box.

18. When the recruit carries arms, at the first word of facing to the right about, he shall turn his musket with the left hand, as will be explained in describing the first motion of loading; and he will resume the position of

C 3

shouldered

* The French soldiers do not face to the *left about*. Their officers deem the movement superfluous. In the Prussian service, the troops, generally, face to the *right about*, and front again to the *left about*.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, page 258.

shouldered arms, at the moment of placing the right heel in contact with the left.

19. The instructor will take care that these movements do not derange the position of the body, which ought to remain inclined forward.

LESSON III.

Principles of the Ordinary Step direct.

Principes du pas ordinaire direct.

20. The length of the ordinary step shall be two * feet, reckoning from heel to heel ; and 76 of these paces shall be taken in a minute.

21. The instructor seeing the recruit confirmed in his position, shall explain to him the principles and mechanism of the step, by placing himself three or four paces in front of, and facing the recruit, and by shewing him slowly, the mode of executing the step, thus exemplifying the principles he is explaining. He will give the following words :

1. *Forward.* (*En avant.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

(Plate III. Fig. 3.)

22. At the first word, the recruit shall throw the weight of the body on the right leg.

23. At the second word, he will step off, smartly, with the left foot, projecting it a pace of two feet, smoothly, and without jerking the body, the ham straight, the toes pointing a little downwards, and with the knee turned somewhat outwards. He will, at the same time, carry forward the weight of the body, and without striking the sole against the ground, will plant the foot flat, precisely at the distance prescribed from the right foot, the whole weight

* Following the proportions of the English and French foot, the French step will be two feet one inch and nearly five-tenths English measure ; being four inches and five-tenths less than the English military step.

The Prussian ordinary step is 28 inches in length, and 75 of these are taken in a minute.—See Saldern's *Tactics*, page 5.

Saldern directs 175 feet to be moved over in a minute. This divided by 75 gives the above for each step. *La Tactique Prussienne* makes the number of steps 76 in a minute. The 6 may be an error of the press ; for in such a service there must be uniformity.

weight of the body resting on the foot which comes to the ground. The recruit shall smartly, but without a jerk or shock of the body, pass the right foot to the front, carry it near the ground, and will plant it at the same distance, and in the same manner, as has been explained relative to the left. He will march in this manner without crossing the legs, keeping the shoulders square, and the head always in the direct position*.

24. When the instructor sees it necessary to order a halt, he will give the words :

1. *Squad.* (*Peloton.*)

2. HALT. (*Halte.*)

25. At the second word, which shall be given at the instant when either foot may be coming to the ground, the recruit shall bring up the foot which is in the rear to the side of the other, without striking it against the one planted in front, or against the ground.

26. *Observations relative to the Principles of the Step.*

Observations relatives aux principes du pas.

To carry the weight of the body on the right leg at the cautionary word, *forward* ;

To prepare the soldier to take the first step smartly, a thing very essential for a body of men.

The point of the foot carried low, but without affectation or constraint ;

Because by carrying the point of the foot low, the ham is stretched, and the foot is ready to be placed flat.

The point of the foot turned a little out ;

Because that if the feet were turned too much out, the body would be subject to waver, and be unsteady.

The upper part of the body thrown forward ;

The weight of the body bearing on the foot which is just planted, the foot in the rear can be raised with ease, and the step will not be shortened.

To

* See Rules, part I. § 5, 6, 7, 1, 2, 3, 4.

The Prussian step is of two Rhinish feet four inches, and 76 of these are taken in a minute. In *stepping out*, each step is two feet eight inches. The Prussian deploy step in quick time, is at the rate of 108 in a minute. The Prussian troops *step out*, occasionally, when deploying in quick time. In *stepping short*, the heel of the foot in the air is placed two inches short of the point of the foot on the ground.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, pages 264, 265.

To march with the ham straight ;

Because that without this, a body of men could not, without constraint or * breaking, march as if each man was independent ; and since no two men march absolutely in the same manner, it becomes necessary that recruits should learn to march with an uniform step, which may be marked and cadenced, without which there would be no regulated connection.

To carry along the foot near the ground ;

Because that if the soldiers raised the foot more than was necessary, time would be lost, and the march would be attended with useless fatigue. Besides, if there was no fixed principle, they would raise the foot and bend the knee, some more, some less ; the feet would not be brought at the same time to the ground ; and there would be neither cadence nor uniformity.

† To plant the foot flat, without striking it against the ground ;

In order to avoid the balancing of the body, and the shortening of the step, which would take place if the heel were brought to the ground first, or if the foot was struck against the ground in placing it ; which latter circumstance would be attended with the inconvenience of useless fatigue to the soldier, and of breaking the cadence, because some would raise the foot more, and others less.

The head held up, and direct to the front ;

Because this position enables the recruit to march square to the front, without bringing forward either shoulder.

27. The instructor will explain to the recruit, occasionally, the time of the cadence of the step, by giving the word *one* when the foot is raised, and *two* when it ought to be planted on the ground ; observing that 76 cadenced steps are taken in a minute. This method will contribute exceedingly to impress on the mind of the recruit, the two parts of the time of which every step is composed.

LESSON

* “ *Se decoudre*,” in the original, meaning literally unstitching, and, figuratively, opening out, bulging out, or breaking.

† The Prussians bring the toe down before the heel, in order to preserve the knee stiff.—See Saldern, page 5.

LESSON IV.

Principles of the Oblique Step.

Principes du pas oblique.

28. This step will be in ordinary time, 76 steps being taken in a minute. The length of this step will be pointed out hereafter *.

29. When the recruit has acquired the habit of marching accurately with the direct step, and of taking steps of equal length in the same time, the instructor shall teach him the oblique step, which he shall decompose, or take to pieces, in order that the recruit may the better comprehend its mechanism, or component parts, as follow.

(Plate II.)

30. The recruit being steady in his rank, the instructor will make him step off with the right foot, to the right and front, obliquely, and shall make him plant it 24 inches nearly from the left; observing to make him turn the point of the right foot a little inwards, to prevent the bringing forward of the left shoulder. The recruit will rest in this position †.

31. At the word *two*, by the instructor, the recruit shall carry his left foot over the shortest possible line, and plant it 17 inches in front of the right heel. He will rest in this position.

32. He will continue to march in this manner, at the words *one* and *two*; stopping at each step, and paying the greatest attention in keeping the shoulders square, and the head direct to the front.

33. The oblique step to the left shall be executed on the same principles, the recruit stepping off with the left foot.

34. After

* See Rules, § 6, ordinary step of 75 paces in a minute, part I. The foot of the side obliqued to in the Prussian service, moves over a line forming an angle of forty-five degrees with the perpendicular, and the other foot is planted immediately in front of the foot of the side obliqued to; by which means the person obliquing moves over a line forming an angle with the perpendicular, of $22\frac{1}{2}$ degrees. This is nearly as above.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, page 266.

† See Rules, Part I. § 8. Oblique step.

34. After some lessons of this kind, the recruit shall oblique to the right and left, without dwelling on the step, as follows.

35. The recruit marching to the front, in ordinary time, shall receive these words of command ;

1. *To the right oblique.* (*Oblique à droite.*)

2. MARCH *. (*Marche.*)

36. At the second word which shall be given, at the instant when the left foot is coming to the ground, the recruit shall commence the oblique step to the right, observing to conform to the above directions relative to the formation and length of the step, and squareness of the shoulders to the front, but without stopping at each step, he must march 76 paces in a minute.

37. Obliquing to the left shall be executed on the same principles, the instructor giving the word *march*, at the instant when the right foot comes to the ground.

38. In order to resume the march to the front direct, the instructor shall give the words,

1. *Forward.* (*En avant.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

39. At the second word, which will be given when either foot is just coming to the ground, the recruit shall
resume

* “ To march well, it is farther necessary that the soldier should move with a stiff knee, and carry his body rather forward. The first is obtained by accustoming him to bring his toe to the ground before his heel, so that when he brings down the foot, he touches the ground more with the toe than with the heel; by this means, the knee will keep stiff. The second is obtained by making him understand that the body always rests upon the leg on which he stands, and not on that which he intends to lift up. This is another reason which will oblige him to keep his knee stiff. Therefore, an officer who teaches recruits or a body of men to march, must keep himself at a certain distance from them, and is not to suppose that his men march well, until he can see no longer the soles of their feet. It is only then that they march well.”—See Saldern’s *Tactics*, pages 5 and 6.

In the common walk of life, the heel comes to the ground forming an angle with the horizon, proportioned to the height of the man, and length of the step. This angle is from ten to fifteen degrees. It would be impossible to produce uniformity of military marching without the abolition of this angle, and the assumption of a stiff knee. This has rendered it necessary, occasionally, to stand at ease, and march at ease, called *route-marching*.

resume the direct march, and the ordinary step of two feet.

Observations relative to the oblique step.

Observations relatives au pas oblique.

40. The instructor shall diligently observe, conformable to what has been inculcated in the preceding *lesson*, that the soldier marches with the ham straight; that the weight of the body bears on the foot on the ground; that the feet shall pass over the shortest line possible to the place where they ought to be planted; that the head is kept up, and direct to the front; and that the shoulders are carried square, without turning forward.

41. The recruits must be exercised much in marching with this step, which is attended with difficulty at the commencement, but which is extremely useful in the movements of the line. It is, besides, an excellent mode of setting up the recruits, and of habituating them to maintain the direction of the shoulders. For these purposes, the recruits will be required to march fifty or sixty paces obliquely before the direct march is resumed.

42. When the recruit is perfect in marching the oblique step, the instructor shall not be rigorously precise in causing the rules laid down for the length of this step to be followed. He shall establish it as a principle, to gain as much ground as possible to a flank, and to the front in the same proportion *, without deranging the line of the shoulders,

* The expression in the text is, "*et en avant dans la même proportion.*" This may appear to involve an obscurity, or even a contradiction, as more ground must, from the nature of the step, be gained in the same space of time to the front, than to the flank. This is the real meaning, and the expression is translated as it stands. In this very accurate system we shall seldom have occasion to make remarks of this description. The line obliqued on forms always an acute angle with the perpendicular to the front, making the space gained to the front greater than that gained to a flank. If the obliquing line bisected the right angle, the spaces gained either way would be equal. The clear sense, therefore, of the expression is, that in every step of obliquing, if, for instance, to the right, the right foot moves as far, reckoned horizontally, or on a parallel, to the right, as the left heel, when planted, will be distant from the right heel in its rear.—See plate II, volume II, page 5, and notes under it.

shoulders, which must be always square to the front, as in the march to the front direct.

General Observations on the Direct and Oblique Steps.

Observations générales relatives au pas direct et oblique.

43. In order to ascertain whether the position of the body is conformable to the principles laid down ; whether the step is regularly formed ; and whether the weight of the body rests on the foot which is on the ground ; the instructor shall frequently post himself from six to twelve paces in front, facing the recruits ; if he does not perceive the soles of the shoes when the feet are lifted and carried forward to be placed on the ground, and if he does not observe any movement of the shoulders, or a waving to and fro of the upper part of the body, he may rest assured that the principles of marching are strictly conformed to.

44. When the principles of the step are shewn to two or three men at a time, accurate dressing need not be required, as that might divide their attention ; besides, when they have acquired the habit of taking steps of equal length, in equal times, they will have learnt the true means of preserving the alignment.

45. The instructor should, when drilling two or three recruits together, place them at the distance of one pace from each other, to prevent them from acquiring a bad habit of spreading out the elbows, or of leaning against the men on either side of them.

PART II.

Shouldered Arms.

*Port d'armes *.*

46. The instructor of the drill shall not carry on the recruits to this second part of the *discipline of the soldier* till they are perfectly confirmed in the position of the body, and in the formation of the direct and oblique steps.

47. The instructor shall then place three men in one rank, elbow to elbow, and shall instruct them to hold their arms at the shoulder, as follows :

* See Rules, Part I. § 23.

LESSON I.

*Principles of Shouldered Arms.**Principes du port d'armes.*

48. The recruit being placed as directed in the *first lesson* of the first part, the instructor will make him raise and turn up the left hand, without bending the wrist, the part of the arm from the elbow downwards only acting, and shall raise the musket perpendicularly, to be placed as follows :

(Plate III. Fig. 1. and 2.)

The musket in the left hand, the arm being a little bent ; the elbow back and joined to the body without pressure ; the palm of the hand firmly against the exterior rounding of the butt ; the exterior edge of the butt resting on the first articulation joining the fingers to the palm ; the heel of the fore part of the butt resting between the first and second fingers ; the thumb above, in front, the third and little fingers under the butt, which must be supported more or less kept back, according to the conformation of the recruit, in such a manner that the firelock, seen from the front, may rest always perpendicular, and that the movement of the thigh in marching may not raise it, or disturb it in its perpendicular position ; the ramrod against the point, nearly, of the shoulder ; and the right hand and arm hanging naturally, as described in the *first lesson* of the first part.

*Observations on Shouldered Arms.**Observations relatives au port d'armes.*

49. Recruits have frequently defects in the formation of the shoulders, breast, and haunches. The instructor ought to endeavour, as much as possible, to correct these defects, previous to delivering arms to the recruit, and ought afterwards to have a constant attention in regulating his mode of shouldered arms, according to these defects of conformation, in such way, that the general appearance of the men may be uniform, without constraining their positions.

50. He will remark, that men are very apt to derange the position of the body when arms are placed at the

shoulders, and especially to distort the shoulders, which deprives the firelock of its point of support, and makes the men sink the left hand to prevent it from falling. This also occasions a sinking of the left shoulder, a curvature of the side, and an extension of the elbows, to restore the equilibrium, &c.

51. The instructor will take pains to correct all these faults, and continually to rectify the position of the men. He must frequently take their arms from them, in order to replace them properly. He will avoid fatiguing them in the beginning, and will endeavour to render this position so natural and easy, that they may remain in it for a long time without fatigue.

52. Finally, the instructor ought to bestow much attention in directing that the firelock, when shouldered, is not carried either too high or too low. If too high, the left arm, forming a curve at the elbow, would open out from the body, render the position of the firelock unsteady, and make the soldier occupy more space in the ranks than he ought. If carried too low, he would not have the space necessary for using his arms with freedom, because the fatigue sustained by the left arm, thus sunk down, would affect the squareness of the shoulders, &c.

53. The instructor, previous to proceeding to the second lesson, shall make the recruits, at shouldered arms, practise the motions of *eyes right*, *eyes left*, and also the facings, *to the right*, *to the left*, and *to the right about*.

LESSON II.

Platoon Exercise.

Maniement des Armes.

54. The platoon exercise shall be taught three men in a rank, with their elbows touching, and to the same afterwards in file.

55. The execution of each command shall be in consequence of one time, denoting the word of command divided into distinct motions, in order to impress the component parts more strongly on the minds of the recruits.

56. On hearing the last syllable of the word of command, the recruit shall execute the intended motion lively and

and smartly. On hearing the respective words *two*, and *three*, the remaining motions shall be gone through. When the recruits shall know thoroughly the position relating to each motion included in a word of command, they shall be instructed how to execute them, without dwelling on each separately; but they must observe the mechanism of the motions, to be confirmed in the use of arms; and to avoid the inconvenience resulting from what is termed *an unseen shifting of the firelock, as if by slight of hand, from the proper into an inaccurate position* *.

57. The platoon exercise shall be taught in the following order of arrangement. The instructor shall give the words of command,

LOAD BY TWELVE WORDS OF COMMAND.

Charge en douze temps.

1. *Load*=ARMS. (*Prime and load.*)

(*Chargez=vos armes.*)

One word, and two motions.

First motion.

58. Half face to the right, on the left heel, placing at the same time the right foot square behind the left heel, the buckle resting against that heel: turn the firelock with the left hand, the lock outwards, at the same time, seizing the small stock with the right hand, the firelock being detached from the shoulder, and supported, perpendicularly, on the palm of the left hand remaining under the butt.

Second motion.

59. Sink the firelock into a slanting position with the right hand, the left meeting and seizing it at the swell, near the † tail pipe, the thumb of the left hand pointing upwards along the swell; the butt under the fore part of the right arm; the breech and small-stock resting against the body, two inches nearly under the right nipple or breast; the top of the barrel as high as the eye; the

D 2

guard

* *Excamoter l'arme*, as it were, to slur over the motions.

† *Capucine*=Nasturtium, Indian Cress, or monk's hood, means a circular piece of iron, of which there are three that secure the barrel of a French musquet in the hollow of the stock. The barrel of an English musquet is otherwise, and more neatly secured without these clumsy contrivances.

guard turned a little outwards ; the left elbow supported on the side at the haunch ; the thumb of the right hand against the top of the pan-steel, above the level of the flint ; and placed there at the moment when the firelock is thrown into the flanting position ; the four fingers of the right hand shut ; and the right arm, from the elbow to the wrist, lying along the butt.

2. *Open*=PANS. (*Ouvrez=le bassinet.*)

One word and one motion.

60. Throw open the pan with the thumb of the right hand, the left hand resisting and holding the piece firmly ; apply the right hand to the cartridge-box, by retiring the right elbow, and passing the hand between the butt and the body ; and open the cartridge-box.

3. *Handle*=CARTRIDGE. (*Prenez=la cartouche.*)

One word and one motion.

61. Take the cartridge between the two fore-fingers and thumb, and carry it to the mouth, ready for the teeth to act, the right hand passing between the body and the butt.

4. *Tear or bite*=CARTRIDGE. (*Déchirez=la cartouche *.*)

One word and one motion.

Pl. III. Fig. 4.

62. Bite off the top, to the powder, holding the cartridge firm where the powder has been uncovered, between the thumb and two fore-fingers ; sink down the cartridge, holding it perpendicularly against the pan, the palm of the right hand turned towards the body, and the right elbow supported or leaning on, and against the butt.

5. PRIME. (*Amorcez.*)

One word and one motion.

63. Sink forward the head, and look down to the pan in filling it with powder ; press close the top of the cartridge at the opening, between the thumb and fore-finger ; raise the head, placing the right hand behind the pan, and hold

* In our system, this is done at the word "handle cartridges." Military men will readily perceive that the French exercise is described with a minuteness that might be deemed tedious, were we not to consider the nature of the description of men who must acquire it.

hold the little finger, and the third finger firm against the back of the pan.

6. *Shut*—PANS. (*Fermez*—*le bassinet.*)

One word and one motion.

64. Hold the firelock firm with the left hand; shut the pan close and firmly with the two last fingers, holding always the cartridge between the thumb and two fore fingers; seize immediately the small-stock with the two first fingers and palm of the right hand; keep the right wrist close to the body, and the elbow pointing to the rear, and a little detached from the body.

7. *LOAD.* (*L'arme*—*A GAUCHE.*)

One word and two motions.

First motion.

65. With the right arm smartly stretched, without lowering the right shoulder, swing round the firelock to the left thigh, against the whole length of which the butt must bear strongly, turning, at the same time, the ramrod towards the body, opening and letting the piece slip through the left hand, as far as the middle pipe, the lock resting on the thumb of the right hand; face, at the same time, to the front, turning on the left heel, carrying the right foot forward, the heel resting against the buckle of the left.

Second motion. *

Pl. III. Fig. 5.

66. Quit the firelock with the right hand, sinking it with the left along and near the body, raising, at the same time, the right hand within two inches of the barrel, to the top of it; let the butt fall to the ground without striking against it with any degree of shock; and let the left hand, holding the firelock as described, rest against the body, under the level of the lowest waistcoat-button, the musket in contact with the left thigh, the sight on the barrel, opposite to the middle line of the body.

D 3.

8. *Cartridge*

* The loading is completed without half facing to the left from the original front position. It is said that this preserves the alignment after effecting the loading. Carrying the right foot forward, in the first motion, gives the body the same degree of ease as half facing to the left, or as we call it, *casting round*.

8. *Cartridge*=INTO THE BARREL*.

One word and one motion.

Pl. III. Fig. 5.

Glance to the upper end of the barrel; turn smartly the out or upper side of the right hand towards the body, in order to discharge the powder into the barrel-mouth, for this purpose, raising the elbow as high as the wrist, shake the cartridge in turning it into the barrel, and leave the hand reversed, the fingers closed, without pressure.

9. *Draw*=RAMROD. (*Tirez=la baguette.*)

One word and two motions.

First motion.

68. Lower, smartly, the right elbow, and seize the ramrod between the thumb and fore finger bent, keeping the other fingers shut; draw the ramrod smartly by extending the arm, with the whole of the fingers opened out; seize it back-handed, at the middle, with the fore finger and thumb, the palm of the hand outwards; turn it quickly between the bayonet and the body, at the same time closing the fingers upon it, the ramrods of the men in the centre and rear ranks, in turning, grazing the right shoulder of the man in the rank before them in the same file; the ramrod forming no angle with the line of the barrel, and parallel to the bayonet; the arm extended; the eyes looking upwards; and the thick end of the ramrod must thus be kept opposite to the mouth of the barrel, without being entered into it.

Second motion.

69. Enter the thick end of the ramrod into the barrel, and insert it as far as the hand.

10. *RAM down*=CARTRIDGE. (*Bourrez.*)

One word and one motion.

Pl. III. Fig. 6.

70. Run up the right hand to the full extent of the arm, to the top of the ramrod, without letting it fall into the barrel; seize it with the thumb opened along it, and the fore finger bent, the other fingers being shut; drive it forcibly into the barrel, ramming home
twice;

* The English system has no word of this description, and it may, probably, be deemed superfluous. It is "*cartouche=dans le canon.*"

twice ; seize it again by the small end, between the thumb and fore finger, both bent, the others being shut ; and let the right elbow be close to the body.

11. *Return*=RAMROD. (*Remettez=la baguette.*)

One word and two motions.

First motion.

71. As in the first motion of *drawing ramrod*, bring the small end of it opposite to the upper, or trumpet-pipe, and hold it there without entering it.

Second motion.

72. Introduce the small end into the pipe, and slide it into its place ; raise the right hand quickly, and place it, somewhat bent, on the upper end of the ramrod.

12. *Shoulder*=ARMS. (*Portez=vos armes.*)

One word and three motions.

First motion.

Pl. III. Fig. 1.

73. Raise the firelock with the left hand, along the left side, the left hand as high as the shoulder, and the left elbow not parted from the body, keeping the barrel outwards ; and sink down the right hand in order to seize the firelock at the small stock.

Second motion,

74. Raise the firelock with the right hand ; let the left hand fall to seize and support the butt, carrying back, at the same time, the right heel to the side of the left, and in the same alignment ; support the firelock against, and at the left shoulder, with the right hand, in the position pointed out in describing shouldered arms ; and let the right hand touch the small stock at the breech, without pressing against it.

Third motion.

75. Let the right hand fall to the right thigh, hanging there, as already indicated.

(*Front rank kneeling.*) READY*.

Position of the front rank.

First motion.

76. Turn the firelock with the left hand, the lock outwards ; seize it with the right hand at the small stock, as in

* *Apprêtez=vos armes.* In the British service, the word imperative "make" is generally omitted,

in the first motion of loading, and remain facing to the front, turning the point of the left foot a little inwards.

Second Motion.

Pl. IV. Fig. 1.

77. Throw the right foot smartly to the rear, the heel raised, and the foot resting on the toes of the foot necessarily bent; kneel down with the right knee ten or twelve inches in the rear, and about six inches to the right of the left heel, observing not to come down suddenly; bring down the firelock, at the same time, with the right hand, and seize it with the left hand at the tail pipe near the swell; place the butt on the ground, without striking it against it; place it in front of the right thigh, in such a manner that the fore rounding of the heel of the butt may be opposite to the left heel; and, at the same time, seize the cock between the thumb and fore finger.

Third motion.

78. *Cock*, (*armer* in the text probably for *armez*,) or, *ready*.

Position of the Second Rank.

First motion.

As in the first motion of loading.

Second motion.

Pl. IV. Fig. 2.

79. Bring the firelock with the right hand before the middle of the body; place the left hand with the little finger touching the feather spring, and the thumb, as high as the chin, pointing upwards along the wood of the stock, the brass plate opposite to the lock being turned almost towards the body, and the ramrod towards the front of the battalion; and apply, at the same time, the thumb of the right hand to the head of the cock, the forefinger under, and against the guard, and the three other fingers joined to the first.

Third motion.

80. Sink down, smartly, the right elbow, cocking, at the same time, and seize the firelock at the small stock.

Position of the Rear Rank.

First, second, and third motions.

Pl. IV. Fig. 3.

Done in the same manner as by the men of the centre rank.

PRESENT

PRESENT. (*Toue.*)

One word and one motion.

Pl. IV. Fig. 4. and 5.

81. Sink down, smartly, the muzzle of the piece, slipping the left hand along the stock, as far as the tail-pipe; apply the butt to the right shoulder; let the muzzle be below the level of the eye a little, and the right elbow kept lowered, without being pressed against the body; shut the left eye; look along the barrel with the right eye; sink forward the head towards the butt in order to level; and place the fore finger on the trigger.

Pl. IV. Fig. 6.

82. The men of the third rank only will, at the same time, step with the right foot eight inches to the right, towards the left heel of the man who is on their right.

Recover=ARMS. (*Redressez*=*vos armes.*)

One word and one motion.

83. Come to the position of recovered arms, firmly, as described under the second motion of *ready*, remaining in the third position, after cocking, in the third motion.

FIRE. (*Feu.*)

One word and one motion.

84. Apply, with force, the first finger on the trigger, without lowering or turning the head more, and remain in that position.

LOAD. (*Chargez.*)

One word and one motion*.

85. Drop the firelock smartly into the position of the second motion of loading, as described, excepting that the thumb, in lieu of being placed against the pan-steel, shall, with the fore finger bent, seize the top of the cock, the other fingers remaining shut. The men of the front rank shall, without stooping forward, smartly spring up, keeping in, or back, the right shoulder, in order to avoid the firelocks

* “Un temps et un mouvement,” means, in all exercise with the firelock, that a movement consisting of many motions, or, in other words, a compound motion, is required to be executed, in what the French term “un temps,” that is, without stopping till this compounded motion is effected. If the direction is “un temps et deux mouvements,” it means that these two compound movements are to be executed, with a short pause between them, under one time, denoted by one word of command. The French would describe our “*present arms*,” as “*un temps, et trois mouvements.*”

firelocks of the centre rank, and the men of the rear rank shall carry back the right foot behind the left, placing the buckle of that foot against the left heel.

86. When, in this position, the instructor may wish to make the ranks load, he shall give the word.

Half-cock = FIRELOCK. (*Le Chien* = *au repos*.)

One word and one motion.

87. Raise the cock to the half-cock notch, taking care not to cock it; carry the right hand between the butt and the body to the cartridge-box, and open it.

88. When, instead of loading, the ranks are to come to shouldered arms, the instructor will give the word

Shoulder = ARMS. (*Portez* = *vos armes*.)

89. At the word *Shoulder*, the recruits shall half-cock, as has been explained, shut pans, and seize the firelock at the small stock. At the word ARMS, they shall shoulder smartly and front*.

Present = ARMS †. (*Presentez* = *vos armes*.)

One word and two motions.

First motion.

90. The same as that of loading, excepting that the recruits remain fronted.

Second motion.

(Pl. V. Fig. 2.)

91. Complete the turning inwards of the firelock with the right hand, in order to carry it perpendicularly opposite to the left eye, the ramrod in front, and the cock as high as the lowest waistcoat button; holding the firelock with the right hand at, and under the guard; seize it smartly, at the same time, with the left hand above the lock, the little finger touching the feather spring, the thumb extended along the barrel and mounting, or stock; keep the left arm, from the elbow, joined to the body, without constraint, and remain fronted, without stirring the feet.

Shoulder

* See Saldern's Tactics, page II, where the position of the firelock of each rank is explained as necessarily different.

† The French present arms in two compound motions. In order to understand the mode of effecting this thoroughly, the reader is to refer to the first compound motion of *Loading*.

The second motion of presenting arms, omitted by the French, is graceful as used in the British service.

Shoulder = ARMS. (*Portez* = *vos armes.*)

One word and two motions.

First motion.

92. Spring up the firelock to the left shoulder with the right hand, turning the barrel outwards, and let fall the left to support it under the butt, the right hand held easy against the breech at the small stock.

Second motion.

93. Let fall the right hand briskly to its position.

Order = ARMS. (*Reposez vous* = *sur vos armes.*)

One word and two motions.

First Motion.

94. Sink down, smartly, the firelock to the full extent of the left arm, seizing it, at the same time, with the right hand, above and near the tail-pipe *, at the swell; quit it with the left hand, and carry it opposite to the right shoulder, the ramrod in front, the little finger behind the barrel, the butt three inches from the ground, the right-hand and fore-arm supported against the haunch, the firelock perpendicular, and the left hand hanging freely by the side.

Second motion.

95. Let the firelock slip through the hand, and fall easy to the ground without striking against it, assuming the position about to be described.

Position of a soldier at ordered ARMS.

(Pl. V. Fig. 1.)

96. The hand must be sunk low; the barrel between the thumb and fore-finger extended along the stock, the other three fingers extended and joined; the top of the barrel about two inches from the right shoulder, the ramrod in front; the heel of the butt at the side of, and against the point of the right foot; and the firelock must, in this position, be perpendicular †.

97. When the instructor of the drill sees it necessary to make

* “*Tenon*” means a pipe securing the ramrod, and as the English firelocks have no “*capucines*,” we must deduce the situation of the hand when described in the text as being near a “*capucine*,” by a reference to one or other of the *pipes* on the English firelock.—Vide note, page 27.

† The abbreviated language of the text is given in the translation of the manual and platoon exercises.

make the recruits stand at ease, in this position, he will give the word

Stand at = EASE. (Repos.)

98. On hearing this word, the recruit shall extend the hand and arm along the ramrod, supporting the muzzle against the right shoulder.

99. To resume the position of immobility with ordered arms, the instructor will give the word,

100. 1. *Attention. (Garde à vous.)*

2. *PLATOON, or SQUAD. (Peloton.)*

101. At the second word of command, the recruits shall resume the position of standing with ordered arms, No. 96.

Inspection of arms.

102. The recruits are supposed standing at ordered arms, and will receive the word,

Inspection of = ARMS. (Inspection = des armes.)

One word and one motion.

103. Face three quarters to the right, on the left heel, carrying the right foot perpendicularly to the rear of the alignment, six inches from, and forming a right angle with the line of the left; seize the firelock smartly, with the left hand raised to the level of the lowest button of the waistcoat, inclining the muzzle to the rear, without moving the butt from its place, the ramrod being turned towards the body; carry, at the same time, the right hand to the bayonet, seizing it by the socket and shank in such a manner, that the extremity of the socket may be an inch above the root or heel of the hand, and that in drawing it the thumb may extend on the blade; draw it from the scabbard, carry it to the muzzle of the firelock, and fix it there; immediately seize the ramrod, drawing it as has been described in the *Platoon Exercise*; spring it into the barrel, and then face back immediately to the front into the position of standing at *ordered arms*, No. 96.

104. The instructor will then inspect successively the arms of each soldier, by passing in front of the rank. Each soldier, as the instructor passes him, shall raise or recover his firelock smartly with the right hand, and shall seize it, with the left hand, between the tail-pipe and feather-spring, the lock being outwards, the left hand as high as the chin, and the firelock opposite to the left eye; the instructor

structor shall take, and after having inspected it, shall return it to the soldier, who will take it back with his right hand, and replace it in the position of ordered arms.

105. When the instructor shall have passed by the recruit, he shall, of his own accord, return his ramrod, turning into the position prescribed at the commencement of *inspection of arms*, after which he shall again resume his original front.

106. If, instead of *inspecting arms*, bayonets only are to be fixed, the inspector shall command as follows.

Fix=BAYONETS. (*Bayonnette*=*au canon.*)

One word and one motion.

107. Assume the position described, fix bayonets, as has been explained, and front into the original *alignement*.

108. If, after firing with bayonets fixed, the inspector wishes to have an inspection of arms, with ramrods sprung in the barrel, he will command,

Spring=RAMRODS. (*Baguette*=*dans le canon.*)

One word and one motion.

109. Put the ramrod into the barrel, as has been described above, and immediately afterwards, face to the front. The recruits shall return ramrods successively, after the inspector passes them, assuming the original front.

110. The soldier, in this case, will not throw up his arms to a recover, when the instructor passes in front of him. The instructor wishes to satisfy himself whether or not the firelock is loaded, for which purpose he can, to ascertain this, lay hold of the small end of the ramrod, and spring it in the barrel.

Ground=ARMS*. (*Vos armes*=*à terre.*)

One word and one motion.

First motion.

111. Turn the firelock with the right hand, the brass S opposite to the lock in front; seize, at the same time,
E with

* “L’armure est, pour ainsi dire, la base du militaire. Le fusil fait l’arme principale de l’infanterie, qui est elle-même la partie principale des troupes. Cette arme doit être : 1°. Du plus grand calibre possible :—la plus durable : 3°. La plus maniable et la plus légère qu’il se puisse. On sent bien que cette condition met des bornes aux autres.”—See *Tactique Prussienne*, p. 89.

This description of an eligible firelock, is applicable to an English musket, which unites these requisites.

with the left hand, the corner of the cartridge box * ; bend the body, briskly, advancing the left foot, the heel of it as far as the tail pipe ; and lay down the firelock on the ground, straight to the front, the butt always as far to the front as the point of the right foot ; the right ham a little bent, and the right heel raised.

Second motion.

112. Spring up, carrying back the left foot to the side of the right ; let go the belt, or leather of the cartridge-box, and let both hands fall to their relative situations, when without arms.

Take up = ARMS. (*Relevez* = *vos armes.*)

One word and two motions.

First motion.

113. As in the first compound-motion of *grounding arms.*

Second motion.

114. Take up the firelock, carrying the left foot back, and placing it by the side of the right, immediately turning the firelock with the right hand, and bringing the ramrod in front, and, at the same time, quit the cartridge-box, letting the left hand fall to its proper position.

Shoulder = ARMS. (*Portez* = *vos armes.*)

One word and two motions.

First motion.

115. Raise the firelock, smartly, with the right hand, carrying it to the left shoulder, and turning it, so that the barrel may be outwards ; place, at the same time, the left hand under the butt, letting the right hand fall down to the pan-steel.

Second motion.

116. Let fall the right hand, smartly, to its position.

Support = ARMS. (*L'arme* = *au bras.*)

One word and three motions.

First motion.

(Pl. V. Fig. 3.)

117. Grasp smartly the firelock four full inches below the lock without turning it, and raise it a little.

Second

* " Saisir en meme-temps le coin de la giberne avec la main gauche ;" the intention of this is to give a graceful appearance to the attitude, and to prevent the cartridge box (suspended lower than in the British service) from hanging awkwardly forward in the above position of the soldier.

Second motion.

118. Quit the butt with the left hand, placing the left fore-arm extended across the breast, supporting the cock; the hand on the right breast.

Third motion.

119. Let the right hand fall smartly to its position.

Slope = ARMS. (*L'arme* = *à volonté.*)

120. Carry the firelock, indifferently, on either shoulder, with one or both hands, the barrel in the air.

Support = ARMS. (*L'arme* = *au bras.*)

121. Resume quickly the position of the third motion included under this word, No. 119.

Carry = ARMS. (*Portez* = *vos armes.*)

One word and three motions.

First motion.

122. Apply briskly the right hand to the small stock, grasping it*.

Second motion.

123. Drop the left hand smartly to the butt, to its position under it.

Third motion.

124. Let the right hand drop quickly to the right side, and let the firelock, at the same time, sink down to its position at shouldered arms.

Unfix, or Return = BAYONET. (*Remettez* = *la bayonnette.*)

One word and three motions.

First motion.

125. Sink down the firelock by stretching the left arm, and grasp it, at the same time, with the right hand above, and near the tail-pipe, at the swell, as directed in the first motion of *ordering arms*.

Second motion.

126. With the right hand let down the firelock along the left thigh to the ground; seize it with the left hand

E 2

placed

* In the different European military systems, there is a considerable difference in the rules laid down for the use of the firelock combined with the various corresponding positions of the different ranks. The best motions are those which unite *celerity with accuracy of effect, without interference of ranks, and with the least degree of fatigue after long exercise.* This perfection is not probably attained to, as yet, by any nation in its use of the firelock. Each deems its own system the most perfect—it is by comparison alone that a proper judgment can be formed.

placed above the right, in order to assume the position indicated in the second motion of *loading*, but without placing the right heel before the buckle of the left foot, and strike off the bayonet with the right hand, returning it into the scabbard, and leaving the right hand near the socket of the bayonet.

Third motion.

127. Throw up the firelock to the shoulder with the left hand, seizing it at the small stock with the right, and complete the motions of shouldering arms.

Secure = ARMS. (*L'arme sous le bras* = *gauche*.)

One word and two motions.

128. Grasp smartly the firelock with the right hand, the thumb against the brass S opposite to the lock, and the fore-finger against the cock: detach, at the same time, the firelock from the shoulder, keeping the barrel outwards, without moving the fore-rounding* of the butt from its place; seize the firelock at the tail-pipe swell, with the left hand, the thumb extending along the ramrod, the firelock perpendicularly opposite to the shoulder, and the left elbow lying flat on the firelock.

Second motion.

129. Invert the firelock, turning the butt backwards, under the left arm, the left hand remaining at the swell-tail-pipe, the thumb pressing against the ramrod to prevent its sliding out, the little finger supported against the haunch, and the right hand falling at the same time, into its position at the right side.

Shoulder = ARMS. (*Portez* = *vos armes*.)

One word and two motions.

130. Raise up the firelock to the shoulder, but not too suddenly, lest the ramrod should be projected from its pipes; seize it, with the right hand, at the small stock, to support it against the shoulder, and quit the hold of the left hand, at the same time placing it, smartly, under the butt.

Second motion.

131. Let the right hand fall quickly into its position, sinking,

* "Le bec de la Croix." The butt of the French musket had in it originally a perforation, which gave the angular fore-part the appearance of a beak, and hence the above expression. We have no specific word that corresponds, without rendering it literally "the beak of the butt."

fixing, at the same time, the firelock with the left hand, to the proper position of shouldered arms.

Fix = BAYONET. (*Bayonnette* = au cannon.)

One word and three motions.

First motion.

132. Done as in executing the first motion of *returning*, or unfixing bayonets.

Second motion.

133. As in the second motion of *returning bayonets*, excepting that the right hand shall seize the socket of the bayonet, as has been prescribed in describing the inspection of arms, in order to draw it from the scabbard and carry it, smartly, to be fixed at the muzzle; the right hand remaining at the shank of the bayonet.

Third motion.

134. Shoulder arms, as explained in the third movement of *returning bayonets*.

Charge = BAYONET. (*Croisez* = la bayonnette.)

One word and two motions.

First motion.

(Pl. V. Fig. 4.)

135. Act as in the first motion of loading, grasping the firelock two full inches below the cock, at the small stock.

Second motion.

136. Bring down the firelock to the charge with the right hand into the left, which seizes it a little before the tail-pipe, the barrel uppermost, the left elbow near the body, the right hand supported against the haunch, and the point of the bayonet as high as the eye. The men in the centre and rear ranks will take care to avoid touching the men in the rank before them with their bayonets.

Shoulder = ARMS *. (*Portez* = vos armes.)

One word and two motions.

E 3

First

* To avoid the inconvenience of turning the ramrod in loading, such as striking it against the faces, heads or arms of the men in the other ranks, or letting it fall without attempting to take it up again; the Prussians do not turn it, and therefore, load in less time than they would by turning it. The ramrod is made cylindrical, and, to prevent increase of weight, it is made equally thick at both ends, and small along the rest of its length.

The

First motion.

137. Turn to the front on the left heel ; bring up the right heel to the side of, and in a line with the left ; and spring up, at the same time, the firelock, with the right hand to the left shoulder, placing the left hand under the butt.

Second motion.

138. Let the right hand fall, quickly, to its place.

Trail = ARMS. (*Descendez* = *vos armes.*)

One word and two motions.

First motion.

(Pl. V. Fig. 5.)

139. Done as in executing the first movement of *ordering arms*.

Second motion.

140. Incline forward a little the muzzle of the firelock, the butt towards the rear, and about three inches from the ground. The right hand being supported against the haunch, will steady the firelock in such a manner that the bayonets of the men of the centre and rear ranks will not touch those who are before them.

Shoulder = ARMS. (*Portez* = *vos armes.*)

141. At the word *shoulder*, throw back the muzzle and forward the butt, so that the firelock may be perpendicular in the right hand. At the word *arms*, execute what has been directed in *shouldering*, from *ordered arms*.

Observations relative to the Manual and Platoon Exercises.

Observations relatives au maniement des armes.*

142. These exercises often distort the position of the body

The touch-hole, or vent of the Prussian musket, is shaped inwards, like a truncated cone. This invention renders the motion of priming unnecessary, as the piece primes itself, from the conical construction of the vent, the external orifice of which is not wider than it generally is ; in ramming, the powder passes in sufficient quantity into the pan ; no powder is spilt in priming, the whole charge enters into the barrel ; time is saved, and the effect of the shot is more powerful. The Austrians, at first, ridiculed this improvement, and afterwards imitated it.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, pages 92, 93, and 94.

* From Art. 3, of the Discipline of the Platoon, it appears, that in the

body of the recruit when not, previously, perfectly established. It becomes, therefore, necessary that the instructor should often, in the course of the lessons, attend to the accuracy of the proper position at shouldered arms, frequently making the recruits assume it.

143. Recruits are also very liable to throw the body into a curved shape, at the reins, and the body too far back, especially, when the first motion of loading is dwelt on too long. The instructor, on this account, ought not to retain them, too long, in this position.

LESSON III.

Loading in quick time. (Charge précipitée.)

144. The object of this species of loading is to make the soldier understand and distinguish what motions, under different words of command, are to be gone through without stopping; and what motions, in their execution, require more regularity and attention, constituting a pause, such as those of *priming, putting the cartridge into the barrel, and ramming home*. To inculcate this, the loading will be divided into four principal times, or pauses, denoted by words, as follows.

145. The first set of motions in quick time without any sensible pause, shall be executed, on hearing the first word of command, and the other motions, without stopping, at the words *two, three, and four*.

146. The instructor shall give the word, *Load in quick time*.

LOAD. (*Chargez = vos armes.*)

Plate III. Fig. 4.

147. Execute the two motions of the word *Load*, open the pan, take the cartridge, bite off the top, carry it down to the pan, and prime.

Two. (*Deux.*)

(Plate

the French service, the *manual* and *platoon exercises* are both executed at open order, and that the platoon exercise is included under the cautionary warning, "*Chargez en douze temps*," meaning, "Prime and load in 18 motions, arising from 12 times, denoting as many words of command." Of these 18 motions, seventeen are compound. "*Maniement des armes*," includes both exercises, the *manual* and *platoon*.

(Plate III. Fig. 5.)

148. Shut the pan, cast round, turn the cartridge into the barrel, shaking and inserting it well in.

THREE. (*Trois.*)

(Plate III. Fig. 6.)

149. Draw the ramrod, enter it, and ram home.

FOUR. (*Quatre.*)

(Plate III. Fig. 1.)

150. Return the ramrod, and shoulder arms.

Loading in quickest time. (*Charge à volonté.*)

151. The instructor shall, after this, teach the recruit to load in quickest time, which shall be executed like that in quick time, but continued, and without the pauses marked as above. The instructor shall command,

Loading in quickest time. (Charge à volonté.)

152. LOAD. (*Chargez = vous armes.*)

Observations relative to the loadings.

Observations relatives aux charges.

153. The instructor will remark, that the soldiers who, without apparent hurry, load with steadiness and coolness, are those who load best and quickest; because they turn the ramrod without catching against, or interfering with those of the men aside, and before them; because they enter it, without frequent attempts, at once into the muzzle, and in returning it into the trumpet pipe; because they ram home best; because they do not spill the powder in priming; and because, finally, they do not let fall cartridges in taking them out of the cartridge-box; all essential objects, on which the instructor must make the recruits bestow the utmost attention.

154. The instructor shall exact regularity in the execution of the motions, and in the positions, without which the recruits will be under constraint, and embarrass each other. He will furnish them, at the end of some lessons, with cartridges filled with bran, or with saw-dust, and shall habituate them to prime and ram down with care.

LESSON IV.

FIRINGS. (*Feux.*)

155. These are either direct or oblique, and shall be executed as will be explained.

Direct Firings. (Feux directs.)

156. The instructor shall give the following words of command :

The platoon (or squad) will fire. (*Feu de peloton.*)

1. SQUAD. (*Peloton.*)

2. READY, or COCK. (*Armez.*)

3. PRESENT. (*Joue.*)

4. FIRE. (*Feu.*)

5. LOAD *. (*Chargez.*)

(Plate VI. Fig. 1.)

157. These different commands shall be executed as has been explained in the manual and platoon exercise.

158. On hearing the second word of command, the three men in file shall assume the indicated position, according to the rank in which they are, respectively, placed; and on hearing the fifth word of command, they shall load, and shoulder arms.

Oblique Firings. (Feux obliques.)

159. Oblique firings are executed to the right and left, by the same words of command as the direct fires, with this only difference, that the word of command *present*, shall be preceded by the words, *obliquely to the right*, or *left*, the caution following the word *ready* (or *cock*.) The men of the rear rank, on hearing the caution, are to fix their eyes on the opening between the two men of the centre rank, through which they are to present.

Position of the three ranks in the oblique fires to the right.

Position des trois rangs, dans les feux obliques à droite.

(Plate VI. Fig. 2.)

160. At the word *ready*, the three ranks shall execute what has been described in the case of a direct fire.

161. At

* In the Prussian service, a piece of leather is sewed round the barrel, where the hand holds it loading, to enable the hand to hold it heated as it will become after ten or twelve quick discharges.— See *Tactique Prussienne*, pages 94 and 95.

161. At the word *present*, the men of the front rank shall direct their firelocks to the right, by inclining the left knee inwards, without deranging the position of the feet.

162. The centre rank shall also, without stirring the feet, direct the muzzle to the right.

163. The men of the rear rank shall advance the left foot about six inches, and towards the point of the right foot of the man of the centre rank of the files they respectively belong to, advancing also the body a little, by bending the left knee. They shall direct their firelocks to the right.

164. The three ranks shall throw back the right shoulder.

In this position, the centre and rear ranks are ready and prepared to fire through the same opening as in firing direct, although in a different direction.

165. At the word *load*, the three ranks shall resume the position directed for the direct fire. The rear rank men shall draw back the left foot, placing the heel against the buckle of the right foot, when retiring the firelock to the loading position.

Position of the three ranks in the oblique fires to the left.

Position des trois rangs dans les feux obliques à gauche.

(Plate VI. Fig. 3.)

166. At the word *ready*, the three ranks shall execute what has been described in the case of a direct fire.

167. At the word *present*, the men of the front rank shall direct their firelocks to the left, without inclining the knee or stirring the feet.

168. The men of the centre rank shall present in the opening to the left of their file leader, without stirring the feet.

169. The rear rank shall advance the left foot about six inches, and towards the right heel of the man of the centre rank before them in file; and the rear rank men shall also advance the upper part of the body, bending the left knee a little, and presenting through the opening to the left of their file-leader.

170. The three ranks shall throw back the left shoulder.

171. In this position, the centre and rear ranks are ready to fire through the opening to the left of their file-leader, and in an oblique direction.

172. At the word *load*, the three ranks shall draw back their firelocks, in the oblique position in which they range, and shall prime in that position; the rear rank men shall carry back the left foot, placing the heel against the buckle of the right foot; and in casting round, the three ranks shall take their position as in the case of the direct fire.

Observations on the Oblique Firings.

Observations relatives aux feux obliques.

173. Throwing back a shoulder in presenting;

In order to be able to direct the muzzle more or less obliquely, according to the position of the object aimed at.

The instructor shall render this principle practically intelligible to the recruits, by placing a man in front more or less towards the right, or towards the left, to represent this object, when they shall perfectly understand the accuracy * of position of the respective ranks in the oblique firings.

Carrying the left foot six inches in front, and advancing the upper part of the body by the men of the rear rank;

In order to avoid accidents, because that without this precaution, the muzzles of the firelocks of the third rank would not sufficiently clear or project beyond the first rank, in the oblique position in which they are ranged.

In firing obliquely to the left, drawing back the firelocks and priming in the oblique position in which the firelocks are ranged;

Because that if the position in the direct fire was resumed, it would be necessary, in drawing back the firelock to the priming position, to pass it over the head of the man directly in front.

Fire of two ranks, by independent files.

Feu de deux rangs.

174. The front and centre ranks shall execute this species of firing; the men of the third rank shall load
and

* In the original, *emboîtement*, rendered by circumlocution.

and pass their firelocks to those of the centre rank ; the men of the rear rank do not fire : and by means of this arrangement the men of the front rank fire standing.

175. The instructor shall give the following words :

1. *Fire by independent files.* (*Feu de deux rangs.*)

2. *Platoon (or Squad.)* (*Peloton.*)

3. *READY (or Cock.)* (*Armez.*)

4. *Commence firing.* (*Commencez le feu.*)

176. On hearing the third word of command, all the three ranks shall take the position prescribed for the centre and rear ranks, in the direct and oblique fires *.

177. At the fourth word of command, the man in the first rank, and the man in the second rank, shall present together, and fire ; the man in the rear rank not having to fire, shall only load, and hand his firelock to the man in the centre rank.

178. The man in the front rank shall load quickly, and fire again, after which he shall reload and fire as before ; and continue thus to fire.

179. The centre rank man having fired, shall with his right hand pass his firelock to the man who is in the rear rank of his file ; this last mentioned shall receive it with his left hand, and shall with his right hand pass his own to the man in the centre rank, who will fire with the firelock of the rear rank man, which he will load and fire a second time, when he shall pass it back to the man in the rear rank ; and thus the fire will continue in such a manner that the man of the centre rank fires always twice with the same firelock, before he returns it to the man in his rear, excepting the first time.

180. After the first fire, the man in the front, and the man in the centre-rank of each file shall fire, respectively, without waiting for each other.

181. The men of the three ranks shall always front in casting round the firelock, and after having loaded they must assume the position indicated above, No. 79. For this

* When Turenne flourished, troops on the continent were eight deep. They were, in less than half a century, reduced to five deep. They then became four during the war in Flanders. They are now reduced to three, and even two deep. Improvements in artillery, in fire-arms, and the introduction of the bayonet, in lieu of the half-pike, have occasioned these successive alterations.

this purpose, each soldier, on returning his ramrod, shall spring up his firelock to a recover with the left hand, letting the firelock slip through the left hand, which seizes it near the feather-spring at the height of the chin; at the same time he will half face to the right, in order to return to the prescribed position for loading after firing; when the firelock is sprung up to the recover, the thumb of the right hand shall be placed on the head of the cock, in order to draw it back in cocking, the little finger being under and against the guard. The man in the rear rank shall always hand his firelock to the man before him without cocking it *.

182. When the instructor may wish to cease firing, he will order a ruffle of the drum.

A ruffle of the drum. (*Roulement.*)

183. On hearing this, the soldiers will cease firing. Each man will half cock, if cocked; will load, if unloaded; and if loading, will complete the operation; after any of which circumstances, each will shoulder arms, the men of the centre and rear ranks taking care to have, each, his proper firelock.

General Observations relative to the Firings.

Observations générales relatives aux feux.

184. The firings shall be executed, at first, without cartridges, and afterwards with cartridges of bran, or sawdust, in order to accustom the recruit gradually to prime, and to put the cartridge readily into the barrel, but regularly, and without spilling the powder, as well as to ram down well; and this species of exercise will terminate by burning powder.

185. When the firings with powder shall have been executed, it shall be recommended to the soldier to be at-

VOL. I.

F

tentive

* “ —Ensuite le soldat qui est derrière lui, donne le sien, (son fusil,) et les autres de la même file, font la même chose en passant les fusils des mains en mains. Ce soldat, ou chef de file, tirera donc quatre coups de suite.” *Réveries de Marechal de Saxe*, page 70. From this it appears that the French accurately detailed mode of firing, independently, by files of two ranks, where the centre rank fires with the firelock of the rear rank, is an improved modification of Marshal Saxe's method of firing across a river, or from behind a hedge.

tentive in observing, when he half cocks, whether smoke proceeds out of the touch-hole, which if it does, indicates certainly that the piece has gone off, as it is termed. If the smoke does not appear, the soldier, in lieu of reloading, will turn off to the rear in order to prick the touch-hole, and prime a second time. If the soldier thinks he has fired, and proceeds to load again, he ought at any rate to discover his mistake, if any exists, in ramming home, from the degree of ramrod projecting out of the muzzle ; and he would richly merit punishment, were he to load a third time under all these circumstances. The instructor shall, after burning powder, always inspect the arms, in order to ascertain whether or not the soldier has been guilty of the fault of putting three charges into his firelock.

186. The instructor ought also to watch particularly that the soldier in half-cocking does not draw it back to a cock, a fault from which accidents might result.

General Observations on the second Part of the Discipline of the Soldier.

Observations générales relatives à la seconde partie de l'Ecole du Soldat.

187. After some days have been bestowed on the practice of the lesson relative to the use of arms, and after the recruits possess a confirmed knowledge of the position of shouldered arms, the instructor will terminate the lesson, by making the three recruits march for some time in one rank, at the distance of one pace from each other, in order to confirm them more and more in the mechanism of the direct and oblique steps. He will shew them the mode of marking time, and of changing the step, as follows :

To mark time. (Marquer le pas.)

188. The three recruits marching in ordinary time, and with the ordinary step, shall receive the command,

1. *Mark* = TIME *. (*Marquez le pas.*)

2. *MARCH.* (*Marche.*)

189. At the second word, which shall be given at the instant when the foot is coming to the ground, the recruits shall, without advancing, and at the same time keeping the

* See Rules, Part I. § 11. and to change feet, § 13.

the cadence of the time, bring back the heels alternately to the side of each other, thus making a semblance of marching.

190. When the instructor wishes the ordinary step to be resumed, he will command,

1. *Forward.* (*En avant.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

191. At the second word, which shall be given when one of the heels is coming to the ground, the recruit shall resume the step of two feet.

To change feet. (*Changer le pas.*)

192. To the recruits marching in ordinary time, the instructor shall give the words,

1. *Change feet.* (*Changez le pas.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

193. At the second word, to be given when either foot is coming to the ground, the recruits shall quickly bring up the foot in the rear, just raised from the ground, to the side of that planted in front, which latter foot shall step off.

PART III.

LESSON I.

Marching to the Front. (Marche de front)

194. When the three recruits shall have been grounded in the principles and mechanism of the step, the position of the body and the use of arms, particularly of shouldered arms, the instructor shall unite five or six men at least, and at most nine, in order to instruct them in the principles of touch of elbows in marching to the front, and in those of the march to a flank; and to teach them the quick step, the back step, the principles of changes of direction, or turning on the march, wheeling on a moveable pivot, and from the halt; and, finally, the principles of alignment or dressing.

195. The instructor will place them in one rank, elbow to elbow, and shall command,

1. *Squad forward.* (*Peloton en avant.*)

2. *Leader on the left (or on the right.)* (*Guide à gauche*
(*ou à droite.*)

MARCH. (*Marche.*)

196. At the word *march*, the rank shall step off quickly with the left foot.

197. The instructor shall cause a well trained soldier to march in front of the recruit, placed on the right or left of the rank, according to the flank to which the leader may be ordered ; he shall direct the soldier on the flank to march exactly in the line traced out by the man who precedes him, keeping always at the distance of two paces from him : this is the surest means of making the recruits contract the habit of taking the prescribed length of step, in equal portions of time.

198. The instructor shall cause the following rules to be observed.

To touch lightly the elbow of the recruit on the side on which the leader is, supposed the pivot side ;

Because by keeping up the touch of the elbow, the dressing is preserved, and openings out are prevented. If the light touch of the elbow was not kept up, and that an over pressure by a man against another occasioned a communication of it to the directing flank, the man on such flank, being pushed laterally out of the direction, the original line of march must become altered.

Not to open out the left elbow, nor the right arm ;

In order that the recruit may not push his neighbour, and that he may occupy in the rank the space only which he ought.

To yield and ease off, in consequence of a pressure coming from the directing flank, and *to resist that coming from the opposite side ;*

In order to avoid throwing the leader out of the direction.

To retouch, very gently, and as it were insensibly, the elbow of the man towards the directing flank, in case he should incline off in that direction ; or in case the person wishing to resume the touch of the elbow may, himself, have opened out from the leading flank ;

Because it may happen that a recruit towards the leading flank, throws himself improperly to the right or left, losing his direction and individual touch of elbow ; if the man marching by his side, and successively those removed from him, were to conform suddenly to his false movement,

ment, it would follow, that the fault of one man would extend to many ; and when, afterwards, the man with whom the fault originated wished to repair it, he would be obliged to push, laterally, his neighbour, he the man next to him, and so on to the opposite flank ; a thing that would occasion a continual floating in the march. If, on the contrary, each man attends to the principle of conforming, gradually, to the movements of his neighbour, this last will have time afforded him to repair his error, if he has committed one, and if he has, it will not be communicated, and floating will not take place.

To keep always the head direct to the front, the eyes fixed on the ground, at the distance of twelve or fifteen paces in front, on whatever flank the leader may be posted ;

Because that if the head were turned to the directing flank, the opposite shoulder would project forward, would give a false direction to the rank, and would produce a continual pressure towards the directing flank, and consequently, a floating or undulation of the rank on the march. The keeping of the eyes fixed on the ground, twelve or fifteen paces to the front, prevents the soldier from deviating from his direct line of march, which is a very essential point.

If a recruit finds himself too far advanced, or too much behind, he is gradually to regain his situation, either by insensibly lengthening, or contracting his step * ;

Because sudden transitions or movements in marching, tend to produce a breaking of the rank, and occasion a floating, and losing the cadence ; for one man cannot take a step of two feet and a half in the same space of time in which the man next to him takes a step of two feet, without a quicker movement of the foot of the former than of that of the latter ; whereas one may lengthen the step one or two inches without producing any sensible acceleration of movement.

* "Guide," in this lesson, is rendered "*leader*," as he precedes the directing flank. In the discipline of the platoon, he is termed "*director*," or "*directing serjeant*," as he is posted on the pivot flank.

199. In short, the instructor shall endeavour to make the recruit comprehend that the alignment in marching cannot be preserved without the regularity of the step, the touch of the elbows, and the squareness of the shoulders to the front: for instance, he must convince them that if some took longer steps than others, or marched some at a quicker, some at a slower rate than others, the result must be, a breaking of the rank; and he will shew them that if the head is held direct to the front without keeping up the light touch of the elbow, it will be impossible for them to judge whether or not they march in the same line with those on their right and left, and whether or not openings take place.

200. The instructor shall, after this, exercise them in obliquing to the right, with the leader on the left; and in obliquing to the left, with the leader on the right.

201. In both the oblique and direct marches, the touch of the elbow ought to be kept up towards the flank where the leader is; and thus each man will touch, lightly, with his own elbow, that of the man next to him in that direction.

202. The oblique march to the side opposite to that on which the leader is, being much more difficult than that to the side he is on, the instructor shall recommend to the recruits to redouble their attention, when obliquing in such direction.

203. When these different principles have become familiar to the recruits, and when they are confirmed in the position of the body, the carrying of arms, the mechanism, the length of the step, and time in which each step ought to be taken in ordinary time, the instructor shall make them pass from the ordinary to the quick, and back step, as follows.

204. The rank marching in ordinary time, shall receive the word,

1. *Quick time.* (*Pas accéléré.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

205. At the word *march*, given when either foot is coming to the ground, the rank will assume the quick step.

206. The length of the step shall be the same as that of

of the ordinary step, but one hundred of these steps must be taken in one minute.

Remarks on the Quick Step.

207. The oblique step shall never be in quick time.

208. Marching in quick, and ordinary time, is regulated by the same principles; but the impulse of quick time disposing the soldier to throw himself out, the instructor will take especial care to regulate the cadence of the step, and to habituate the recruit, always, to preserve the perpendicularity of his body, as well as the regularity of the step.

209. The instructor shall make the recruits marching in quick time, sometimes mark time, and change feet.

210. When the instructor wishes to make the recruits resume the ordinary step, he shall command *,

1. *Ordinary time.* (*Pas ordinaire.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

211. At the word *march*, given when either foot is coming to the ground, the rank shall resume the ordinary step.

212. The instructor shall cause the rank marching, to halt, as directed No. 24.

213. If the rank is marching in quick time, the word *halt*, shall be given, an instant previous to planting the foot on the ground.

214. The rank being halted, the instructor shall cause it to march backwards, as follows:

1. *Step back* *. (*En arrière.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

215. At the word *march*, the recruit shall step off, backwards, with the left foot, which he shall plant at the distance of one foot from the right, reckoning from heel to heel, and so on, till the word *halt* is given, which shall be always preceded by that of, *squad*. The recruits shall halt on hearing the word, by carrying back the foot in front, and planting it by the side of the other.

216. The instructor will watch that the recruits do not lean against each other; that they march straight backwards; and that the proper position of the body and firelock is always preserved.

LESSON

* See Rules, Part I. § 16, 15, 10.

LESSON II.

*March to a flank.**Marche de flanc.*

217. The recruits being drawn up in one rank, elbow to elbow, the instructor shall command as follows :

1. *Squad will march to the right flank (or left.)* (*Peloton par le flanc droit (ou gauche.)*)
2. *To the right* = FACE (*or left.*) (*À droite (ou à gauche.)*)
3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

218. At the second command, the recruits will face to the right, or left.

219. At the word *march*, they shall step off, quickly, with the left foot, and in ordinary time.

*Observations on marching to a flank.**Observations relatives à la marche de flanc.*

220. The instructor shall place a well drilled soldier at the side of the leading recruit, on the flank to which the rank has faced, in order to conduct this last, and to regulate his step : and it shall be recommended to the soldier who leads the recruits in file, to march, always, touching the elbow of the man who is assigned to direct him.

221. In marching to a flank, the instructor shall cause the following rules to be observed.

That the step is taken and executed, according to the prescribed principles ;

Because that these principles, without observing which, men placed side by side in one rank, cannot, in marching, preserve their dressing and alignment, become still more indispensably necessary to be followed when marching in file.

That at each step, the man in rear of another shall plant his foot on the spot, at least, from whence the man in front of him has raised his foot ;

In order to exclude the possibility of the opening out of the files.

The recruit is not to bend the knee, which he will be apt to do, to avoid treading on the heels of the man before him ;

Because that if the knees are bent, the lock step and cadence would be lost.

The head of a man preceding another, must cover in and hide from this last, the heads of all the men who may be in front ;

Because this constitutes the surest rule that can be laid down for marching on, and covering the leader of the file.

222. The instructor, during the march, will place himself by the flank, and most frequently at five or six paces from that on which the recruits he is drilling are, in order to watch that the principles laid down above are strictly observed.

223. He will also, sometimes, place himself behind the file, and let it pass him fifteen or twenty paces, in order to observe whether or not the recruits cover the file-leader exactly *.

224. The instructor shall make the recruits wheel, in file, to the right or left, as follows :

1. *By file to the right (or to the left) wheel. (Par file à droite (ou à gauche.)*

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

225. At the second word, the leading man of the file shall wheel to the right or left, and shall then march straight forward, each man turning or wheeling successively, on the same ground as the first wheeled on.

226. The instructor shall also cause the recruits to turn to the right, and left, on the march, thus :

1. *To the left flank (or right.) (Par le flanc gauche (ou droite.*

2. TURN *. (*Marche.*)

227. At the second word, which shall be given a little before either foot may be brought down to the ground, the recruits shall turn the body, plant the foot that is raised and just coming to the ground, in the new direction, and step off with the other foot, without altering the cadence of the step.

228. When the instructor wishes to *halt*, and *front*, the rank marching to the flank, he shall give the following words of command :

1. *Squad.*

* See Rules, Part I. § 18, 33, 31.

1. *Squad.* (*Peloton.*)2. *HALT.* (*Halte.*)3. *FRONT.* (*Front.*)

229. At the second word, the rank marching in file shall halt, and no one shall stir, even to rectify a false distance; this attention being necessary to habituate the soldiers to maintain the proper distance, or lock-step.

230. At the third word of command, each man shall front, by facing to the left, if the march has been to the right flank; and by facing to the right, if the march has been to the left flank.

Observations on marching to a flank.

Observations relatives à la marche de flanc.

231. When the recruits have acquired an ease and facility in marching to a flank, the instructor will practise them in this species of march, in quick time: the practice of this will make them sensible of the necessity of maintaining the * lock step in marching to a flank, and of observing the cadence of the step, and the upright position of the body.

LESSON III.

Dressing †.

Alignemens.

232. The instructor shall instruct and exercise the recruits in the mode of dressing, one by one, in order the better to make them comprehend the principles of the alignment, or dressing; and for this purpose he shall order the two men on the right flank, to step two paces to the front, and having aligned them, he shall caution each man successively to move up into the line of dressing of the two first.

233. Each recruit, on receiving the caution from the instructor, to dress up into the alignment, shall turn his head and eyes to the right, keeping his body in the position prescribed in the first lesson of part first of the *discipline of the soldier*; he shall march in the cadence of the ordinary step, two paces to the front, shortening the last
step

* “Emboîter les pas.”

† See Rules, Part I. § 9.

step in such a manner, as that the foot taking this second step, shall be six inches behind the new alignment, when it comes to the ground; the new line is never to be passed, so as to occasion dressing back; the recruit shall steadily, and without jerking forward, then move by short steps into the line of dressing, keeping the hams stretched; and he shall dress up to the man who stands next to him in the new alignment, without deranging the position of his head, the line of his eyes, or the squareness of the shoulders; so as to find himself in the line of direction of this man, whose elbow he is lightly to touch, without opening out his own *.

234. Dressing by the left is conducted on the same principles.

235. When the recruits shall have learnt, thus, one by one, to align correctly, and without dressing backward, and forward, and groping into their situations, the instructor shall make a whole rank align at once, as follows:

By the right (or left) = DRESS. (A droite (ou à gauche) = alignement.)

236. At this word, the whole rank, excepting the two men placed in front as a base to dress on, shall steadily march up to, and place themselves on the new line; conformable to the principles laid down in the above paragraph, No. 233.

237. The instructor, situated five or six paces in front of the rank, and facing towards it, shall carefully observe that the principles are adhered to; and to verify this, he shall, after that, proceed to the flank which has served for a base to dress on.

238. Seeing the whole, nearly, of his rank dressed, he will command,

FRONT. (*Fixe.*)

239. At this command, the recruits shall turn the head to the direct position to the front, resuming their immovable posture.

240. The

* See Saldern's Tactics, page 88, where the men are directed to dress towards the point of appui, by the line of the eyes and shoulders, and not by that of the breasts or feet, which project differently, in men of varying sizes.

240. The instructor then observing that certain files are not dressed on the alignment, shall direct, by its number from the right, *such file (or such and such files)* to dress *up*, or *back*. The files alluded to only, immediately casting the eye to the flank dressed to, to be enabled to judge how far it may be necessary to move forward, or fall back, shall steadily place themselves on the line, afterwards replacing the head in the direct position.

241. The instructor shall have, previously, numbered the files.

242. Dressing back is conducted on the same principles; the recruits shall step back a little beyond the line, and shall then move up to it by taking small steps to the front, conformable to what has been laid down above, No. 223.

In this case, the command given by the instructor will be,

By the right backward (or by the left backward) DRESS.
(*En arrière à droite (ou à gauche) alignement *.*)

Observations on the Principles of the Alignment.

Observations relatives aux principes d'alignement.

243. The instructor shall inculcate the observance of the following principles:

That the soldier should quietly, and steadily, arrive on the dressing line;

Because hurry prevents the observing of good order; and even the promptitude of execution; and these are obtained by accustoming the soldier to execute his movements with calmness, coolness, and precision.

That he does not bend back the body, nor the head forward;

Because it is by a regularity of position, he is to learn to dress correctly, on a given line.

That

* Un compagnie, un bataillon, sont parfaitement alignés, lorsque le premier cavalier, ou premier fantassin de chaque file correspond de tel sorte au dernier, qu'on n'aperçoit sur l'alignement, ni tête, ni ventre, ni bras, ni pied qui le dépasse.—Nouveau Dictionnaire Militaire.

† “The alignement is an imaginary line running straight between two points called *points de vues*. To march in the alignement, is nothing else than to make the troops march in that right line.”—See Saldern's *Tactics*, p. 73.

That he is to turn the head the least degree possible, and in such manner only, as to be able to see the line of dressing ;

In order that the shoulder may not be drawn forward out of the line of the rank, and that the false position of one man may not lead into error, all the men about to come on the alignment.

That the soldier should never pass beyond the dressing line ;

Because that if one soldier passed the alignment, he would be under the necessity of dressing back to the true line, and his committed fault would extend to the men placed beyond him, who would be obliged, in their turns, to fall back also ; a circumstance to be avoided with so much the more care, as, besides the loss of time arising from it, it is much more difficult to dress back than forward.

That at the word of command *front*, or *eyes front*, all movement on the part of the soldier should cease, though he may not even be on the line of dressing ;

In order to make him form the habit of judging readily when he is on his alignment, and to fix himself there without wavering and groping, as it were, backwards and forwards.

That at the word of command *such file*, or *such files forward*, or *backward*, all those others not mentioned do not stir ;

In order not to derange the dressing of those who are already aligned.

That in dressing backward, the soldiers are to pass the line a little in stepping back, and then, by small steps, to align up, or forward ;

In order that they may dress forward to the line, by a small movement to the front, because it is easier, thus, to judge of, and hit the alignment.

LESSON IV.

Wheelings.* (*Conversions.*)

244. Wheelings are of two sorts of description, wheeling on a halted, and wheeling on a moveable pivot.

VOL. I.

G

245. Wheel-

* See Rules, Part I. § 19, 20, 22. The men turn their eyes to the wheeling flank, because the outer man alone takes a natural step, all

245. Wheelings on a fixed, or halted pivot, are used for wheeling from line into column, or from column into line.

246. Wheelings on a moveable pivot take place, in the changes of direction of a column when marching, as often as it may be necessary to wheel to the reverse flank.

247. When the wheel is made on a fixed point, the pivot man simply turns on his fixed point, marking the time.

248. In wheeling on a moveable pivot, the pivot man takes steps of six inches, in order to clear, or disengage the ground for the succeeding platoons, or subdivisions. This is necessary, in order that the subdivisions of a column may be enabled to change their direction without losing their distances, as will be explained under the head of the Discipline of the Platoon.

249. In both cases mentioned, the man on the wheeling or outer flank must always take steps of two feet.

250. The movement, or species of wheeling, termed *turning * to the right* (or *to the left*) takes place in the changes of direction of the column of march only when the wheel is made on the (*pivot*) flank where the director is, that is, on that he is marching on. Great care must be taken not to confound this species of wheel with that on a moveable pivot.

Wheeling on a halted pivot.

Conversions de pied ferme.

251. The instructor shall place a well disciplined man on the wheeling flank, to conduct it, and shall command.

1. *By platoon, to the right wheel.* (*Par peloton à droite.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

252. At the second word, the soldiers shall step off with the left foot, and turn, at the same time, the head a little to the left, their eyes fixed in the direction of those of

all the other men regulating the length of their respective steps by his, which they could not do were they to look towards the pivot man, who himself regulates his turning by the wheeling flank.—Were the men to look to the pivot, the files would wheel *separately*, and press towards the pivot; therefore, looking to the wheeling flank, and feeling with the elbow towards the pivot-flank, is a rule established on accurate principles.—See *Taëctique Prussienne*, pages 262, 263.

* *Tournez à droite (ou à gauche).* See page 65.

of the men who are on their left. The man on the pivot shall only mark the time, turning gradually and conforming himself to the movement of the wheeling flank; the man on the outer, or wheeling flank, who conducts it, shall step the pace of two feet; shall, from the first step, bring forward the left shoulder a little; shall cast his eyes on the ground he is to go over, and, from time to time, along the rank wheeling; and he shall always feel the elbow of the man next to him, but this lightly, and without ever pushing, or pressing on him.

253. The other soldiers must keep up the light touch of the elbow on the side the pivot is on, and resist all pressure coming from the wheeling flank; they must conform to the movement of the wheeling flank, each man proportioning his step to his distance from the pivot.

254. The instructor shall make the rank describe a circle, once or twice, before he halts it, in order to render the principle understood; and he shall carefully watch that the rank wheels straight, and does not open out from the centre, or break; or displace the pivot.

255. He shall make the rank wheel to the left on the same principles, and he will command a halt as follows.

1. *Squad or Platoon* (Peloton.)
2. HALT. (Halte.)

256. At the second word the rank will halt, and none shall stir until a further command is given.

257. The instructor shall go to the reverse flank, and shall place the two outer men on that flank in the direction he chooses to give to the rank, leaving sufficient space between them and the pivot, for the others to place themselves in, and he will then command.

By the left (or right) DRESS. (A gauche (ou a droite) alignement.)

258. At this command, the rank shall dress on the line which the two placed men indicate as a base line, conforming to the prescribed principles of dressing.

259. The instructor will then order *eyes front*, which shall be complied with, as directed No. 239.

260. *Observations on the Principles of Wheeling.*

Observations relatives aux principes des conversions.

To turn the head a little towards the wheeling flank,
and

and to fix the eyes in the line of the eyes of the men who are towards that flank ;

Because that without this attention, it would be impossible for the soldier to regulate the length of his step, in such a manner as to conform to the movement of the wheeling flank.

To keep up the light touch of the elbow, on the side next the pivot ;

In order that the files may not open out in wheeling.

To resist a pressure coming from the wheeling flank ;

Because that if this principle were neglected, the pivot man, who ought to be a fixed point, would be liable to be thrown out of his situation by pressure.

Wheelings on a moveable pivot.

Conversions en marchant.

261. When the recruits wheel with accuracy from a halt, the rank shall be taught to wheel on a moveable pivot.

262. For this purpose, in order to cause the rank on the march to change direction on the (reverse) flank opposite to that on which the director is, the instructor commands.

1. *Right (or left) shoulders forward. (A droite (ou à gauche) conversion.)*

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

263. The first word of command shall be given when the rank is within two paces of the point where the pivot is to commence circling.

264. At the second word, the wheeling shall be executed as on a halted pivot, excepting that the touch of the elbows is kept up from the reverse flank, and not from the pivot flank ; that the pivot man, in lieu of turning on his point, shall conform himself to the movement of the reverse flank describing the larger arc of a concentric circle ; that the pivot man shall feel lightly the elbow of the man next to him ; that the pivot man takes steps of six inches, gaining ground advancing and moving on a part of the circumference of a small circle ; and that he shall, thus, clear or disengage the initial point of his wheeling, the middle of the rank curving a little towards the rear.

265. The wheel being effected, the instructor shall command.

1. *Forward.*

1. *Forward* (*En avant.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

266. The first word of command shall be pronounced two paces before the wheel is finished.

267. At the second, to be given at the instant the wheel is effected, the man directing the flank that has just described the larger sweep of a circle, shall move straight forward, and the pivot-man, with the other men composing the rank, shall resume the step of two feet, directing the head to the front.

To change direction on the pivot flank.

Changer de direction sur le côté du guide.

268. This is effected by the following commands.

Left (or right) shoulders forward. (*Tournez à gauche, (ou à droite *.)*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

269. The first word shall be given when the rank is within two paces of the initial point of wheeling, as mentioned formerly.

270. At the second word, to be given at the instant when the rank is to commence turning into this species of wheel, the director on the pivot flank shall turn to the left, or right, on the march, and shall, without rendering more slow, or quickening the cadence of the time, and without lengthening or shortening the measure of the step, prolong or move forward in the new direction; the rest of the rank shall quickly conform to the new direction in which the director is moving, but without running; and for this purpose each man shall advance, or bring forward the shoulder farthest from the director, shall turn the head and eyes to the flank the director is on, shall touch the elbow of the man between him and the director, placing himself on the same alignment with the director, and turning his head and eyes, then, to the front. Each man shall arrive thus, *successively*, on the alignment of the director on the pivot flank, to which this species of wheel has been made.

* There is no species of wheeling in the British service that corresponds to this mode of wheeling, as it were on a momentarily fixed pivot on the march; at least as far as regards the director, who turns exactly on his ground. The other men come up to the director in arcs

SECTION III.

*Discipline of the Platoon.**Ecole de Peloton.*

The instruction of the platoon necessarily preceding that of the battalion, and having for its object the preparation of the soldiers for acting in battalion, the progressive method and principles about to be laid down, shall be applied to the exercise and discipline of companies considered relatively regulated by the course of instruction to be herein given; and with reference to their detail.

The platoon, or squad, which has acquired *the discipline of the soldier*, shall likewise be instructed according to the system entering on; it shall be formed, three deep, under the command of a chief of the platoon, with a covering serjeant and fourth rank. They shall be arranged, as has been directed for the formation of platoons in line. There shall be, besides, an officer, or non-commissioned officer, appointed to exercise the platoon. He is to be termed the *instructor*.

The discipline of the platoon shall be divided into six lessons, and each lesson will include five articles, as follows.

LESSON I.

1. To open ranks. (*Ouvrir les rangs.*)
2. Alignment of open ranks. (*Alignemens à rangs ouverts.*)
3. The Manual Exercise. (*Maniement des armes.*)
4. To close ranks. (*Serrez les rangs.*)
5. Alignment of closed ranks. (*Alignemens à rangs serrés.*)

LESSON II.

1. Loading in quick time. (*Charge précipitée.*)
2. Loading in quickest time. (*Charge à volonté.*)
3. Direct and oblique firings of the platoon. (*Feu de peloton direct et oblique.*)
4. Independent file-firing. (*Feu de rangs.*)
5. Firing to the rear. (*Feu en arrière.*)

LESSON

arcs of concentric circles, finishing joining him, and each other, *successively*, in straight lines, after they have arrived on the new direction in which the guide on the pivot flank is marching. This will appear evident, by projecting a figure of the movement with a pen, or pencil.

LESSON III.

1. March in line. (*Marche en bataille par le premier rang.*)
2. To halt the platoon marching in line. (*Arrêter le peloton, marchant en bataille.*)
3. Oblique marching in line. (*Marche oblique en bataille.*)
4. To mark time; to march in quick time, and the back step. (*Marquer le pas, marcher le pas accéléré, et le pas en arrière.*)
5. To march in line, with the rear rank leading. (*Marche en bataille par le troisième rang.*)

LESSON IV.

1. March to a flank. (*Marche de flanc.*)
2. Wheeling in file. (*Changer de direction par file.*)
3. To halt the platoon marching to a flank, and to form it to a flank. (*Arrêter le peloton marchant par le flanc, et le remettre de front.*)
4. To form from file to either flank. (*Se former sur la droite, ou sur la gauche, par file en bataille.*)
5. Forming to the front from file. (*Etant en marche par le flanc, former le peloton et les sections.*)

LESSON V.

1. Wheeling forward by subdivisions from line. (*Rompre par section.*)
2. March in open column. (*Marcher en colonne.*)
3. To change the direction on a moveable pivot. (*Changer de direction.*)
4. To halt the column. (*Arrêter la colonne.*)
5. Wheeling into line. (*Se former en bataille.*)

LESSON VI.

1. To break off files, and to make them move up again to the front. (*Etant en colonne, mettre des files en arrière et les faire rentrer en ligne.*)
2. To march in column of route; to change direction, thus, marching at ease; to break off files, and to make them form up again. (*Marcher au pas de route, exécuter ainsi des changemens de direction; mettre des files en arrière, et les faire rentrer en ligne.*)
3. Increasing and diminishing the front of an open column on the march. (*Rompre et former le peloton.*)
4. Countermarch by files. (*La contre-marche.*)
5. To form to either flank from open column of subdivisions. (*Etant en colonne par section, se former sur la droite, ou sur la gauche en bataille.*)

Whatever

Whatever number of files the platoon may be composed of, it must be always formed three deep, when going through the detail of the first and second lessons.

When the number of files is under twelve, the platoon must be formed two deep, when executing the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth lessons.

In both cases, the instructor shall number the files from right to left, in order that each man may know his own number, according to his rank, in which he stands.

The instructor must study to be clear and concise in his explanations ; and he shall make the chief of the platoon rectify the errors in the detail of the exercise, as far as they relate to the soldiers, after pointing out such faults if observed, he himself not rectifying them, unless he is not well comprehended, or that his orders have been imperfectly executed.

Steadiness and coolness being the essential requisites in those who command and obey, to establish order and discipline in a body of men, the instructor shall exemplify these in his own conduct, and habituate the men he disciplines to act under their constant influence.

Discipline of the Platoon.

E'cole de Peloton.

LESSON I.

PART I.

Article First.

To open Ranks. (Ouvrir les rangs.)

1. The platoon being drawn up with ordered arms, as also the fourth rank, in order to open ranks, the instructor shall order the two fourth rank men nearest the left, to post themselves, one on the left of the front, and the other on the left of the rear rank.

2. He

2. He shall then command,

1. *Attention.* (*Garde à vous.*)

2. *Platoon.* (*Peloton.*)

3. *Shoulder* = ARMS. (*Portez* = *vos armes.*)

4. *Rear ranks, take open order.* (*En arrière, ouvrez vos rangs.*)

3. At the fourth word of command, the * chief of platoon, his covering serjeant, and the two fourth rank men placed on the left of the first and third ranks, shall nimbly step to the rear, in order to mark out the alignment to which the centre and rear ranks are to step back afterwards.

4. The chief of platoon, and the fourth rank man on the left of the front rank, shall conduct themselves to the fourth rank, and shall align themselves on those officers and non-commissioned officers composing it.

5. The covering serjeant, and the fourth rank man stationed on the left of the rear rank, where he had been first placed, shall proceed four paces to the rear of the fourth rank; judging the distance by the eye, without counting the steps.

6. The instructor shall, at the same time, proceed to the right flank, in order to verify, successively, the respective positions of those stationed, and to ascertain whether or not they may be on lines parallel to that of the front rank; and, if necessary, he shall quickly adjust their positions, giving, afterwards, the word,

5. *MARCH.* (*Marche.*)

7. At this word, the front rank shall not stir from its place.

8. The centre and rear ranks shall step back, in ordinary time, without counting the steps, and shall dress on the alignment marked out for them, conforming to what has been laid down in the discipline of the soldier, No. 242.

9. The chief of platoon shall dress the centre rank, and the covering serjeant, the rear rank, on the fourth rank

* Chef de peloton has been rendered literally, in lieu of calling him "captain of the company" in this Section.

The term "ferre-file" is translated "fourth rank men," as there is no immediate simple, or single, word of adequate import in our service, that would convey the meaning.

rank man on the left of their respective ranks, which fourth rank men are now on the left of the centre and rear ranks.

10. The fourth rank men, or supernumerary rank, behind the rear rank, shall step back also, at the word *march*; and shall dress at their proper distance from the rear rank when aligned.

11. The chief of platoon and the covering serjeant having dressed their respective ranks, the instructor will command,

FRONT. (*Fixe.*)

12. At this word, the chief of platoon, and the fourth rank man on the left of the centre rank, shall occupy their former situations in the front rank.

13. The instructor seeing the ranks dressed, shall inspect the position of body, and that of shouldered arms of the men composing the front rank; and shall direct the chief of platoon, and the covering serjeant, if the platoon is one acquiring elementary discipline, to examine these relative positions, in the centre and rear ranks *.

Article Second.

Alignment at open Ranks.

Alignemens à rangs ouverts.

14. The ranks being opened, the instructor shall, in this stage of the discipline, cause the men of each rank to dress, one by one, in order the better to inculcate the principles.

15. He shall order the three men on the right, or left of each rank, to march three or four paces to the front, and having aligned, or dressed them, he will command,

By file, by the right forward (or by the left forward)

DRESS. (*Par file à droite (ou à gauche) = alignement.*)

16. At this word, the soldiers of each rank in open file shall dress up, successively, to the alignment, each of them allowing the man next to him, on the side to which the

* See Rules, Part II. § 41. Part III. Formation of the Company, § 70, 71.

the alignment is made, to be advanced two paces, before he quits the original ground.

17. Alignments by succession, having habituated the soldiers to dress correctly, the instructor shall cause entire ranks to align to the front and to the rear, in parallel and oblique positions and directions, always placing three men as a base line of alignment for each rank. For this purpose, he will command,

By the right (or left) forward = DRESS. (*A droite (ou à gauche) alignement.*) Or it may be (*ou bien.*)

By the right (or left) backward = DRESS. (*En arrière à droite (ou en arrière à gauche)* ALIGNEMENT *.

18. In oblique alignments at open order, the second and third ranks need not endeavour to move by the file leader in dressing, since the object in view in this species of instruction is to exercise the soldiers in aligning themselves correctly in their respective ranks in every direction.

19. In these various alignments, the instructor shall superintend the front, the chief of platoon the second, and the covering serjeant the rear rank, placing themselves, for that purpose, on the flank to which the dressing is made.

20. In oblique alignments, the soldiers shall conform the line of their shoulders to the new direction of their rank, and shall place themselves on the alignment, regulating themselves by the detail laid down in numbers 233 and 242 of the *discipline of the soldier*, according as the new direction may be to the front, or rear of the original position of the rank.

21. After each alignment, the instructor, the chief of platoon, and the covering serjeant, shall, in passing along the rank, inspect the position of the body, and that of the arms, in order to accustom the soldiers not to be negligent in these respects.

Article

* In the original, such words of execution are, as here, in capitals. In the translation, where the French phrases are given, the whole is in common print character; but the word of execution translated, is in capitals.

Article Third.

The Manual Exercise.

Maniement des Armes.

22. The ranks being open, the instructor shall place himself before the right flank, so as to see the three ranks, and shall order the manual exercise to be gone through, as follows :

Present arms. (*Présenter les armes.*)

Shoulder arms. (*Porter les armes.*)

Order arms. (*Reposer sur les armes.*)

Ground arms. (*Poser les armes à terre.*)

Take up arms. (*Reléver les armes.*)

Shoulder arms. (*Porter les armes.*)

Support arms. (*Porter l'arme au bras.*)

Carry arms. (*Porter les armes.*)

Unfix bayonets. (*Remettre la bayonnette.*)

Shoulder arms. (*Porter les armes.*)

Secure arms. (*Passer l'arme sous le bras gauche.*)

Shoulder arms. (*Porter les armes.*)

Fix bayonets. (*Bayonnette au canon.*)

Shoulder arms. (*Porter les armes.*)

Prime and load by twelve words of command. (*Charge en douze temps* *.

23. The instructor shall strictly observe, that the positions of the body, feet, and arms, are always exact ; that the motions are lively and close ; and that they are not flurred over, as by flight of hand †.

Observations on the motion of charging bayonets, and on that of trailing arms.

Observations relatives au mouvement de ‡ croisez = la bayonnette, et à celui de descendez = vos armes.

24. Circumstances may arise which will require the use of fixed bayonets, in attack or defence.

8

25. In

* In French, the commanding verb is in the infinitive, and in English, in the imperative. " Temps " means, timed compound motions, in consequence of a word of command.

† " *Qu'on n'escamote point l'arme.*"

‡ " *Croisez la bayonnette,*" an expression which has arisen from the practice of crossing the fixed bayonets, to oppose attacks of cavalry in different directions. In general it means, to charge bayonets.

25. In other cases, such as passing through a thick wood, shouldered arms are impracticable; a soldier has sometimes recourse to his firelock as a necessary support, as in climbing the steep sides of an eminence, or in crossing ditches; it becomes, therefore, necessary that the instructor should sometimes make the soldiers practise the motions of *charging bayonets* and of *trailing arms*, to teach them to avail themselves, most advantageously, of their arms, under different circumstances.

Article Fourth.

To close Ranks.

Serrer les rangs.

26. Having gone through the manual exercise, the instructor will proceed to close the ranks. To effect this he shall order,

1. *Rear ranks take close order.* (*Serrez vos rangs.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

27. At the word *march*, the centre and rear ranks shall close in ordinary time, each man covering his file leader; and the covering serjeant, and the chief of platoon, shall resume their respective places in line.

Article Fifth.

Alignment of closed Ranks.

Alignemens à rangs serrés.

28. The ranks being closed, the instructor will exercise the platoon in taking parallel and oblique alignments to the right and to the left, to the front and to the rear, always previously placing three files as a base line of alignment in the new direction. He will give the words of command directed in No. 17.

29. In aligning at close order, the chief of platoon shall superintend the alignment of the front rank, and the covering serjeant that of the centre and rear ranks; and they will accustom themselves to judge accurately of forming a good alignment, from the line of the eyes and shoulders, and by glancing along the front and rear of the rank.

30. When the chief of platoon sees the whole, nearly, of the front rank aligned, he shall give the word (*eyes*) *front*, (*fixe*), rectifying, afterwards, the dressing of such as require it, according to the mode laid down in the *discipline of the soldier*, No. 240. The centre and rear ranks will conform to the alignment of the front rank, and the covering serjeant will see, that this shall be accomplished.

31. The ranks being steady, the instructor proceeds to the flank, to ascertain the accuracy, or the reverse, of the alignment of the three ranks; and he will observe whether or not the men of the centre and rear ranks correctly cover their file-leaders.

32. In taking oblique alignments, the instructor regulates the procedure by what has been laid down above, No. 20.

33. The officers and non-commissioned officers composing the fourth rank, shall always post themselves two paces in rear of the third rank.

34. To stand at ease, the instructor shall order,

1. *Support* = ARMS. (*L'arme* = *au bras*.)

or,

Order = ARMS. (*Reposez vous* = *sur vos armes*)

2. *Stand at* = EASE. (*Repos.*)

This shall take place at the conclusion of each lesson.

35. After the word, *stand at ease*, is given, the men are not required either to be steady, or to maintain their position.

36. When the intention is to permit the soldiers to rest themselves, but without losing their dressing; after ordering arms to be supported, the further word will be,

On your ground stand at = EASE. (*En place* = *repos.*)

37. When this command is given, the soldiers are not required to keep the body steady or immoveable, but they must keep either heel exactly in its place.

LESSON II.

38. The instructor proceeding to the second lesson, shall give the words of command,

1. ATTEN-

1. ATTENTION. (*Garde à vous.*)
2. Platoon. (*Peloton.*)
3. Shoulder ARMS *. (*Portez = vos armes.*)

He shall, then, exercise the platoon in the loadings and firings, in the following order :

Article First.

Loading in quick time.

Charge précipitée.

39. Loading in quick time, shall be executed by the words of command, and in the manner prescribed in the *discipline of the soldier*, No. 146, and following ones. The instructor will cause this to be repeatedly practised, before he proceeds to loading in quickest time.

Article Second.

Loading in quickest time †.

Charge à volonté.

40. Shall be executed from the manner practised in the *discipline of the soldier*, No. 152.

41. In loading in quick, and quickest time, when, at the commencement, the troops come down to the priming position, the chief of platoon, and the covering serjeant, will half face to the right along with them ; and when the troops, in loading, cast round, they will front.

42. The instructor shall bestow the most particular attention in seeing that in the loadings, the soldiers conform to the principles laid down in the *discipline of the soldier*, Nos. 153 and 154, where observations are made relative to loading.

43. Loading in quickest time (without the four pauses of loading in quick time) being that made use of in ac-

H 2

tion,

* “ When the word, *shoulder*, is given, the recruit throws up the firelock with his left hand, and catches it by the butt without the least assistance from the right hand.”—See Saldern’s *Tactics*, page 14.

This is also the English mode, which is neat, and saves a motion, formerly used, that of dropping the right hand.

† So translated, because it appears from the context, that it is executed in less time than firing in quick time, which requires four regular, short pauses.

tion, it becomes of the last importance that it should be done expertly ; and, therefore, the practice of it is to be particularly dwelt on. When the soldiers are well grounded in the principles of it, they will be, gradually, brought to load and fire, at least, thrice, and even four times in a minute, with regularity and ease.

Article Third.

*Firing by the platoon three deep *.*

Feu de peloton.

44. To effect this, the instructor shall order as follows :

1. *The platoon will fire.* (*Feu de peloton.*)

2. *Commence firing.* (*Commencez de feu.*)

45. At the first word, the chief of platoon shall retire, quickly, behind the centre of his platoon, two paces in the rear of the fourth rank.

46. The covering serjeant shall fall back into the alignment of the fourth rank, opposite to the interval † he stands in ; and this rule will be general with respect to the covering serjeant during the firings.

47. On hearing the second word of command, the chief of platoon shall give the following words of command :

1. *Platoon.* (*Peloton.*)

2. *Ready.* (*Armez.*)

3. *Present.* (*Joue.*)

4. *Fire.* (*Feu.*)

5. *Load.* (*Chargez.*)

48. At the word, *load*, the soldiers will come down to the priming position, will load and shoulder, when the chief of platoon will, by the same words of command, cause the platoon to fire again, and so on, until a ruffle from the drum directs to cease firing.

49. The chief of platoon shall, sometimes, order his platoon to fire obliquely to the right, and obliquely to the left, taking care to give the caution, *oblique to the right,*

* In firing three deep, the front rank always kneels.

† “ Vis-à-vis de son crâneau,” an expression that, in its spirit, supposes several platoons aligned, and necessarily forming intervals between them, for the captains, and covering serjeants in the rear rank.

right, or, *oblique to the left*, after the word, *ready*, and before the word, *present*, making his platoon fire, thus, sometimes to the right, and sometimes to the left, without any other caution. He will also sometimes make his men *recover arms* (*redressez = vos armes*), after presenting, in order to accustom his men to steadiness and coolness, and to attention to the word of command.

Article Fourth.

Independent file firing.

Feu de deux rangs.

50. To produce this species of firing, the instructor shall order ;

2. *Platoon.* (*Peloton.*)

3. *Ready.* (*Armez.*)

4. *Commence firing.* (*Commencez le feu.*)

51. At the first word of command, the chief of platoon shall retire one pace in rear of the third rank, opposite to his interval in line.

52. The mode of execution in consequence of the third and fourth commands, will be regulated according to the directions laid down in No. 176 and the ones following, in the *discipline of the soldier*.

1. *Firing by independent files.* (*Feu de deux rangs.*)

53. The right hand file shall commence this species of firing ; the next file will present, at the instant when the first has fired and come down to the loading position ; and so on to the left ; but this progression will take place only during the first fire ; every man, afterwards, loading and firing without waiting for others, and conforming to the rules laid down in Nos. 180 and 181 of the *discipline of the soldier* *.

54. The instructor causes the fire, either of the platoon, front rank kneeling, or of independent files, to cease, by a roll, or ruffle of the drum, at the beginning of which the firing shall cease. Those who have just fired, shall load and shoulder ; if in the position of *ready*, they shall front, half cocking and then shouldering, at the same time ; and if presenting, they shall recover their

* See Rules, Inspection, page 270, paragraph 3.

arms, of their own accords, fronting, half-cocking, and shouldering arms. In platoon firing, the front rank will spring up from the knee to half-cock; and in firing by independent files, the men of the centre and rear ranks, after having half-cocked, and previous to shouldering, shall take back their respective firelocks, if not in possession of them, on hearing the ruffle.

55. The ruffle shall, always, be followed by a tap of the drum, and, at this signal, the chief of platoon, as also the covering serjeant, shall, quickly, resume their places in line, and rectify, if necessary, the alignment of the ranks.

56. If there is no drum, the instructor shall order the fire to cease by repeating the word, *ruffle* (*roulement*) or *roll*, as if directing the same to be beat*.

The tap of the drumstick, as a signal for the chief of platoon, and the covering serjeant, to resume their original places, shall be likewise repeated, thus, *tap of the drumstick* (*coup de baguette*) by the instructor, when he sees arms shouldered, if there is no drum with the drill.

Article Fifth.

Firing to the Rear.

Feu en arrière.

57. To accomplish this, the instructor shall order;

1. *The platoon will fire to the rear.* (*Feu en arrière.*)

2. Platoon. (*Peloton.*)

3. *To the right about* = FACE. (*Demi-tour* = *à droite.*)

58. At the word, *to the right about*, the chief of platoon shall place himself facing, and close against, the right hand front rank man of his platoon, or company; and the covering serjeant, followed by the officers, and non-commissioned officers of the fourth rank, shall, nimbly, step through the interval, or opening, left by the chief of platoon, placing themselves facing to the rear, two paces from the front rank, and opposite to their respective places in line.

59. At

* There is, generally, no drum attending the drill, and, therefore, some signal is necessary. In a drill of recruits with us, the word is "cease firing," in the absence of a drum.

59. At the word, *face*, the chief of platoon shall occupy his interval in line, but places himself in the rear rank, now become the front; and the covering serjeant shall place himself in the proper front rank, now the rear, and covering, in that situation, the captain, or chief of platoon.

60. The platoon facing to the rear, shall, by word of command from the instructor, as explained in the preceding article, go through the platoon firing, direct and oblique, and the firing by files independent. The chief of platoon, and the covering serjeant, will act as has been laid down respecting them, in such situations.

61. In firing to the rear, the rear rank, become the front, will fire kneeling.

62. Independent file firing will commence from the left flank of the platoon (the flanks of which are reversed) become the right *.

63. To front the platoon, the instructor shall order,

1. *The platoon will front.* (*Face en tête.*)

2. *Platoon.* (*Peloton.*)

3. *To the right about* = FACE. (*Demi-tour* = *à droite*).

64. At the word, *to the right about*, the chief of platoon, the covering serjeant, and the supernumerary rank, will conform to the directions given above.

65. At the word, *face*, the chief of the platoon, and the covering serjeant, resume their places in line.

Remarks on the different Species of Firings.

Observations relatives aux feux.

66. The instructor shall accustom the kneeling-rank to present horizontally, and the standing ranks, to lower the muzzle, a little, under level, in taking aim.

67. The instructor will recommend to the chief of platoon, to make a very small pause between the words, *present*, and, *fire* (*joue, et feu*), to enable the troops to aim well.

68. The instructor must place himself in front of the right flank, so as to command a view of the three ranks, in

* The intention of this seems to be, that the troops should always, in whatever direction they may be fronting, be accustomed to take up the fire by independent files, from their, then, right.

in order to observe such faults as may be committed; he shall give it in charge to the chief of platoon, and to those in the supernumerary rank, to watch in this respect, and to report to him when the platoon stands at ease; and such as are found to load awkwardly, or to fire, in the platoon firings, habitually, slow, by not pulling their triggers, smartly, with the others, shall be remanded to the department of the *discipline of the soldier*, where individual instruction is given.

69. The instructor will recommend to the soldiers to observe the utmost steadiness and coolness, during the firings, consistently with a requisite vivacity and smartness of execution; and he shall omit nothing that can contribute to this effect.

70. In the firings, he will lay it down as a general principle to the troops, that the left heel is always to turn on the same individual spot, in order that the alignment of ranks, and the covering of files, may be maintained; and, at the conclusion of the firing, he will ascertain this, by inspecting the alignment.

71. The instructor shall add to his remarks, all those to be found under Nos. 184, 185, and 186 of the *discipline of the soldier*.

72. When the platoon fires with cartridges, the instructor shall cause the files, in close order, to spring their ramrods, to ascertain whether there may not be three charges in the firelock; and if this is the case, he will cause them to be drawn with a worm on the ramrod.

LESSON III.

Article First.

Marching in Line.*

Marche en bataille.

73. The platoon being drawn up correctly aligned, for
the

* See Rules, Part II. § 42.

“Le dirai-je ce grand mot en quoi consiste tout le secret de l'art, et qui va sans doute paroître ridicule? *Faites les marcher en cadence.* Voilà tout le secret, et c'est le pas militaire des Romains.”—*Réveries de Maréchal de Saxe*, page 16.

the march in line, the instructor will place himself, from fifteen to twenty paces, in front of the chief of platoon, facing him, on the prolongation of the line passing between the heels of the chief of platoon, and those of the covering serjeant, behind him in the rear rank.

74. He shall, previously, assure himself that the shoulders of the chief of platoon, and of the covering serjeant, are perfectly in the line of direction of their relative ranks; and also, that the latter correctly covers the former.

75. The instructor having aligned himself, exactly, on the directing file, is to command,

1. *The platoon will advance.* (*Peloton en avant.*)

76. At this word, a non-commissioned officer selected, previously, from the supernumerary rank, shall proceed, six paces, in front of the chief of platoon, and the instructor, situated as has been just described, will correctly align this non-commissioned officer, in the line of prolongation of the directing file.

77. The non-commissioned officer placed six paces in front of the chief of platoon, being the person charged with the direction of the march, shall, after his own position is fixed, with his eye, mark two points on the ground, on a straight line proceeding from his own heels to, and passing between, those of the instructor.

78. This arrangement made, the instructor will command,

MARCH. (*Marche.*)

79. At this word of command, the platoon shall step off, smartly, together; the non-commissioned officer charged with the direction of the march, shall maintain, with the greatest precision, the length and cadence of the step; shall march in the direction of the two points taken up in the line between him and the instructor, in proportion as he advances, and always before he arrives at the nearest of the two points originally fixed on, taking up new points accurately in the prolongation of the two first, and at fifteen or twenty paces from each other; the chief of platoon

The cadenced step derives its name from having been, originally, as mentioned in the above work, regulated by the sound of music, and from this has originated the custom of troops stepping off together.

platoon will constantly march in the path traced out by the directing non-commissioned officer, keeping, always, at the distance of six paces from him; and the soldiers shall keep the head direct to the front, feeling, lightly, the elbow of the man next to them, respectively, towards the side of the file of direction, and conforming to the principles laid down for the march to the front, in the system of *discipline of the soldier*.

80. The front rank man, next to the chief of platoon, shall be particularly careful never to project in line * before him, nor to push him laterally; and for this purpose, he shall, always, keep the line of his shoulders, in a very small degree, back, or towards the rear, but at the same time, in a direction parallel to those of the chief of platoon.

81. The supernumerary rank will march, two paces, in rear of the third rank.

If the soldiers lose the step, the instructor is to command,

Take up the — STEP. (*Au pas.*)

82. At this word, the soldiers glance to the directing serjeant, take up the step, and turn the head again, immediately, to the front.

Observations on the March in Line, or Battle Order.

Observations relatives à la marche en bataille.

83. If the platoon is undergoing a course of elementary discipline, the instructor posts the chief of platoon, and the covering serjeant, sometimes, on the right, and sometimes on the left of the platoon: but when the platoon exercised, is a battalion-company, if belonging to the right wing, the officer and covering serjeant, are posted on the left, and when belonging to the left, they are posted on the right flank †.

84. The non-commissioned officer who leads the march, influencing its accuracy in the highest degree, the instructor

* “Le deborder” not only means as above, but also, not to press laterally the chief of platoon, so as to make him outflank his line of march.

† The intention of this is, probably, to accustom the men of each wing, when marching in their battalion, in line, to march by the centre.

structor shall appoint for this important duty such only who are thoroughly disciplined and intelligent, in regard to the precision of the step, the habitude of maintaining the squareness of the shoulders, and of prolonging, without deviation, a given direction.

85. Were the directing serjeant deficient, and did not follow these principles, a floating movement of the platoon would necessarily take place ; the soldiers would not contract the habit of taking equal steps in equal times, and of preserving, steadily, the squareness of the shoulders, the only means of attaining perfection in marching to the front.

86. In order, the better, to confirm the soldiers in the length of the step, in the cadence, and in the principles of marching in line, whenever the ground admits of it, the instructor shall cause the platoon to march three or four hundred paces, without halting ; towards the conclusion of this practice, he shall cause the platoon to march to the front, in open order, the better to observe the marching of the centre and rear ranks, and in this case, he will order a non-commissioned officer from the supernumerary rank, to post himself on the flank of the centre rank, behind the chief of platoon.

87. The instructor must bestow the most unremitting attention on the observation of the principles of marching in line ; he shall frequently place himself on the directing flank, whence he may see the three ranks, and mark all the faults committed ; and he will, sometimes, retire to the distance of twenty or thirty paces in rear of the directing file, stopping there to assure himself that the serjeant directing the march, does not deviate from the line perpendicular to the original front *.

Article

* Marshal Saxe deemed marching well, the most essential point of discipline : " c'est dans les jambes qu'est tout le secret des manœuvres, des combats, et c'est aux jambes qu'il faut s'appliquer." This quaint opinion is strongly expressive of the utility of the *deploying*, or *lock-step*.

Article Second.

To halt the platoon marching in line, and to align, or dress it.

Arrêter le peloton marchant en bataille, et l'aligner.

88. To halt the platoon, the instructor commands,

1. *Platoon.* (*Peloton.*)

2. *HALT.* (*Halte.*)

89. At the word, *halt*, the platoon shall halt; and the directing serjeant is to remain in his situation, unless the instructor, not seeing it necessary to continue the march, orders him to retire to his place in line.

90. The platoon being halted, the instructor can make the three files, nearest to the directing flank, advance, and he can align the platoon on them, as a base-line, or he may confine himself to rectifying the alignment. In the last case, the instructor shall command, *right* (or *left*) *dress*; (*rectifiez l'alignement*); on which the chief of platoon shall dress such files as require it, as has been directed under No. 240, in the *discipline of the soldier*.

Article Third.

Oblique marching in line.

Marche oblique en bataille.

91. The platoon marching to the front in line, will oblique by the following commands:

1. *To the right* (or *left*) *oblique.* (*Oblique à droite* (ou *à gauche.*)

2. *MARCH.* (*Marche.*)

92. At this command, to be given conformable to the directions laid down in the *school of the soldier*, Nos. 36 and 37, the platoon shall oblique; the directing serjeant must give his utmost attention in maintaining the squareness of the shoulder parallel to the original front, and to oblique with an uniform movement and step; the chief of platoon will conform to the march of the directing serjeant; the soldiers shall keep up the light touch of the elbow towards the side of the directing flank, following, studiously, the rules prescribed in the *discipline of the soldier*, No. 198, and the man next the chief of platoon

must be careful not to project to the front before him, nor to press him laterally.

93. To resume the march direct to the front, the command will be,

1. *Forward.* (*En avant.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

94. At the word, *march*, which shall be pronounced at the moment when the foot is coming to the ground, the platoon is to resume the direct march to the front; the instructor shall, quickly, spring forward to the distance of fifteen or twenty paces in front of the chief of platoon, shall face to the rear, stationing himself, correctly, on the prolongation of the line of the chief of platoon and covering serjeant, and, by a signal, will place, on that line, the directing serjeant, should he happen to be either to the right or left of it: and the directing serjeant will, immediately then, mark two points on the ground, between himself and the instructor, taking, afterwards, new points, in proportion as he advances, as has been explained under No. 79.

Observations on oblique Marching.*

Observations relatives à la marche oblique.

95. Were the chief of platoon inattentive to the keeping of the shoulders square, he would give the platoon a false direction, which would militate against the essential object in oblique marching, that of gaining ground to the right or left, still keeping the front parallel to the original line, previous to obliquing.

96. Were the directing serjeant to oblique with an inequality of step, gaining, sometimes more, and sometimes less ground to a flank, and were the chief of platoon to act similarly, conforming to this inaccurate marching: opening out, and crowding on each other, would necessarily result, among the files, according to the nature of the error.

97. The utmost attention, on the part of the instructor, is required to obviate these faults: he must, immediately on perceiving, rectify them, by placing himself, during

VOL. I.

I

the

* See Saldern's Tactics, page 43, where the reasoning on obliquing is ingenious and judicious.

the march, in front, facing the platoon, in such a manner as to be able to regulate the march of the directing serjeant, and to watch that the principles are adhered to; he must see that the man on the flank to which the obliquing is made, gains sufficient ground, so as not to constrain the marching of the files that are towards the other flank; were he not to oblique sufficiently, the platoon * would bulge out, or break; were he to oblique too much, openings would take place; it is therefore of importance to regulate the step of the chief of platoon, or of the man placed on the opposite flank, when the obliquing is in that direction.

98. Finally, the instructor, when the ground admits of it, ought to continue the oblique march for a considerable time, before the direct march is resumed, in order to render the practice easy to the soldier, a thing of the utmost importance in the movements of the line †.

Article Fourth.

To mark time, to march in quick time, and the back step.

Marquer le pas, marcher le pas accéléré, et le pas en arrière.

99. To mark time, when the platoon is marching, in ordinary time, to the front, the instructor commands,

1. *Mark time.* (*Marquez le pas.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

100. To resume the ordinary step, the commands are,

1. *Forward.* (*En avant.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

101. To march in quick, from ordinary time, the instructor shall command †;

1. *Quick time.* (*Pas accéléré.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

102. The

* Petit corps carré de quarante a cinquante hommes, que l'on tire d'un bataillon, et qu'on place entre des escadrons pour les soutenir, ou que l'on met en embuscade dans des passages étroits, et des défilés qui ne pourroient contenir au-delà de ce nombre d'hommes, c'est par des *pelotons* et *demi-pelotons*, que commença l'institution des soldats, pour leur apprendre les évolutions militaires.—Nouveau Dictionnaire Militaire.

Peloton means, literally, *a knot of people, a few gathered together.*

† See Rules, Part II. Platoon, § 42, 59, 55. Part I. § 31.

102. The word, *march*, shall be given at the instant, when either foot, indifferently, is just coming to the ground.

103. To resume the ordinary time, the command is,

1. *Ordinary time.* (*Pas ordinaire.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

104. The word, *march*, shall be given somewhat sooner than it is in passing from ordinary, to quick time, and when either foot is on the ground, in the rear.

105. The platoon being halted, the practice of the back step will arise from these words of command ;

1. *Step back* *. (*En arrière.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

106. The back step is executed according to the principles laid down in the *discipline of the soldier*, Nos. 215 and 216 ; but the occasion for using it being less frequent, than that of the other species of marching, the instructor shall practise the soldiers, occasionally, in marching fifteen or twenty steps backward.

Remarks on Quick Time.

Observations relatives au pas accéléré.

107. The instructor ought not to exercise the men in marching in quick time, till they are thoroughly confirmed in the length and cadence of the step in ordinary time : and he will, then, endeavour to render it familiar and easy to them to take 100 steps in a minute in quick time cadence, to keep the body upright, and to be as cool and collected, as in marching in ordinary time.

108. In the charge, and in all circumstances requiring great celerity of movement, quick time may be carried as far as 120 steps in a minute ; but as troops marching at this rate, for a considerable time, could scarcely fail to break, in inculcating the elementary principles of the march, this measure of acceleration of march is not to be considered as a prescribed head of instruction, and, consequently, the troops are to be exercised in the habitual practice of 100 steps in a minute.

* See Rules, Part II. Platoon or Company, § 44, Back Step.

Article Fifth.

To march in Line, with the rear rank leading.

Marcher en bataille par le troisième rang.

109. The platoon being halted and aligned, the instructor is to order the march to the rear, with the third rank leading, as follows :

1. *Platoon.* (*Peloton.*)

2. *To the right about* = FACE. (*Demi-tour* = *à droite.*)

110. The platoon having faced to the right about, the instructor shall step nimbly to the front of the directing file, conforming himself to the directions laid down under No. 73.

111. The instructor being correctly situated on the prolongation of the line of the directing file, commands,

3. *Platoon will advance.* (*Peloton en avant* *.)

112. At this command, the leading serjeant shall conform to the directions laid down under Nos. 76 and 77, with this only difference, that he posts himself at the distance of six paces from the line of the supernumerary rank.

113. The covering serjeant shall post himself in the alignment of the supernumerary rank, opposite to his interval; and the chief of platoon shall take his place in the rear rank, now become the front rank, or leading rank.

114. The disposition being made, the instructor will give the word of command,

MARCH. (*Marche.*)

115. On hearing this word, all step off, the directing serjeant, the chief of platoon, and the soldiers conforming to the directions laid down, heretofore, under No. 79, and the following.

116. With the exception of *stepping back*, the instructor, while the rear rank leads, shall cause the platoon to practise all that has been directed in the case of marching in

* *Peloton en avant*, this caution of, *the company will advance*, is given, in order to prepare the men for stepping off together, and to make all requisite arrangements previous to stepping off at the word, *march*. *En avant* means that the company is to march to the *then front*, which is the *proper rear*.

in line to the front ; and the words of command, and procedure of execution, will be the same, as if the proper front rank led.

117. When the platoon is halted, and that the instructor wishes to align, or dress it, he will put it to the right about by the words of command under No. 16 and following ones in the *discipline of the soldier**, and the chief of platoon, and covering serjeant, having faced about, will take their respective posts in line.

118. The instructor may, then, order the three files nearest to the directing flank to advance, to serve as a base line to dress on ; or, he may confine himself to the rectification of the alignment, conforming, in either case, to the directions given, under No. 90.

LESSON IV.

Article First.

To march to a flank †.

Marcher par le flanc.

119. The platoon standing aligned, is marched to the right flank, by the following words of command :

1. *The platoon will march to the right flank.*

Peloton par le flanc droit.

2. *To the right* = FACE. (*A droite.*)

3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

(Pl. VII. Fig. 1.)

120. At the second command, the platoon will face to the right, the chief of platoon will also face, moving one pace out of the rank, sideways, so as to be on the left of the covering serjeant, and near him, after he has, also, faced to the right, and moved, laterally, to occupy, before the front rank man, the place out of which the chief of platoon has just moved.

13.

121. At

* The expression in the text is " Il le remettra face en tête par le commandemens prescrits ci-dessus, No. 106." This number is an erratum, and the reference ought to have been to " numero 16, de l'école du soldat."—Vide page 17. The error is rectified in the translation.

† See Rules, Part II. Platoon, § 45.

121. At the word, *march*, the platoon steps off, smartly together, in ordinary time; the covering serjeant placed before the man on the right of the front rank, and the chief of platoon, placed at the side of the covering serjeant, will march straight forward. The men of the centre and rear ranks will march, dressing on their file leader, and keeping the head direct to the front; and the supernumerary rank will march, keeping exactly opposite to the file they, respectively, cover in line.

122. The instructor is to see that the rules of marching to a flank are adhered to, by placing himself, during the march, as has been directed in the *discipline of the soldier*, Nos. 222 and 223.

123. The instructor is to cause the platoon to march to the left flank, by the words of command used above; excepting, that he substitutes the word, *left*, instead of, *right*.

124. At the instant that the platoon faces to the left, the fourth rank man nearest to the left flank, shall place himself before the man on the left of the front rank; the chief of platoon will go, quickly, to the left, placing himself close to, and to the right of the fourth rank man; and the covering serjeant will post himself in the front rank, occupying the place left by the chief of platoon who has moved to the left flank.

Article Second.

Wheeling in File.

Changer de direction par file.

(Plate VII. Fig. 1.)

125. The platoon being faced to a flank, and either marching in file, or halting, will wheel its head, in file, by the following words of command:

1. *By files, to the right wheel (or left.)* (*Par file à droite (ou à gauche.)*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

126. At the word, *march*, the leading file shall wheel; if the wheel is made on the front rank man, he is not to turn suddenly, but is to move over a small portion of a circle that is small, shortening, a little, the three or four wheeling steps, in order to give the man in the rear rank
of

of the same file, time to conform to his movement; if the wheel is made on the rear rank man, the man of the front rank in the same file, will march the step of two feet in wheeling, and the man of the rear rank conforms to his movement, by describing a small portion of a small circle, as has been just mentioned above; and each file shall, thus, wheel, on the same ground on which the first wheeled.

127. The instructor shall strictly observe, that the wheel is conducted on these principles, so that the distance between the files may be preserved always, and that there is no sudden stoppage, jerking forward, or repulsion on the march *.

Article Third.

To halt the platoon marching to a flank, and to form it to a flank †.

Arrêter le peloton marchant par le flanc, et le remettre face en tête.

128. The instructor shall command,

1. *Platoon.* (*Peloton.*)

HALT. (*Halt.*)

FRONT. (*Front.*)

129. The second and third words of command are obeyed as directed in the *discipline of the soldier*, under Nos. 229 and 230. The chief of platoon and covering serjeant, take their post in line, immediately after the platoon fronts.

130. The instructor, if necessary, can take up a new alignment, or cause the platoon to be dressed, on its ground, by the chief of platoon.

Article Fourth.

To form the platoon marching to a flank, by files, to the right flank, if marching to the right: or, by files to the left flank, if marching to the left.

Le peloton étant en marche par le flanc, le former par file sur la droite, ou sur la gauche, en bataille.

131. The instructor shall cause the platoon marching to the right flank, to form, by files, to the right flank, in line, as follows:

1. *Form*

* See Rules, Part II. Exercise of the Platoon, § 66, No. 21.

† See Rules, Part II. § 61, forming from file to either flank.

1. *Form to the right flank by files, in line* *. (*Sur la droite par file en bataille.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

(Plate VII. Fig. 2.)

132. At the word, *march*, the centre and rear ranks mark time; the covering serjeant, and the chief of platoon will turn to the right, march straight forward, and shall be halted by the instructor, when these have passed, at least, four paces beyond the rear rank who are marking time: the man on the right of the front rank will continue marching, shall pass behind the covering serjeant, will turn to the right when beyond him, and shall move up to his left, dressing on him; the second man of the first rank shall, in the same manner, pass in the rear of the first, shall then turn to the right, and shall move up to his left, dressing on him; and so on, to the last man of this rank, whatever number of file leaders of platoons may compose it; the second and third ranks will execute the movement in the same manner as the first, the right hand man of the centre rank taking care not to commence the march, till he perceives three or four men of the first rank dressed in line; and the right hand man of the rear rank, from marking time, is not to commence the march of his rank, till he also sees three or four men of the centre rank in line, covering the front rank. The men of the centre and rear ranks will place themselves correctly, covering their respective file leaders, as they come up, one by one, to their places in line.

133. The chief of platoon shall place himself on the right of the covering serjeant, when he comes up to the line; and shall direct the formation of the alignment, in proportion as the men of the front rank arrive on the line.

134. If the platoon is marching to the left flank, the instructor can form it, by files to the left flank, in line, by the words of command directed above, in No. 131, but by inversion of mode, substituting the word *left*, instead of *right*; and the chief of platoon, placed on the left of the front rank, shall return to his proper situation in line after the instructor, seeing the platoon formed, shall have ordered him so to do.

135. The better to make the soldiers comprehend the mechanism

* See Rules, Part II. Platoon, § 61, Formation from File.

mechanism or component parts of this movement, the instructor will, at first, make each rank execute it separately, and afterwards, the three ranks together; directing them to form as if each rank were independent of, and unconnected with the others, but always recollecting what has been directed to be done by the centre and rear ranks, relative to the moment of recommencing the march, after marking time.

The instructor will follow up the movement, to assure himself that each file has followed the rules laid down in No. 132.

Article Fifth.

The platoon marching to a flank, forming to the front, from file, either in platoon, or by subdivisions.*

Le peloton étant en marche par le flanc, former le peloton, ou le section, en marchant.

(Plate VII. Fig. 3.)

136. The platoon is supposed marching, in file, to the right flank. The instructor will order the chief of platoon to execute the intended movement. He will order,

1. *The platoon will form to the front. (Par peloton en ligne.)*

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

137. At the word *march*, the covering serjeant continues to march straight on; the soldiers shall bring forward the right shoulder, passing from ordinary to quick time, and shall move into line, over the shortest line leading to their respective places, observing to dress up one after another, without running.

138. As the soldiers come into line, they are to take up the step from the covering serjeant.

139. The men of the centre and rear ranks, will conform to the movement of their file leaders, whom they will allow to precede them in coming up into line.

140. At

* A company, or platoon, in the French service, is divided into two *sections*, so that the word, *subdivision*, in the British service, corresponds with the word *section*.—Vide page 3.

See Rules, Part II. § 60, forming to the front from file.

See Rules, Battalion, § 95, No. 2.

This movement is of Prussian invention.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, pages 277, 278.

140. At the instant the movement commences, the chief of platoon shall face to his platoon, and conduct the operation: when the platoon is formed to the front, he shall command, *director to the left* (*guide à gauche*), shall post himself, two paces, before the centre of the platoon, facing to the front, and taking up the step of the platoon.

141. At the word, *director to the left*, by the chief of platoon, the fourth rank man nearest to the left, shall, nimbly, spring to the left of the front rank man there; and the covering serjeant, who is at the opposite flank, shall remain there.

142. When the platoon is marching, in file to the left flank, the movement is executed by the same words of command, and on the same principles: the platoon being formed from file to the front, the chief of platoon would order, *director to the right*, taking his own place, two paces before the centre; the covering serjeant who is on the right of the front rank, would answer the purpose of director on the right, and the fourth rank man placed on the left flank would remain there.

143. Thus, in a column of platoons, the covering serjeant of each, shall be always placed on the right of the front rank, and the fourth rank man nearest to the left, shall be on the left of the front rank man on that flank, in their respective companies, whether the column has the right or left in front; they shall be termed *director of the right*, and, *director of the left*, of the platoon, and one of them will be charged with the direction, according as the column may be marching with the right, or left, in front.

144. If the platoon marching, in file, to a flank, is to be formed to the front, by subdivisions, the chief of platoon having received an order so to do, shall command,

1. *The platoon will form to the front, by subdivisions.*
(*Par section en ligne.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

145. This movement is executed according to the same rules; the chief of platoon shall post himself before the centre of the first subdivision, and the chief of the second subdivision, before the centre of that subdivision; and they would command, *director to the right*, or it may be,
director

director to the left, at the instant that their subdivision was formed.

146. At the word, *director to the left*, or, *director to the right*, given by the chief of each subdivision, the director of each, would take post on the requisite flank, if not already there.

147. *The director of the right* of the platoon, or company, shall, always, answer the purpose of the director of the right, or of the left, of the first subdivision; and the *director of the left* of the platoon, shall answer, equally, as the director of the right, or of the left, of the second subdivision.

148. Conformable to these regulating principles, there shall never be, in a column of subdivisions, but one director on the flank of each; and he shall be, always, on the left flank, if the right of the column is in front; and on the right flank, if the left is in front.

149. Whether it is a column of companies, or subdivisions, the officers and non-commissioned officers of the supernumerary rank, will follow, and remain attached to, their respective subdivisions.

LESSON V.

Article First.

Wheeling forward, by subdivisions, from line.

Rompre en colonne par section.

150. If the platoon is to break forward, by subdivisions, to the right, the instructor shall command,

1. *By subdivision, to the right wheel.* (*Par section à droite.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

Pl. VIII. Fig. 1.

151. At the first word of command, the chiefs of subdivisions shall place themselves, two paces, in front of the centre of their subdivisions, the chief of the second subdivision passing, for this purpose, round the left flank of the platoon, and they are not to pay attention to dressing on each other, it being only necessary for them to place themselves as directed.

152. At the word, *march*, the man on the right of the front rank of each subdivision, shall face to the right;—
the

the chief of each subdivision shall move, quickly, over the shortest line possible, to a point on the outside of that where the left will be when the wheel is effected; he shall there face to the rear, and shall place himself in such a manner, that a line drawn from him to the man on the right of the front rank, is perpendicular to the line of the platoon, previous to wheeling; the subdivisions will wheel, according to the rules of wheeling, from a halted pivot, in ordinary time; and when the man who conducts the wheeling flank shall have arrived within two paces of the perpendicular, the chief of each subdivision will command *.

1. *Subdivision. (Section.)*

2. HALT. (*Halte.*)

153. At the word, *halt*, the subdivisions shall halt; the covering serjeant shall move, at that instant, to the point where the left flank will rest, when dressed forward; that is, the left flank of the first subdivision, and he shall move to his point, along the front of the front rank; the fourth rank man, nearest to the left of the platoon, shall move to the point where the left flank of the second subdivision will rest, when dressed forward; they must take care to leave between themselves, respectively, and the man on the right of their subdivisions, a sufficient space to contain the front of the subdivision when dressed up; and the chief of platoon, and the chief of the second subdivision will regulate this, taking care to align them, between themselves and the pivot man of their subdivision, who has faced to the right.

154. The director of each subdivision being, thus, fixed on the perpendicular, the chiefs of subdivisions will command.

3. *Left = Dress. (A gauche = alignement.)*

155. The dressing being effected, each chief of subdivision shall command, *front, (fixe,)* and place himself, two paces, in front of the centre of his subdivision.

156. The

* See Rules, Part II. Platoon, § 47.

In the French service wheeling on the left, or right backward, is rejected, as being an awkward and unnatural movement. In lieu of this species of wheel, the companies file from line into column. When the companies wheel forward into open column, should any of them be of unequal strength, their pivot flanks are speedily brought into, and dressed on, the general line of the pivots.

156. The fourth rank officers and non-commissioned officers in rear of the third rank, will conform themselves to the movement of their respective subdivisions, placing themselves, two paces, in the rear of that rank.

157. The platoon will break forward, and wheel by subdivisions to the left, on the same principles. The instructor will command,

1. *By subdivisions, to the left wheel. (Par section à gauche.)*

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

158. The first command is executed as in wheeling forward by subdivisions to the right.

159. At the word, *march*, the man on the left of the front rank of each subdivision will face to the left; and the subdivisions are to wheel to the left, on the principles of wheeling on a halted pivot, the chiefs of subdivisions conforming to the rules just laid down under No. 152.

160. At the word, *halt*, given by the chief of each subdivision, the covering serjeant placed on the right of the first subdivision, and the fourth rank man nearest to the left flank of the second subdivision, shall conform to the directions laid down under No. 153; and the chiefs of subdivisions will align them, between themselves and the man on the left of the front rank of their respective subdivisions, giving them the word.

Right = Dress. (A droite = alignement.)

161. The subdivisions being dressed, each chief of subdivision is to command, *front (fixe,)* and place himself, two paces, in front of the centre of his subdivision.

Remarks on wheeling forward from line into column.

Observations relatives au mouvement de rompre en colonne.

162. The instructor, situated in front of the platoon, will carefully observe, whether or not the movements are executed according to the rules laid down in this section; whether or not the subdivisions, after wheeling, are placed on lines perpendicular to the original ones; and whether or not the director, who has posted himself where the wheeling flank ought to be rested when dressed, has left between himself and the man on the right (or left) of the front rank, a space accurately adequate to hold the front of the subdivision.

163. The subdivisions having once broke into column, if the director on the flank of the rear one does not exactly cover the director of the preceding one, he must not endeavour to correct his situation till the column is put in march; unless the instructor wishes to wheel, immediately, into line, and, consequently, to rectify the covering of the directors, which will be effected, as will be explained in the fifth article of this lesson.

164. The instructor shall take notice that the man on the right (or the man on the left) of each subdivision, who on the second word of command given by the instructor, shall have faced to the right, or left, being the real pivot of the wheel, the man of the front rank placed at the side of him, ought, in wheeling, to gain a little ground to the front, so as to clear the shoulder of the pivot, which projects, after he faces, beyond the front of the original line, a space equal to half the breadth of his body.

Article second.

March in open column.*

Marcher en colonne.

165. The platoon having broke to the right, from line into column of subdivisions, the instructor, previous to putting the column in motion, shall place himself on the line of the flank directors, at the distance of fifteen or twenty paces from the head of the column, and facing it. He shall, being thus correctly situated in the line of direction, order the director of the first subdivision to mark two points on the ground, on the line.

166. The instructor being, thus, situated, the director on the left flank of the first subdivision, marks two points on the ground, between himself and the instructor, on the straight line passing from himself to between the heels of the instructor, who then commands.

1. *The column will advance. (Colonne en avant.)*

2. *Directing serjeants on the left, or, march by the left.*

Guide à gauche.

3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

167. At the word, *march*, which shall be quickly and with vivacity repeated by the chiefs of subdivisions, they and the directing serjeants shall march off their subdivisions

* See Rules, part II. § 49.

sions with a firm decided step, throwing forward the left foot, smartly, at the same instant.

168. The soldiers will maintain the light touch of the elbow of each man next to them, respectively, towards the flank the director is on, taking care to march according to the principles detailed under No. 198 of the *discipline of the soldier*; the man of each subdivision, next to the director, shall always keep at the distance of six inches from him, in order to avoid pushing him out of the direction; and he will be also careful never to project himself to the front so as to be more advanced than the director *.

169. The leading director shall attend, with the greatest precision, to the length and cadence of the step, maintaining the direction of the march agreeable to the rules laid down under No. 79 of the *discipline of the platoon*.

170. The second directing serjeant shall march, accurately, in the path of the leading director, observing to keep at such a distance from him, as may be, exactly, equal to the front of his own subdivision, and to keep up the same step as that of the director who precedes him.

171. If the director of the second subdivision should lose his distance, which can arise only from his own carelessness, he ought to regain it, gradually, either by insensibly lengthening or shortening his steps, so that the subdivision may march uniformly and steadily, without sudden rectifications, transitions, or stops—constraining efforts, or sudden jerks.

172. If the director of the second subdivision has neglected to follow, exactly, the traces of the first, by being thrown sensibly out of the direction, he would remedy this fault by bringing forward, more or less, the left shoulder, in such a manner, as to regain the line of direction, gradually, by the direct step, in order to avoid the inconvenience arising from the oblique step, apt to occasion a loss of distance; if, on the contrary, the director has got on the inside, or in this case, right hand side of the line, he would remedy that defect, by pursuing the opposite means; and, in either case, the instructor will see that the soldiers conform to the movements of the directing serjeant.

* “*Le deborder*,” such words of compound meaning, require being translated by a circumlocution, that no part of the sense may be lost.

*Remarks on the march and direction, in open column.**Observations relatives à la marche et à la direction en colonne.*

173. Were the chiefs of subdivisions remiss in not marching off their subdivisions in a lively, smart style of step, from the very first taken, the consequence would be, that the march would be unsteady, and that the step and distance would be lost *.

174. If the leading director did not march with an equality of step, the march of his subdivision, and of the following one, would be uncertain and unsteady; and there would arise a floating, waving, and repulsion of the ranks and files.

175. Were the leading director inexperienced in prolonging a given line, he would describe a curve in marching, and the column would lose its rectilinear direction.

176. Were the second director not trained properly, to follow his leader of the head of the column, he would constantly lose his proper distance, the preservation of which is the essential and leading principle in the march in open column.

177. The directing serjeant on the pivot flank, shall be held responsible for the distance, step, and direction; and the chief of subdivision shall be answerable for the maintenance of order and uniformity in his subdivision, to which he shall frequently turn, to see that such is the case.

178. The instructor situated near the flank on which the directors are, shall superintend the execution of all the prescribed principles; and he shall place himself, sometimes in the rear of the directing serjeants, aligning correctly on them, and stopping during the time of taking twenty or thirty paces, to ascertain whether or not the director

* When a Prussian battalion breaks to the right or left, the leading company does not wheel forward, but marches straight forward the extent of its front, while the other companies are wheeling forward. If the column is to march, the second company wheels close in rear of the first, which has marched on. By the time the second has wheeled ready to follow the first, the third has arrived at the wheeling point; and by this means the distances are preserved. The wheel, of course, must be in a quicker time than the rate of march of the column.

director of the head of the column deviates from the line of direction, and whether or not the following director marches exactly, in the traces of the first.

179. Whenever the line breaks into open column, the chiefs of subdivision will repeat the words of command, *march*, and *halt*, given by the instructor, at the moment they hear them, and without waiting for each other: and they shall not repeat any other word of command, but shall caution their men if they have not understood, and heard the word given.

Article Third.

In open Column of Subdivisions, wheeling into a new direction, on a moveable pivot, turning on the march.*

Changer de direction.

180. The column marching with the right in front, will change its direction, by order of the instructor communicated to the chief of the leading subdivision; the instructor shall post himself, or will station a camp-colour man at the point where the movement is to commence; and the person placed there, in the line of direction of the serjeants on the pivot flank, is to have his right side nearest to the head of the column.

181. The director of the head-subdivision, shall conduct his march on the instructor, or on the ~~marching~~ ^{stationed} man. *marked* stationed at the wheeling point, in such a manner, that his left arm shall lightly touch the breast of the stationed man; and when the leading subdivision is nearly up to the stationed man, the chief of subdivision will command,

1. *Right shoulders forward.* (*Tournez à gauche.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

(Plate VIII. Fig. 2.)

182. The first word of command shall be given when
K 3 the

* See Rules, Part II. Platoon, § 52.

Though we have translated the above a wheel on a moveable pivot, it is rather a successive wheeling of single files which, separately, wheel on arcs of ninety degrees of concentric circles, and, then, move forward to their respective places in their company, dressing, on the march, by their directing, or pivot flank. The Prussians execute this wheel on a halted pivot.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, page 277.

the pivot flank is within two paces of the wheeling point.

183. At the word, *march*, which shall be given at the moment of arriving on the wheeling point, the director shall turn to the left, and the soldiers will turn into this species of wheel, as has been directed under No. 270 of the *discipline of the soldier*.

184. The director of the first subdivision having turned to the left, shall fix on two points on the ground, in the new direction, in order to march on them.

185. The second subdivision marches off with the first, and proceeds straight forward, its director raising the surface of the breast of the instructor, or camp-colour man, placed at the wheeling point; and when arrived there, this second subdivision will turn to the left, by the same words of command, and by the same rules as the first subdivision.

186. In order to wheel, on a moveable pivot, on the flank opposite to that on which the director is, the instructor, after giving orders to that effect to the chief of the first subdivision, shall, immediately, proceed to the point where the change of direction is to commence, or, shall detach a camp-colour man thither, placing himself, or such marking man, in the position described in order to change direction on the flank the director is on.

187. The directing serjeant of the leading subdivision conducts himself on the march, as has been directed above, under No. 181; and when arrived within two paces of the initial point of wheeling, the chief of subdivision will command,

1. *Left shoulders forward.* (*A droite conversion.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

(Plate VIII. Fig. 3.)

188. At the word, *march*, which is to be given at the instant when the director shall arrive at the point where the circling on the moveable pivot commences, the subdivision will execute the wheel to the right, conformable to the directions given under No. 264 in the *discipline of the soldier*.

189. The wheel being effected, the chief of subdivision shall command,

3. *For-*

3. *Forward.* (*En avant.*)

4. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

190. These commands will be pronounced, and executed, conformable to the rules laid down under Nos. 266 and 267, of the *discipline of the soldier*.

191. The second subdivision continues to march straight forward, the director paying attention to conducting it on, and toward the instructor, or camp-colour man; this subdivision shall wheel, on a moveable pivot, in its turn, at the same point, also from the same words of command, and by similar means, as the first, resuming, likewise, the direct march.

192. The changes of direction of a column having the left in front, are executed on the same principles, and by inverted means, or arrangement.

Remarks on the changes of direction of a column.

Observations relatives aux changemens de direction en colonne.

193. It is of the utmost importance, in order to maintain the distance and direction, that the * subdivisions should effect their change of direction, precisely, in the same place where the leading one did it; and it is for this reason, that the instructor ought, before hand a little, to station himself (or a camp-colour man) at the wheeling point; that the directors are ordered to march on the person so posted; and that the chiefs of subdivisions, ought not to commence the execution of the movement, till the director shall rase, or graze, the surface of the breast of the person planted at the wheeling point.

194. The chiefs of subdivisions ought to see that their subdivisions arrive forming a right angle with the directing line, on the ground where the change of direction is to take place; and, for this purpose, they ought to turn round to their subdivision, when that which precedes is beginning the operation of change of direction, in order

* “*Subdivision*” is the word in the text, and is translated such as the reasoning is general. It appears that a French section, or half-platoon, is adequate to an English subdivision; therefore, by parity of consideration, a French subdivision must be the synonymous term for an English section, which is a portion of a company not specified in the French service.

der to be convinced that their subdivision marches square to the line of direction, up to the wheeling point.

195. If, in the changes of direction on the flank opposite to that the director is on, the pivot of the wheeling subdivision, did not disengage, or clear the wheeling point, the following subdivision would be impeded, and the distance would be lost; for the director who guides the wheeling wing describing the larger portion of a concentric circle, having to go over about a half part more than the extent of the front of the subdivision, that which immediately follows would be arrived at the commencing point of wheeling, while the wheeling subdivision would have a space equal to half the extent of its front, still to go over; and, consequently, the second subdivision would, necessarily, mark time, till the first could finish the wheel; again, the first subdivision afterwards going over, as it advances, a half part more than the extent of its front, while the second is effecting its wheeling, it would result, if the pivot were a halted or fixed one, that there would be as many successive stops, less by one, as subdivisions in the column, and that the last subdivision would find itself, at the moment of finishing its wheeling, too far removed from the subdivision leading, by the half of the extent of the front which the column would occupy in line, less by, or, deducting the front of the first subdivision*. It is with a view to remedy these defects, that the pivot man is directed to take steps of six inches, in order that the succeeding subdivision may not be impeded; the chiefs of subdivisions shall, with the utmost care attend to the observation of this principle, or rule, turning to their men, and cautioning the pivot man to lengthen or shorten his step, as they may deem it necessary. From the nature of this movement, the centre of the subdivision ought to curve a little towards the rear.

196. The directing serjeants ought never to alter the cadence nor length of the step, whether the change of direction

* This judicious reasoning will be found to be extremely accurate and just, which the reader will readily perceive, by projecting a figure of a column marching, and by calculating, or marking by scale and compass, on the paper, the situations of the subdivisions, after the rear one has effected the wheel.

rection is made on the flank the director is on, or on the opposite flank.

197. The instructor situated at the wheeling point (or the camp-colour man whom he shall have stationed there) shall, always, keep his right side towards the column, if the right is in front, or his left side, if the left is in front; and shall place himself, in the line of direction passing along the flanks. The instructor will bestow the most unremitting attention in following all the prescribed principles, by seeing that each subdivision does not commence the wheel till the instant when the director raises the breast of the stationed person, and is ready to pass him; and that the wheeling wing, in the changes that take place on the flank opposite to that the director is on, does not describe too large a sweep of a circle, which would be apt to throw it out of the new direction.

Article Fourth.

To halt the Column.

Arrêter la colonne.

198. The column is halted by the instructor, as follows :

1. *Column.* (*Colonne.*)

2. *HALT.* (*Halte.*)

199. At the word, *halt*, quickly repeated by the chiefs of subdivisions, they shall halt all, at the same time; and the directors shall not stir, even though they should not have their distance, nor their direction, unless that the instructor, thinking it necessary to form the line, begins with rectifying the line of direction, which is to be effected as will be directed in the following article.

200. The chiefs of subdivisions shall not order their men to dress, the instructor alone being the person assigned for giving this order, should he deem it necessary to form the line, as directed in the following article.

Remarks on the directions given for halting the column.

Observations relatives à ce qui est prescrit pour arrêter la colonne.

201. If the word, *halt*, were not repeated with the greatest vivacity, and instantly complied with, the distances would be lost.

202. If

202. If one director having lost the distance, endeavoured to resume it after hearing the word *halt*, he would only by this procedure, communicate his own error to the director in his rear; who, if he has marched accurately, would then find that his distance was, thus, rendered inaccurate; and if he, in his turn, were desirous to resume his distance, the same movement would extend, successively, to the rear of the column.

203. When the instructor having halted the column, does not wish to form it in line, he might dispense with rectifying the line of the directing serjeants, it being sufficiently exact, as well as the distances, if the leading director, and the following ones, have observed the rules laid down under Nos. 169 and 170.

Article Fifth.

When a column of subdivisions wheels to the left, or, right into line.*

Etant en colonne par sections, se former à gauche, ou à droite, en bataille.

204. The instructor having halted the column with the right in front, in order to wheel it up into line, will immediately on that, proceed to the distance of one subdivision from the leading director whom he faces; and will, so placed on the line of the directing serjeants, rectify, if requisite, the position of the second director; giving, then, the command,

Left = DRESS. (*A gauche* = *alignement*.)

205. At this word, which shall not be repeated by the chiefs of subdivisions, each chief of subdivision, will, quickly, proceed to the distance of about two paces on the outside of his directing serjeant, and shall there direct the alignment of his subdivision to be made perpendicular to the direction of the column†.

(Plate VIII. Fig. 4.)

206. The chiefs of subdivisions having aligned their respective subdivisions, will order, (*eyes*) FRONT (*fixe*), and

* See Rules, Part II. Platoon, § 50.

† *Subdivision* and *section* are both used in the text of this paragraph, and both here mean the half of the platoon.

and shall, nimbly, place themselves before the centre of their subdivision.

This arrangement being made, the instructor is to command,

1. *To the left wheel into line.* (*A gauche en bataille.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

207. At the word, *march*, quickly repeated by the chiefs of subdivisions, the man in the front rank on the left of each subdivision, shall face to the left, and is to bear his breast, lightly, against the right arm of the director placed by his side, who shall not stir; the subdivisions shall wheel to the left on the principles of wheeling on a halted pivot, conforming to the directions laid down under No. 164 of the *discipline of the platoon*; and each chief of subdivision shall turn to his subdivision to conduct the wheel, giving the following words, when the right of his subdivision arrives within two paces of the line.

1. *Subdivision.* (*Section.*)

2. HALT. (*Halte.*)

208. The chief of the second subdivision, having halted his subdivision, shall retire to the supernumerary rank.

209. The chief of platoon having halted the first subdivision, shall place himself, nimbly, on the line, at the point where the right will rest when dressed forward; and commands, as soon as he plants himself,

Right = DRESS. (*A droite alignement.*)

210. At this word, the two subdivisions shall dress up to the alignment; the man of the first who is opposite will dress up, to the instructor placed on the directing line, and shall, lightly, with his breast, touch the instructor's left arm. The chief of platoon shall direct the alignment on the man on the left of the front rank of the platoon.

211. The platoon being aligned, the chief of platoon will command, (*Eyes*) = FRONT (*fixe.*)

212. The instructor seeing the platoon formed steady in line, shall command,

Directing serjeants to your = PLACES. (*Guides* = *à vos places.*)

213. At this word of command, the covering serjeant shall retire behind the chief of platoon, the director of the
second

second subdivision, retiring also to the supernumerary rank.

The instructor shall ascertain the accuracy of the alignment, and, if requiring it, shall order it to be rectified by the chief of platoon.

214. In order to wheel up into line, the column with the left in front, the wheel being to the right, the instructor shall place himself, facing the leading director, on the directing line, at the distance of a subdivision from him, rectifying, if necessary, the position of the second director; after effecting which, he shall command,

1. *To the right wheel into line.* (*A droite en bataille.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

215. At the word, *march*, the front rank man on the right of each subdivision, shall face to the right, and shall bear his breast, lightly, against the left arm of the director placed by his side, who shall not move; each subdivision shall wheel to the right, and will be halted by its chief of subdivision, when the wheeling wing is within two paces of the line; and, for this purpose, the chiefs of subdivisions will give the word of command,

1. *Subdivision.* (*Section.*)

2. HALT. (*Halte.*)

216. The chief of the second subdivision, having halted his subdivision, shall retire to the supernumerary rank.

217. The chief of platoon having halted the first subdivision, shall step, nimbly, to the left flank of the platoon, placing himself at the point where the left hand front rank man will rest, when the platoon is in line; and being there, he shall command,

Left = DRESS. (*A gauche alignement.*)

218. At this word of command, the two subdivisions shall dress up to the alignment, the man of the front rank on the left of the second subdivision, who dresses up to the point the instructor is at, shall, lightly, with his breast, touch the instructor's right arm; and the chief of platoon shall direct the alignment on the man on the right of the front rank of the platoon.

219. The platoon being aligned, the chief of platoon will command, (*eyes*) FRONT (*fixe.*)

220. The instructor shall, then, command,

Directing serjeants to your = PLACES. (*Guides* = à vos places.)

221. At this command, the chief of platoon will take his post on the right of the platoon; the covering serjeant shall take his place in the rear rank, covering the chief of platoon; and the directing serjeant of the second subdivision, will retire to the supernumerary rank.

Remarks on the movement of wheeling up into line to the left, or right, from open column.

Observations relatives au mouvement de se former à gauche, ou à droite, en bataille.

222. The instructor can dispense with giving the word, *right*, or, *left* = dress, previous to commanding, *to the left*, or, *right wheel into line*, unless it may have become necessary, by rectifying the position of the directors, that the subdivisions should incline, laterally, to the right or left.

223. The instructor, previous to commanding, *to the left* (or *right*) *wheel into line*, ought to see that the rear subdivision has its proper column distance. This attention is important, as it habituates the directors never to neglect so very essential a point.

LESSON VI.

Article First.

To break off files, and to move them up again to the front.*

Mettre des files en arrière, et les faire rentrer en ligne.

224. The platoon marching, and supposed to constitute a part of a column, with the right, or left, in front, and the instructor intending to break off files, shall give an order, to that effect, to the chief of platoon, who will, immediately, face his platoon, and command,

1. *Break off one file on the right, or, (on the left.)* (*Une file de droite (ou de gauche) en arrière.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

* See Rules, Part II. § 58.

(Plate XIII. Fig. 8.)

225. At the word of command, *march*, the first file on the right, or the first file on the left, will mark time, and the others will continue to march on; the man of the rear rank of that file shall move, as soon as the rear rank of the platoon shall have passed him, to the left, if it is a file of the right, to the right, if it is a file of the left, and shall place himself behind the third file from the flank then marching on; the man of the centre rank shall, likewise, move behind the second file, and the man of the front rank, likewise, behind the first file, at the instant when the rear of the platoon shall pass to his front; and each man of the file will move to his indicated situation, by bringing forward, a little, the outward shoulder, taking great care not to lose his distance, by falling too far behind.

226. The instructor seeing it necessary to break off another file, and having given an order, to that effect, to the chief of platoon, this last shall give the former orders for breaking off a file.

(Plate XIII. Fig. 9.)

227. At the word, *march*, by the chief of platoon, the file already broke off, and in the rear, advancing the exterior shoulder, a little, shall gain the space of one file to the right, if a file of the left; to the left, if a file of the right, by contracting the step, in order to make room for the new file in its front; and the new file will break off in the same manner as the first did.

228. The instructor shall, thus, be enabled to diminish, successively, the front of the platoon, by as many files as he may judge necessary, always breaking off new files from the same flank, till three files, only, remain forming the front.

229. The supernumerary rank shall arrange themselves behind the part of the platoon that has not diminished itself, by breaking off files.

230. When the instructor sees it necessary to direct some files in the rear, to form up, he will order the chief of platoon to effect this, by the following words of command:

1. *One file of the right (or left) to the front. (Une file de droite (ou de gauche) en ligne.)*

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

(Plate XIII. Fig. 10.)

231. On the word, *march*, the first file of those broke off and marching behind the flank, shall move up, quickly, to the front, and the files in the rear, shall, by bringing forward the right shoulder, incline the space, or breadth, of one file to the left, if it is behind the left flank that the files are ; or shall, by bringing forward the left shoulder, incline the space of one file to the right, if it is behind the right flank that the files broke off are placed.

232. The chief of platoon facing towards it, will see that the movement is executed according to the prescribed rules.

(Plate XIII. Fig. 11.)

233. The instructor having, thus, caused files to break off, and form up, successively, will order that two or three files shall break off together, or at the same time ; the number of named files will mark time, each rank, when the rear of the platoon has passed it, shall bring forward, a little, the exterior shoulder, shall oblique together, and shall place itself behind one of the three nearest files, as if the movement were executed by the number of files, file by file, observing not to lose the distance.

234. The instructor will, afterwards, order the chief of platoon to cause two or three files, at the same time, to the front ; and, for this purpose, the chief of platoon commands,

1. *Three first files to the front. (Trois premières files en ligne.)*

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

(Plate XIII. Fig. 12.)

235. The named files will move up, quickly, over the shortest lines leading to their places.

236. As often as files are broken off, the directing serjeant on the flank, shall close in to that flank, to the right, or left, in proportion as the front diminishes, so as to be always close to the flank of the platoon from which a file, or files, have been broke off ; and he will incline

off from the flank, in proportion as files are ordered to move up.

Remarks on the movement of breaking off files to diminish the front, and on ordering them again to the front.

Observations relatives au mouvement de faire mettre des files en arrière, et de les faire rentrer en ligne.

237. It is of the greatest importance with respect to the preservation of distances in a column of route composed of several battalions, to accustom the soldiers, in inculcating the minute details of discipline, to go through these movements with the utmost precision.

238. If, when new files are broke off, they do not step out well in obliquing; and if, when coming up again to the front, they do not move up, quickly, they would, in either case, stop the progress of the files already in the rear, which would occasion a loss of distance, and a lengthening out of the column.

239. The instructor is to place himself on the flank where the movement is executing, to ascertain the accuracy of the detail of the rules.

240. The instructor will observe, that by, successively, throwing files to the rear of the same flank, the front may be reduced to three files, behind which the broken off files march, *en potence* *.

241. But if, in lieu of breaking off files from only one flank, they were broke off from both flanks at once, which will, occasionally, be requisite, in that case the front could not be reduced under six files, as three files on either side of the centre are necessary to enable the files broke off from each flank to march behind them, *en potence*; if, in this state of things, a want of space rendered a farther diminution of front to five, or four files, necessary,

* This word is adopted in the British system of tactics. "*Potence de troupes rangées en bataille.* C'est la capacité d'une troupe qui ne peut se continuer en ligne droite, parce qu'on est forcé de la rompre, soit en dedans, soit en dehors, pour appuyer, par ce moyen, une ligne droite ou gauche à un village, à un bois, à un ravin, &c. qui se trouve en deçà, ou au delà du front de la ligne que la difficulté du terrain empêche de joindre. La *potence* est quelque-fois nécessaire pour ménager un terrain resserré."—Nouveau Dictionnaire Militaire.

cessary, a thing the instructor must sometimes suppose and practise, he would order all the files in the rear of the flank opposite to that the director is on, to move up, together, to the front, and break off, at the same time, from the flank the director is on, an equal number of new files, more by one or two, according as he may see it requisite to reduce the front to five or four, than the number of files ordered up into line on the other flank ; as, for example, in the case of a column with the right in front, (the platoon being supposed to be composed of twelve files, of whom three are broke off, being *en potence* behind each flank,) the want of room requiring a reduction of front to five files ; the instructor shall cause the three files behind the right flank to move up to the front, and, at the same time, four new files to break off, together, from the left flank, which reduces the front to five : to facilitate the execution of this movement, the two files which do not break off, and undergo no change, must oblique considerably to the left, in order that the three files behind the right flank who are supposed to have the edge of the defile close to their right, may have room made for them to move up to the front.

Article Second.

To march in column of route, and to execute the various file movements prescribed in the preceding article.

Marcher en colonne au pas de route, et executer, les divers mouvemens de file prescrits dans l'article précédent.

242. The platoon being halted, and supposed to form a part of a column, the instructor shall give the following words of command, to make the column march at ease.

1. *The column will advance. (Colonne en avant.)*
2. *Director on the left, (or on the right,) or march by the left (or right.) (Guide à gauche (ou à droite *.)*
3. *March at ease, (easy step, unconstrained step.) (Pas de route.)*

L 3

4. MARCH.

* This French military phrase, indicates the pivot flank, by which the column is to march, by keeping up the light touch of the elbow in that direction.

4. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

243. On the word, *march*, repeated by the chief of platoon, the three ranks step off together; the centre and rear ranks shall, marching, take open order, to about the distance of three feet from rank to rank, which being effected, the instructor shall command,

5. *Slope* = ARMS. (*L'arme = à volonté.*)

244. At this word, the soldiers shall slope arms, as has been prescribed under No. 120 of the discipline of the soldier, and will no longer be required to march with a cadenced step, nor to keep silence: the files march at ease; but the ranks must never intermix, and the men of the front rank must never be farther advanced to the front than the director who is on the pivot flank; and the centre and rear ranks must, respectively, keep at the distance of about three feet, from the rank immediately in front of them.

245. Were the column marching with the cadenced step, the route step of ease marching, would be assumed from the following words of command.

The column will march at ease. (Pas de route.)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

246. On the word, *march*, the front rank continues to march the step of two feet, and the centre and rear ranks shall take open order, on the march, to the distance of about three feet from rank to rank; and the instructor shall, then, order, *slope = arms*, which will be done as directed.

247. The soldiers marching at ease, the instructor shall cause the direction of the column to be changed on the pivot, or on the reverse flank, which is to be executed without a formal word of command, and simply on a caution given by the chief of platoon; the centre and rear ranks will, successively, when on the spot where the front rank effected the change, wheel on a moveable pivot, or turn to the right or left, conforming, though marching at ease, to the principles which have been detailed for changing the direction at close order, and marching with the cadenced step*.

248. The

* The quarto edition sent to me from Paris before this translation was sent to the press, directs in its page of errata, the following clause to be subjoined to number 247, "with this only difference, that

248. The instructor shall also direct the men to be exercised in the various file-movements detailed in the preceding article, strictly according to the rules mentioned therein; and he will, sometimes, close the ranks, by directing the chief of platoon to give the words.

Rear ranks take close order. (Serrez vos rangs.)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

249. At the word, *march*, the front rank shall resume the cadenced step; the centre and rear ranks, and also the files which may be behind the flanks broke off, shall, quickly, close up, taking up, afterwards, the cadenced step; and the three ranks will support arms.

250. When the platoon marching at ease, halts, the centre and rear ranks shall close up, at the word *halt*, and the men will support arms:—Were the platoon marching at closed ranks, if halted, arms would be carried. This rule is general, whatever may be the number of platoons.

251. The number of steps per minute, taken in a column of route, in the discipline of the platoon, shall be 76, in order to confirm the soldier, more and more, in stepping that number; but, in the discipline of the battalion, the number of steps to be taken in a minute, may amount to 85, or 90, which ought to be the habitual rate of march of a column of route, whenever the nature of the country and of the roads shall admit of it.

Article Third.

Diminishing and increasing the front of a column of companies, on the march.

Rompre et former le peloton.

Pl. IX. Fig. 1.

To form subdivisions. (Rompre le peloton.)

252. The platoon marching with the cadenced step, and being supposed to form a part of a column with the right in front, the instructor, in order to form subdivisions, will give the order for the purpose to the chief of platoon, who is to command,

1. *Form*

that in changes of direction on the reverse flank, the pivot-man takes steps of two feet, instead of six inches, in order to clear, or disengage, the wheeling point."

1. *Form subdivisions* *. (*Romppez le peloton.*)

The chief of platoon takes post before the centre of the first subdivision.

253. The chief of the second subdivision, placed in its rear, shall, on hearing the last word of command, post himself, also, before its centre, where, when arrived, he will command,

Mark time. (*Marquez le pas.*)

254. The chief of platoon will then command,

2. *MARCH.* (*Marche.*)

255. The first subdivision is to continue to march straight forward, and the covering serjeant shall place himself on its left flank; when that flank separates, or is clear of the right flank of the left subdivision marking time, the serjeant passing to his place along the front of the first subdivision.

256. On the word, *march*, given by the chief of platoon, the second subdivision is to mark time on a caution given by its chief, and shall, likewise, oblique to the right, as soon as the rear rank of the first subdivision shall have passed beyond its front.

257. The director on the left of the second subdivision having nearly arrived on the line of direction of the first, the chief of the second subdivision shall command, *forward*, and, *MARCH*, at the instant when the director of the subdivision covers the director of the first.

258. The formation of subdivisions, when the left is in front, is effected by inversion of means of procedure; that is, the first, or right subdivision, goes through the contrary movements prescribed, above, for the left subdivision, which, during the movement, marches steadily forward.

259. On the supposition of the left being in front, the director of the left of the platoon shall move to the right flank of the second subdivision, when clear of the left flank of the other subdivision; and the covering serjeant on the right flank of the first subdivision, remains there.

To form platoon †. (*Former le peloton.*)

260. The

* See Rules. Part II. Platoon, § 56, 57.

† See Saldern's Tactics, page 64; where sections, in various ways, are broke off, by obliquing behind a certain named section. The sections

260. The column marching in subdivisions, with the right in front, the instructor, intending to form platoon, will order the chief of platoon to effect this by these words of command,

1. *Form platoon.* (*Formez le peloton.*)

Pl. IX. Fig. 2.

261. The chief of platoon having given this word, is to caution the first subdivision to prepare to oblique to the right.

262. The chief of the second subdivision shall warn the subdivision to continue to march, steadily, straight forward.

263. The chief of platoon will, then, command,

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

264. On this word, repeated by the chief of the second subdivision, the first shall oblique to the right to uncover the second, and the covering serjeant, placed on the left flank of the first subdivision, will move to its right, passing, for this purpose, along its front.

265. When the first subdivision shall have, nearly uncovered, or cleared the front of the second, the chief of platoon is to give the word, *forward*, and that of, MARCH, at the instant when his subdivision has completely uncovered the second that is marching steadily on.

266. During this operation, the second subdivision is to continue to march straight forward, in ordinary time, or at the original rate of march, and the first, after uncovering the second subdivision, shall mark time, waiting for the second, to which it shall unite, when up to it.

267. The platoon is formed, when the left is in front, by reversing this procedure; that is, the second, or left subdivision, goes through the opposite movements just prescribed for the right subdivision, which, during the movement, would continue to march, steadily, on.

268. In this case of the left in front, the director of the

sections form up again by obliquing. A very useful remark is made there as follows. "There is one single case only that can take place where a division is not to keep the step; that is, when passing over light bridges, and particularly when marching over bridges made with boats, where the keeping of the step would produce such a motion as might be hurtful to the bridges."—See Saldern's *Tactics*, page 68.

the second subdivision, placed on the right flank of it, shall move to the left flank, when the obliquing commences; and the director of the first subdivision, placed on its right flank, shall remain there.

269. The instructor will, afterwards, exercise the platoon in increasing and diminishing its front, when marching at ease, in column of route; which shall be effected by the same words of command, and by similar means of execution, as when marching with the cadenced step, with this only difference, that in the subdivision which obliques, each man will *half face to the right*, or, half face to the left, instead of maintaining the squareness of the shoulders to the front, as is required in obliquing, when marching regularly, with a cadenced step.

270. The instructor shall, sometimes, also, cause the platoon to diminish and increase its front, by the prescribed words of command, which he himself shall give, in lieu of the chief of platoon.

Remarks on the movement of increasing and diminishing the front of a platoon.

Observations relatives au mouvement de rompre et former le peloton.

271. In both operations, it is necessary that the subdivisions should step out well in obliquing, to avoid losing ground, and in order not to impede the march of the subdivision which is following.

272. If, in diminishing the front of the platoon, the subdivision that is to break off by obliquing, marked time too long, it might impede the following platoon in its march, which would produce a lengthening out of the column.

273. If, in diminishing or increasing the front of the platoon, the subdivisions obliques too long a time, they would be under a necessity, afterwards, in order to rectify this error, of obliquing in a contrary direction, and by that means, the succeeding platoon might be interrupted in its march.

274. When in a column of several platoons, the diminution of the front takes place, successively, it is of the last importance that each platoon should continue to march at the same rate, without stepping short, or altering the
time,

time, while the preceding platoon is going through the movement of diminution, though even the succeeding platoon should be obliged to close up, entirely, to the platoon diminishing : and this attention is indispensable to prevent a lengthening out of the column.

275. Errors of small magnitude in a column consisting of few platoons, would be attended with serious inconveniences in a column of several platoons : so that the instructor ought to be extremely vigilant in observing that all the prescribed rules and principles are strictly adhered to ; and for this purpose, he must place himself on the pivot flank of the column, in order the better to observe all the movements.

Article Fourth.

Countermarch. (*Contre-marche* *.)

276. The platoon being halted, and supposed to constitute part of a column with the right in front, the instructor, in order to make it countermarch, will command,

Pl. IX. Fig. 3.

1. *Countermarch.* (*Contre-marche*.)
2. *The platoon will face to the right.* (*Peloton par le flanc droite.*)
3. *To the right* = FACE. (*à droite.*)
4. *To the left countermarch.* (*Par file à gauche.*)
5. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

277. At the third command, the platoon is to face to the right ; the chief of platoon shall move to the side of the director of the right ; and the director of the left, shall face to the right about.

278. On the word, *march*, the director of the left is not to move ; the platoon will step off smartly ; the leading file conducted by the chief of platoon, must wheel to the left about, moving along the front rank now marching in file, so as to arrive at the distance of two paces in rear of the director of the left, who has not moved, nor followed the platoon ; each file shall wheel, successively, on the same ground as the leading file wheeled on, and in the same manner ; and when the leading file has arrived as far
as

* See Rules, Part II. Platoon, § 53.

as the director of the left, the chief of platoon must command,

1. Platoon. (*Peloton.*)
2. Halt. (*Halte.*)
3. FRONT. (*Front.*)
4. Right = DRESS. (*à droite alignement.*)

279. The first word of command is to be given, when the leading file is within two paces of the point where the platoon ought to halt.

280. On the second word, the platoon is to halt.

281. On the third word, the platoon shall face to the side the front rank is on.

282. At the fourth word, the platoon shall move up to the alignment marked by the position of the director of the left; the man on the right of the front rank shall place himself to the left, and by the side of the director; the chief of platoon will place himself at the distance of two paces on the outside, or to the right, of the director, in order to direct the alignment; when effected, he must command (*eyes*) FRONT, (*fixe,*) placing himself before the centre of the platoon: the covering serjeant shall, then, place himself on the right of the front rank; and the director of the left, who was there, shall move to his place, to the left of the front rank.

283. In a column with the left in front, the countermarch would be executed on the same principles, but by the contrary words of command, and modes of procedure; and, accordingly, the facing is to the right, and the countermarch to the left about, if the right is in front, and the facing is to the left, and the countermarch to the right about, if the left is in front, always countermarching before the front.

284. Finally, if it was a column of subdivisions, the countermarch would be executed by the same words of command, and in the same manner, as in a column of platoons.

Article Fifth.

To form to either flank, from open column of subdivisions.*

Etant

* See Rules, Part II, Platoon, § 62.

Etant en colonne par section, se former sur la droite, ou sur la gauche en bataille.

285. To form the column of subdivisions, marching with the right in front, to the right flank, the instructor must command,

1. *Right form platoon. (Sur la droite en bataille.)*
2. *Director to the right*.* (*Guide à droite.*)

286. At the second word of command, the director of each subdivision shall move, nimbly, to the right flank of his subdivision, and the soldiers shall take the light touch of the elbow from the right; and the column will continue to march straight forward.

287. The instructor having given the second word of command, shall move, actively, to the point where the right of the platoon is to rest in line; and shall place himself there, facing to the left of the new line he has chosen.

288. The line fixed on, ought to be so situated, that each subdivision, after having *turned to the right*, with the left shoulders forward, may have, after so wheeling, at least, four paces, or steps, to march up to the line.

289. The head of the column having arrived, nearly, as far as the instructor; placed at the point of *appui*, the chief of the first subdivision will command,

Turn to the right. (Left shoulders forward.) Tournez à droite.)

290. And when it shall be opposite to the instructor, the chief of subdivision shall command,

MARCH. (*Marche.*)

291. On the word, *march*, the first subdivision shall turn to the right into this species of wheel, conforming to the directions given in the discipline of the soldier, under No. 270; it shall then move to its front; the director shall conduct himself in such a manner, that the man of the front rank next to him, and by his side, arrives opposite

* "*Guide à gauche*," or "*guide à droite*," in the French system of Tactics, are expressions which mean that the directing serjeant, if not there, is to place himself on the indicated flank of a company, or subdivision. If, again, the director is, already, on the flank, the expression means, that the column is to march by that flank, as the pivot flank, from which the light touch of the elbow is to be taken, in marching.

to the instructor ; the chief of the platoon is to march two paces in front of the centre of the first subdivision ; and when it arrives at the situation of the instructor, he (the chief of platoon) shall command,

1. *Subdivision.* (*Section.*)

2. HALT. (*Halte.*)

292. At the word, *halt*, the subdivision is to halt ; the director shall, immediately on that, move along the new line till opposite to one of the three files on the left of his subdivision ; he shall face towards the instructor, who shall align him on the point of formation to the left : and the chief of platoon is to move, at the same time, to the point where the right will rest when dressed up, commanding, when there,

Right = DRESS. (*A droite* = *alignement.*)

293. At this word, the first subdivision is to dress forward.

294. The second subdivision shall continue to march straight on until it arrives opposite to the left flank of the first, when, by a command from its chief, it will turn, or wheel to the right, and move up, then, towards the line, the director conducting his march on the left file of the first subdivision.

295. The second subdivision being arrived within two paces of the line, shall be halted by its chief, by the same commands prescribed for the first ; at the instant of halting, the director is to spring forward, nimbly, placing himself on the line of formation, facing the director of the first subdivision ; the instructor shall direct him to move to the right, or left, till he is on the line ; and the director must take care to be opposite to one of the three files on the left of his subdivision.

296. The chief of the second subdivision, seeing his director established on the line, shall command,

Right forward = DRESS. (*A droite* = *alignement.*)

297. The chief of the second subdivision, after giving this order, shall retire to the supernumerary rank ; and the second subdivision is to dress up to the first.

298. The man of each subdivision who is opposite to the director placed before him, shall, in dressing, gently lean his breast against the arm of the director, at the moment of coming up to the line.

299. The

299. The instructor, on seeing the platoon in line, is to give the word of command,

Directors to your — PLACES. (*Guides* — à vos places.)

300. At this word of command, the covering serjeant shall go to his situation, covering the chief of platoon; and the director of the second subdivision will retire to the supernumerary rank.

301. A column of subdivisions, with the left in front, will *form to the left flank*, on the same principles; and the instructor shall command,

1. *Left form platoon.* (*Sur la gauche en bataille.*)

2. *Director to the left.* (*Guide à gauche.*)

302. On the second word of command, the director of each subdivision, shall step, nimbly, to the left of it; the soldiers shall keep up, and take the touch of the elbow from the left, and the column is to continue to march straight forward.

303. The instructor having given the second word of command, shall proceed, quickly, to the point where the left of the line is to rest, placing himself facing the point of formation he has fixed on, to the right.

304. The instructor shall choose the new line in such a manner, that each subdivision, after having turned to the left, (*into the wheel on this principle,*) shall have, at least, four steps to take to the front, to bring it up to the line.

305. The head of the column having nearly arrived opposite to the instructor placed at the front of *appui*, the chief of the second (*the leading*) subdivision, must command,

Turn to the left, (*Right shoulders forward.*) *Tournez à gauche.*)

And when the subdivision shall have arrived, exactly opposite to the instructor, the chief of the platoon is to command,

MARCH. (*Marche.*)

306. At the word, *march*, the second, or leading subdivision shall turn to the left, right shouldering forward, and conforming to the directions given in the *discipline of the soldier*, No. 270, moving, after wheeling, direct to the front; the director shall conduct the march so that the man of the front rank next to him, arrives opposite to the instructor; the chief of the subdivision is to march in front

of the centre of it ; and when the second, or leading subdivision, shall have marched, nearly, up to the instructor, its chief shall command,

Subdivision. (Section.)

HALT. (*Halte.*)

307. At the word, *halt*, the second, or leading subdivision, shall halt ; the director shall, immediately, move up to, and on the line opposite to one of the three files on the right of his subdivision ; there he shall face the instructor, who will align him on the distant point of formation to the right ; and the chief of the second subdivision shall, at the same time, move to the point where the left of the platoon shall rest, when dressed forward, commanding, when so situated,

Left forward = DRESS. (*A gauche* = *alignement.*)

308. At this command, the second, or leading subdivision, shall align ; the man of the front rank who is opposite to the director, shall, gently, bear his breast against the left arm of the director ; and the chief of the second subdivision, shall direct the dressing on this man.

309. The first subdivision shall continue to march straight forward, until arrived opposite to the right flank of the second, now in line ; it shall, then, turn to the left into a wheel, on receiving a command from its chief, marching, after wheeling, to its front : and the director shall march on the right file of the second subdivision.

310. The first subdivision being arrived within two paces of the line, must be halted by its chief, by the same words of command used in halting the second ; at the instant of halting, the director of it shall spring forward on the line of formation, facing the director of the second subdivision in line : the instructor shall, by signal, or otherwise, place him, accurately, on the line ; the director must observe that he is to place himself opposite to one of the three files on the right of his subdivision. The chief of platoon shall proceed, at the same time, to the left of the platoon, to the place where the chief of the second subdivision is, on which the latter shall retire to the supernumerary rank.

311. The chief of platoon having placed himself on the left of his platoon, will immediately command,

Left forward = DRESS. (*A gauche* = *alignement.*)

312. At

312. At this command, the first subdivision shall dress up to the line; and the chief of platoon shall direct the alignment on the man on the right who bears his breast, lightly, against the left arm of the director of the subdivision.

313. The platoon being in line, the instructor shall command,

Directors to your = PLACES. (*Guides* = à vos places.)

314. At this word of command, the chief of platoon shall proceed to his post, on the right of the platoon; the covering serjeant shall move, and cover him in the rear rank; and the director of the second subdivision is to retire to the supernumerary rank.

General Observations on the Discipline of the Platoon.

Observations générales relatives à l'école du Peloton.

315. In going through the four last lessons, the instructor shall often order the platoon to support arms, and will accustom the men to march, thus, with the same regularity and precision as if arms were shouldered, which will, at once, prevent fatigue, and a negligence in the position of shouldered arms, that, always, ought to be accurate and regular. When the men support arms marching, they may be permitted either to let the right hand remain at the small stock of the firelock, or to let it fall to the side, according as they may find either position most convenient.

316. The soldiers may also, when marching at ease, carry their arms in the manner they shall find most convenient, taking care only, that the muzzle is sufficiently elevated to prevent accidents.

317. When the companies are to be exercised separately, but at the same time, according to the detail of the *discipline of the platoon*, the commandant of the regiment, or of the battalion, if it is a single battalion, shall point out the lesson, or lessons, which are to be gone through, and he shall, by a roll of the drum, give the signal for the whole to commence together. When the companies shall have finished each lesson, they are to order arms; and when the commandant of the regiment, or battalion, may wish them to recommence, he shall order another ruffle.

*Instructions for firing at a Target.**Instruction pour tirer à la cible.*

The importance of aiming well, and firing accurately, is generally acknowledged.

To accomplish this eligible object, the instructor will use the following means.

Several targets must be provided for each battalion, five feet and a half high, by twenty-one inches in breadth. The middle must be marked by a stripe three inches broad, drawn horizontally across, and of a striking colour. The upper end is marked in the same manner.

The soldiers must be practised in firing at this object, at first, at the distance of 100 yards, afterwards at 200, and finally, at the distance of 300 yards.

At the distances of * 100 and 200 yards, aim must be taken at the lower mark, and at 300 yards, at the upper mark; the men must fire, one by one, at first without, and afterwards, by word of command, when they may have acquired the method of aiming accurately.

They must be directed, in presenting, to hold the butt firm against the right shoulder, to support the firelock steadily with the left hand, and to bring the breech, the sight, and object, to coincide with the visual ray: and to give them a facility of presenting in the requisite direction, and of aiming accurately, after coming down quickly to a present, they shall receive the word, *Recover* = ARMS. (*Redressez* = *vos armes.*)

The men must be told, at the word, *fire*, to pull the trigger, forcibly, with the fore finger, without stirring the head or altering the direction of the firelock; and to establish the observation of these rules, essentially necessary, after firing, the presenting position must be dwelt on, till the word, *load*, is given.

All the corporals, grenadiers, and battalion men must be practised, every year, in this species of discipline; and the greater part of the ammunition assigned for practice, shall

* "A 50 toises," see note, page 2. If a French toise is very nearly 76 inches and seven-tenths, fifty toises will be 106 yards, one foot, and seven inches. In the translation the toises are reckoned as they generally are, at double their number of yards.

shall be used for this purpose. The best marksmen in each company, shall have their names taken down.

The recruits of each year, must be trained with the utmost care, in firing at the target, after being practised in firing with, and without, blank cartridges.

The balls fired off, must be carefully gathered, in order to be cast over again.

Manual Exercise of the Non-commissioned Officers.

Maniement de l'arme des sous-officiers.

The non-commissioned officers of the grenadiers, and of the battalion companies, as also all the men of the battalion, shall always, when under arms, have their bayonets fixed.

The covering serjeants, and the non-commissioned officers in the supernumerary rank, as well as those attached to the guard of the colours, shall have their firelocks in the position about to be described.

Advanced arms. (Port de l'arme.)

The firelock in the right hand against the point nearly of the shoulder, the barrel perpendicular, and to the rear, the ramrod outwards, the right arm almost at its full extent, the right hand embracing the cock and guard, the butt flat along the right thigh, and the left hand hanging by the side behind the sabre*.

Present = ARMS. (*Présentez* = *was armes.*)

One time, or word, and two motions. (Un temps et deux mouvemens.)

First motion.

Carry the firelock with the right hand, perpendicularly, opposite to the left eye, the ramrod to the front, the cock as high as the lowest waistcoat button; grasp, at the same time, the firelock with the left hand, the little finger of that hand against the feather-spring of the pan steel, the thumb stretched upwards along the barrel and stock, the fore part of the left arm held close to the body, without constraint; and remain facing steady to the front, without stirring the feet.

Second

* This position corresponds with that of *advanced arms* in the British service.

Second motion.

Grasp the firelock with the right hand under, and at the guard, as the battalion men do.

Advance = ARMS. (*Portez* = *vos armes.*)

One word and two motions.

First motion.

Slip the left hand as high as the shoulder, and carry with this hand, the firelock perpendicularly, to and against the right shoulder; grasp with the right hand, the cock and guard, extending the right arm, almost fully, downwards.

Sccond motion.

Let the left hand fall, pendant, behind the sabre.

Order = ARMS. (*Reposez vous* = *sur vos armes.*)

One word, and two motions.

First motion.

Carry, smartly, the left hand to the centre pipe, detach, a little, with the right hand, the firelock from the right shoulder; quit hold, at the same time, with the right hand; sink down the firelock with the left hand; seize it again with the right hand above the tail pipe, the right thumb on the barrel in order to grasp it, the four fingers extended on the stock, the firelock perpendicular, the butt at three inches from the ground, the heel of the butt hanging over the spot on the side of the point of the right foot; and let the left hand fall behind the sabre.

Second motion.

By opening, a little, the fingers of the right hand, let the firelock slip through them, and fall to the ground, in such a manner, that the heel of the butt may rest at the side of, and close to the point of the right foot.

Ground = ARMS. (*Vos armes* = *à terre.*)

As executed by the men of the platoon.

Take up = ARMS. (*Relevez* = *vos armes.*)

As effected by the soldiers of the platoon.

Advance = ARMS. (*Portez* = *vos armes.*)

One word, and two motions.

First motion.

Raise up the firelock, perpendicularly, with the right hand,

hand, as high as the right breast, opposite to the shoulder, at the distance of two inches from the body, the right elbow being held close to it; seize the firelock with the left hand under the place of the right, or nearly at the tail pipe, and, immediately, let fall the right hand to grasp the cock and guard, leaning the firelock against the shoulder.

Second motion.

Let fall the left arm, pendant, behind the sabre, the right arm being nearly fully extended.

Support = ARMS. (*L'arme* = *au bras.*)

One time, or word, and three motions.

First motion.

Carry the firelock to the front of the body, perpendicularly opposite to between the two eyes, with the right hand, the ramrod outwards; seize the firelock with the left hand, at the tail pipe; raise it as high as the chin; and, at the same time, grasp the firelock with the right hand, four inches under the lock.

Second motion.

Turn round the firelock with the right hand so as to bring the barrel to the front, conducting it, at the same time, to the left shoulder; and pass the left fore arm, horizontally, on, or across the breast, between the right hand and the cock supported on the fore left arm, the left hand resting on the right breast.

Third motion.

Let the right hand fall, pendant, from the right side.

Advance = ARMS. (*Portez* = *vos armes.*)

One word, and three motions.

First motion.

Grasp the firelock with the right hand under, and close to the left fore arm.

Second motion.

Carry the firelock, perpendicularly, with the right hand to, and against the right shoulder, the ramrod to the front; seize it with the left hand as high as the right shoulder; and turn the right hand, at the same time, in order to grasp the cock and guard, the right arm extending, downwards, nearly to its full length.

Third

Third motion.

Let fall the left arm, pendant, behind the sabre.

*Firelock-manual of the Corporals.**Maniement du fusil des caporaux.*

When corporals are in the ranks, they use their arms in the same manner as the soldiers theirs; but should they be in the supernumerary rank, or conduct the head of a body of men, or have charge of a relief of sentinels, they shall carry the fusée in the right hand, like the serjeants, which is effected as follows.

Advance = ARMS. (*Portez l'arme = comme sergent.*)

One word, or time, and three motions.

First motion.

Grasp the firelock with the right hand, turning the lock out, as in the first motion of *presenting arms*.

Second motion.

Carry the firelock, perpendicularly, with the right hand to, and against the right shoulder, the ramrod outwards, the right arm almost at the full extent, the right hand grasping the cock and guard; and seize the firelock with the left hand as high as the shoulder.

Third motion.

Let the left hand fall, pendant, behind the sabre.

Shoulder = ARMS. (*Portez l'arme = comme soldat.*)

One word, and three motions.

First motion.

Detach the firelock from the right shoulder, carrying it, perpendicularly, opposite to between the two eyes; seize it with the left hand at the height of the cravat; lay hold of it with the right hand at the small stock, steadying it at the height of the lowest button of the waistcoat, with the ramrod to the front.

Second motion.

Raise up the firelock with the right hand, the thumb extending on the brass S opposite to the lock, turning the barrel outwards; and place the firelock at the left shoulder, letting fall, at the same time, the left hand under the butt.

Third motion.

Let the right hand fall to the right side.

Sword

Sword Manual of the Officers.

Maniement de l'épée des Officiers.

Mode of carrying the sword when in the ranks.

Port de l'épée dans le rang.

The sword handle in the right hand, which shall be placed, as high as, and against the right haunch, the blade being supported, or leaning against, the shoulder.

Mode of carrying the sword when out of the ranks.

Port de l'épée hors du rang.

The handle in the right hand, which must be placed in front of the right haunch, the blade in the left hand, the point about four fingers' breadth, or inches, beyond the thumb of the left hand, which must embrace the blade, the left elbow bent, the left fore-arm a little advanced; and the left hand must be opposite to, and four inches lower than the left shoulder.

Order = SWORDS. (Reposez vous = sur vos armes.)

Turn upwards the hand and sword handle, the nails uppermost, the right arm extended, the point of the blade a little to the front, or advanced, and two inches from the ground.

Sword Salute, whether in the ranks, or marching.

Salut de l'épée, soit dans le rang, soit en marchant.

Four Divisions, or, Times. (Quatre temps.)

One. Raise the sword, perpendicularly, with the point uppermost, the flat of the blade opposite to the right eye, the guard as high as the right breast, and the elbow supported against, and close to the body.

Two. Bring down the blade, smartly, through a sweep of a vertical circle, by extending the arm, in such a manner that the right hand may be placed at the side of the right thigh, and rest in that position, until the person saluted shall have been passed by two paces.

Three.

Three. Raise up the sword again, smartly, holding it as described above, opposite to *one*.

Four. Carry the sword to the right shoulder, or, sink the blade into the left hand, according to circumstances.

Salute by the Colours.

Salut du Drapeau.

In the ranks, whether halting, or marching, the bearer of the colours shall always bear the bottom of the staff against the right haunch, and the salute is executed as follows.

When within six paces of the person to be saluted, sink down, gently, through an arc of a vertical circle, the staff, within six inches of the ground, without moving the bottom of the staff from the haunch, and facing steadily in the same direction as before saluting; and raise up again, gently, and slowly, the staff, when the person saluted shall have been passed, or, shall have passed, by two paces.

Instructions for the Drum-Major.

Instructions pour le Tambour-Major.

The situation of the drummers in line, has been ascertained in the first section.

In column of manœuvre, the drums shall march on the reverse flank, dressing with the front of the fifth battalion company.

In column of route, as also in passing defiles to the front, or rear in retreating, they must march at the head of their respective battalions, in the intervals between the battalions.

Signals made by the Drum-Major with his staff, corresponding to various beats of the drum.

Signaux du Tambour-Major pour les différentes batteries.

1. The general.
(*La générale.*)

Stretch out the right arm, seize the staff by the middle, and raise the pommel as high as the stock, or cravat.

2. The

2. The assembly.
(*L'assemblée.*) Extend the arm, raise the staff, nearly, a foot from the ground, placing the thumb on the pommel.
3. The call, or long roll.
(*Le rappel.*) Put the staff, or cane, on the right shoulder, with the ferril to the rear.
4. The troop.
(*Aux drapeaux.*) Raise the arm, and turn the wrist inwards, so that the staff may be horizontally across the body as high as the stock, or cravat.
5. To the field.
(*Aux champs.*) Raise the staff or cane, perpendicularly, the ferril upwards, the arm being extended as high as the right shoulder.
6. Quick time.
(*Le pas accéléré.*) Project the ferril of the staff direct, and horizontally to the front, with the arm stretched out.
7. The retreat.
(*La retraite.*) Carry the staff round, so as to slant across the body in the rear, or behind.
8. Church, or, the mass.
(*La messe.*) Carry the pommel of the staff, or cane, to the right shoulder, placing it on the shoulder.
9. Working parties.
(*La berloque.*) Take the staff by, and at the place of the tassel, and extend the arm as high as the shoulder.
10. To arms.
(*Aux armes.*) Carry the staff on the left shoulder, with the ferril pointing to the rear *.

Signals for the evolutions, or movements of the Drums.

1st, In order to march to the right flank, take the cane by the middle, and extend the arm to the right.

VOL. I.

N

2d, In

* The Prussian troops never on service march to the sound of music. They acquire the most perfect cadence of step by dint of practice. Marechal de Saxe adopted martial music to regulate the marching of the French army. The usage is wearing out.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, page 131.

2d, In order to march to the left flank, make the same signal, extending the arm to the left.

3d, In order to diminish the front, or form subdivision, let the lower extremity of the staff fall into the left hand, held as high as the eyes.

4th, To increase the front, or form up, let the pommel of the staff fall into the left hand held as high as the eyes.

5th, In order to change direction, turn half round to the drummers, and indicate to them, by a movement of the staff, to which side they are to incline and shoulder forward.

6th, In order to make them oblique to the right, extend the right arm straight forward, as high as the shoulder, holding the staff flanting, and grasping the ferril, or lower end, with the left hand as high as the haunch.

7th, In order to oblique to the left, make the contrary signal, the pommel of the staff, or cane, always indicating to which side the obliquing is to take place.

To ground Drums. (Poser la caisse à terre.)

Three motions.

1. To put up drumsticks. *(Remettre les baguettes.)* Grasp the staff under the pommel, and raise it as high as the eyes, extending the arm to the front.

2. To detach the drum. *(Défaire la caisse.)* Draw in the pommel towards the breast, and close to it.

3. Ground drums. *(Poser la caisse à terre.)* The same signal as is given for putting up the drumsticks.

1. Take up drum. <i>(Relever la caisse.)</i>	} Make the same signals with the staff as for putting up drumsticks; for detaching drums (or untying them); and for grounding drums.
2. Suspend drum. <i>(Rattacher la caisse.)</i>	
3. Draw out drumsticks. <i>(Tirer les baguettes.)</i>	

SECTION IV.

*Discipline of the Battalion.**Ecole de Bataillon.*

THE Discipline of the Battalion shall be divided into five parts.

The first will include the manner of opening ranks, and executing the different firings, when halted.

The second, the different modes of passing from line into column.

The third part will include the march in column, and various other movements relating to the column.

The fourth, the different manners of passing from column into line.

The fifth part shall comprehend the march in line, to the front and rear; the march to a flank; forming by file, into line; the passing of defiles in retreating; the passage of lines; the changes of front; the column of attack and rallying.

This species of discipline having for its object the instruction of battalions, separately, and, thus, to prepare them for executing all that can be required in line; and the harmony of combined movements depending necessarily on the individual instruction of battalions, on the uniformity of words of command, and on the principles and modes of execution, the officers commanding battalions shall, literally, conform to all that shall be hereafter laid down, without adding to it, or taking from it; and they shall studiously endeavour to cause all the movements to be executed with the utmost steadiness, coolness, and regularity.

PART I.

*Article First.**To open Ranks.**Ouvrir les rangs.*

1. To effect this the lieutenant colonel shall command *,
 1. *Rear ranks, take open order. (En arrière ouvrez vos rangs.)*

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

2. On hearing the first word of command, all the † captains of companies and the covering serjeants, as also the two non-commissioned officers in the front and rear rank, on the left of the battalion, shall step, nimbly, to the rear, in order to mark off the alignments to which the centre and rear ranks are about to step back, and dress on.

3. The captains of companies, and the non-commissioned officer placed on the left of the front rank of the battalion, shall enter into the supernumerary rank opposite to their respective intervals, dressing, accurately, on, and in that rank, which must not, as yet, stir; and the covering serjeants and corporal placed on the left of the rear rank of the battalion, shall, opposite to their intervals, at the distance of four paces, or eight feet in the rear of the supernumerary rank, mark off their places, judging of their distance by the eye, and dressing by the right.

4. The lieutenant colonel, from the right of the supernumerary rank, which he must see well aligned previous to giving the first word of command, will observe whether or not the captains are, accurately, dressed on, and in that rank.

5. The adjutant shall move to the right of the rank of covering serjeants, and shall direct their alignment on the non-commissioned officer who was placed on the left of the rear rank of the battalion, who must take care to place

* "*Chef de bataillon*" is translated *lieutenant colonel*, being the rank in our service that corresponds to the term.

† "*Chef de peloton*" is rendered *captain of a company*, because *peloton* and *compagnie* in the French service, imply the same thing.—
 Vide page 3.

place himself, exactly, four paces in the rear of the supernumerary rank, and to raise his arm, perpendicularly, between his eyes, in order to indicate to the adjutant the direction he is to give to the rank of covering serjeants.

6. At the word, *march*, the centre and rear ranks, as also the supernumerary rank, shall step back, in ordinary time, without reckoning the number of steps; and the soldiers shall pass, a little, beyond their respective ranks, shall halt themselves, dressing up, accurately, on the respective alignments of the captains and covering serjeants, who shall take care to dress, and square them to the front, in their intervals, or proper positions.

7. The supernumerary rank shall, at the same time, step back two paces in the rear of the rear rank of the battalion, dressing by their right. The adjutant-major, placed on the right of this rank, will align it on the non-commissioned officer on the left, who shall take care to place himself, exactly, two paces in the rear of the third rank of the battalion, and to raise his arm, perpendicularly between his eyes, as a point of formation*.

8. The lieutenant colonel seeing the ranks aligned shall give the word of command,

3. (*Eyes*) FRONT. (*Fixe.*)

9. At this word, the captains commanding companies, and the non-commissioned officer who was originally placed on the left of the front rank of the battalion, are to resume their places in the front rank.

N 3

Article

* See Rules, Part III. Battalion, § 72.

A Prussian battalion consists, in general, of 200 files. If of less strength, the effect of its action would not be sufficiently weighty and powerful. Were it more numerous, it would not be sufficiently manageable. The companies would be too strong to be effectually commanded by the officers. Strong battalions are divided into ten companies. The ranks are two paces from each other at open order. The officers and colours are advanced eight paces in front. The commanding officer is two or three paces in front of the colours. In close order, the captains are on the right of companies with a covering serjeant in the rear rank. The other officers, and non-commissioned officers, are in a supernumerary rank, three or four paces in the rear of the battalion. The companies are numbered from right to left, and divided, according to their strength, into sections of five or six files.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, pages 266, 267, 268.

*Article Second.**Manual Exercise.**Maniement des armes.*

10. Before the ranks are closed, the lieutenant colonel shall direct the following exercise of arms to be gone through.

To present arms. (Presenter les armes.)

To shoulder arms. (Porter les armes.)

To order arms. (Reposer sur les armes.)

To shoulder arms. (Porter les armes.)

To support arms. (L'arme au bras.)

To carry arms. (Porter les armes.)

To prime and load in quick time. (La charge précipitée.)

11. The lieutenant colonel is to superintend the execution of this exercise by the front rank, the adjutant-major that of the centre rank, and the adjutant that of the rear rank. The officers and covering serjeants placed in their respective ranks, shall, always, half face to the right with the soldiers, in the first compound motion of loading, and are to front when the man next to them, respectively, in their own platoon casts round.

Article Third.

Loading in quickest time (or, without four pauses) and the firings.

La charge à volonté, et les feux.

12. The lieutenant colonel shall cause the ranks to be closed by the words of command directed to be given by the instructor in the *discipline of the platoon*, under No. 26; and will, afterwards, order the battalion to prime and load, without cartridge, in quickest time.

13. The lieutenant colonel must put the battalion through the platoon firings, the firings by wings, by battalion, and by independent files, by the words of command which shall be directed hereafter.

14. The firing by platoons, and by files independent, shall be, always, direct to the front; and the firings by wings, and by battalion, shall be direct, or oblique.

15. When

15. When the fire is to be oblique, the lieutenant colonel must, each time, give the caution of *oblique to the right*, (or, *oblique to the left*,) after the word, *ready*, and previous to the word, *present*.

16. Platoon-firing shall be executed by the first and second companies of each * grand division, alternately, as if each grand division were insulated, or alone; the first company shall fire first; the captain of the second, shall not give the first word of command, until he sees one or two firelocks shouldered in the first, after loading; and the captain of the first company, in his turn, will observe the same rule in regard to the second, the firing continuing thus, alternately.

17. The lieutenant colonel must regulate the firing by wings, in the same manner; it must also be the rule as to time, in firing by odd and even,—right and left,—or first and second battalions, when there are many battalions in line.

18. Independent file firing shall commence in all the companies, at the same time, and conformable to the mode laid down, in the *discipline of the platoon*, No. 53.

19. The guard of the colours does not fire, but remains shouldered during the firings †.

20. The lieutenant colonel must order the firing to cease by a roll of the drum, followed by a tap of the drumstick; and on the signal of the tap, the captains of companies, the covering serjeants, and the guard of the colours shall, quickly, resume their places in line.

21. At

* An English *grand division* is termed in the French service "*division*."—Vide page 3.

† The same rule is observed in the Prussian service. The platoons advance, fire, and load at the same time. We will give the passage from the original. "Enfin il y a le pas de peloton, imaginé pour mettre les troupes en état d'avancer toujours au moins un peu, tant en faisant feu et en chargeant. C'est là une chose nécessaire. La mesure de temps est la même que celle du pas ordinaire; mais il se fait par un mouvement prompt, et l'homme ramène le pied dont il marche, jusqu'à la pointe de l'autre. Lorsque pendant ce mouvement les armes sont chargées, on commande, *ton! marche!* et la troupe fait trois grands pas en avant, après quoi elle reste ferme pour faire feu; ce qui étant fait, elle marche au pas de peloton après avoir rechargé ses armes, et être rentrée dans la ligne.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, page 265.

21. At the instant when the ruffle of the drum commences, the soldiers shall act as has been described in the *discipline of the platoon*, No. 54.

22. When the battalion *stands at ease*, the captains of companies, the covering serjeants, and the officers and non-commissioned officers in the supernumerary rank, shall not quit their ranks, excepting in a case of urgent necessity, and the captains of companies quitting the ranks, must cause their covering serjeants to occupy their places, in order that the squareness of the alignment remaining always the same, there may be no occasion to rectify the alignment, after calling *attention*, excepting in the interior of companies.

23. The lieutenant colonel shall give the word of command for firing from the rear of the battalion, placing himself where he can be heard to most advantage.

24. The adjutant-major is to take post, during the firings, behind the centre of the right wing, and the adjutant likewise, behind the left wing, both at the distance of about eight paces from the supernumerary rank; and when the battalion *stands at ease*, they must report to the commanding officer such faults as they may have observed.

Platoon Firing.

Feu de peloton.

25. To effect this, the lieutenant colonel must give the following words of command:

1. *The battalion will fire by companies.* (*Feu de peloton.*)
2. *Commence firing.* (*Commencez le feu.*)

26. On the first command of caution, the captains of companies and their covering serjeants, shall retire to the situations assigned to them in the *discipline of the platoon*, Nos. 45 and 46.

27. The bearers of the colours, and the guard of the colours, will retire in such a manner, that the front rank of these three files may be in, and dressed on the rear rank of the battalion.

28. On hearing the second word of command, the odd, or alternate companies shall commence the firing; and the captains are to give the words of command prescribed in the *discipline of the platoon*, No. 47: taking care to add
to

to the word, *company*, the designation of, *first*, *third*, *fifth*, or, *seventh*, according to the number of each.

29. The captains of the even, or left hand companies, shall give, in their turn, the same words of command, adding likewise, the denomination of the number of each company ; and, thus, the firing continues, alternately, by the companies of each grand division.

30. In order that the odd, or first companies, who commence the firing, may not fire altogether at once, the captains of companies must observe, but for the first fire only, to give the word, *fire*, one after another ; thus, the captain of the third company must not give the words, *present*, and *fire*, till he has heard the *report* of the fire of the first company ; and the captain of the fifth company must follow the same rule respecting the third company, as also the captain of the seventh, in regard to the captain of the fifth company.

Firing by Wings.

Feu de demi-bataillon.

31. To effect this, the commanding officer orders,

1. *The battalion will fire by wings.*
2. *Right wing. (Demi-bataillon de droite.)*
3. *Ready. (Armez.)*
4. *Present. (Joue.)*
5. *FIRE. (Feu.)*
6. *Load. (Chargez.)*

32. The lieutenant colonel will fire the wings, alternately, conforming to what has been prescribed above in No. 17 respecting the time, or interval, between the firings.

Firing by battalions.

Feu de bataillon.

33. The lieutenant colonel shall use the same words of command as in firing the wings, substituting the word, *battalion*, instead of *right wing*, or, *left wing*.

Firing

*Firing by independent files.**Feu de deux rangs.*

34. To execute this species of firing, the lieutenant colonel will command *,

1. *The battalion will fire by independent files. (Feu de deux rangs.)*

2. *Battalion. (Bataillon.)*

3. *READY. (Armez.)*

Commence firing. (Commencez le feu.)

35. In firing by wings, by battalions, and independently, by files, the captains of companies, at the first word of command given by the lieutenant colonel, shall retire to the distance of one pace in rear of the third rank, each opposite to his own interval; and the covering serjeants shall move, as in platoon firing, into the line of the supernumerary rank, each behind his respective captain.

36. The colour-bearers, and guard, take post as has been directed in firing by platoons.

*Firing to the rear.**Feu en arrière.*

37. To execute this, the lieutenant colonel commands,

1. *The battalion will fire to the rear. (Feu en arrière.)*

2. *Battalion. (Bataillon.)*

3. *To the right about = FACE. (Demi-tour = à droite.)*

38. At the third word of command, the captains, covering serjeants, and supernumerary rank, must arrange themselves

* See Rules, Part III. end of inspection or review. Firings. "Si la dernière guerre avoit duré encore quelque tems, l'on se feroit indubitablement battu, de part et d'autre, à l'arme blanche; parce que l'on commençoit à connoître l'abus de la tirerie, qui fait plus de bruit que de mal, et qui fait toujours battre ceux qui s'en servent." —Les rêveries de Marechal de Saxe, page 19.

This suggestion of having recourse to the bayonet in preference to fire of musketry, is well adapted to the physical power, the steady courage, and enterprising ardour of the British army. Power of body, multiplied into energetic velocity, will drive before it a mere resisting vis inertiae. From this it is obvious, that the bayonet is the weapon best calculated for British soldiers. There are cases where fire has its advantage. That of riflemen, galling and highly useful, is extremely serviceable, previous to the decisive charge. Fire against cavalry, and in situations not adapted to the charge, must be used.

selves as has been directed in the *discipline of the platoon*, under Nos. 58 and 59.

39. The battalion facing to the rear, with the rear rank in front, shall execute, by the same words of command, the same species of firings, as when fronting.

40. The wings and companies, though the right has become the left, and vice versa, shall still retain their proper appellations of *right* or *left wing*, and *first*, *second*, &c. *company*.

41. Independent firing by files shall commence from the left of companies, now, by facing about, become the right flank.

42. The captains, the covering serjeants, and the guard of the colours, occupy the situations prescribed for them when firing to the proper front; and move to them, respectively, on hearing the first word of command from the commanding officer.

43. In order to front the battalion, the lieutenant colonel will order,

The battalion is to face to proper front. (Face en tête.)

2. *Battalion. (Bataillon.)*

3. *To the right about = FACE. (Demi-tour à droite.)*

44. At the third word of command, the captains, the covering serjeants, and the supernumerary rank, will act as directed in the *discipline of the platoon*, No. 64 and 66.

Remarks on the firings.

Observations relatives aux feux.

45. When the battalion fires with blank cartridges, the lieutenant colonel must sometimes order the captains commanding companies, to inspect the arms, after firing, which will be performed as prescribed in the *discipline of the platoon*, No. 72.

46. In firing by wings, the commanding officer must not give the word of command to one wing, till he sees many firelocks loaded in the wing which has fired last. This rule must also be observed, with regard to the odd and even, first and second, or alternate battalions, in line.

PART II.

Different manners of forming the open and close column, from the position in line.

Differentes manières de passer de l'ordre en bataille, à l'ordre en colonne.

Article First.

When the battalion halted in line, wheels forward by companies into open column, the right or left in front.

Rompre à droite, ou, à gauche.

47. The battalion breaks, habitually, into column in ordinary time.

48. The commanding officer must make use of the words of command, in the formation of open column, directed to be used by the instructor, in the *discipline of the platoon*: substituting the appellation of *company*, for that of *subdivision*.

Pl. X. Fig. 1.

49. What has been directed to be done, in the *discipline of the platoon*, in order to wheel forward into open column of subdivisions, applies here for wheeling by companies; and the captains of companies shall follow, in respect to their platoons, what has been laid down there to be done by the chiefs of subdivisions relative to their subdivisions, the lieutenant colonel, acting as the instructor, in the *discipline of the platoon* *.

50. When the companies of grenadiers have more or less files than the battalion companies, the captain of each of these companies having halted it in wheeling, in order to dress up into column, shall place, quickly, his directing serjeant, at proper distance, on the line of the direction passing between the heels of the other directing serjeants, and the platoon, after this previous preparation, shall dress forward with the others, aligning on the director, as the point of *appui*.

51. The captains having ordered (*eyes*) FRONT (*fixe*,) no director must stir, even though he should not be in the line of direction of the directing serjeants in front of him, in order that an error of short, or over wheeling, committed

* See Rules, Part III. battalion, § 80, 106, and 107.

mitted by one platoon, may not be communicated to others; and the directors who are out of the line, must not attempt to get on it, till the column is put in march*.

52. If, however, the lieutenant colonel saw it necessary, immediately, to form the line, he would, previously, rectify the position of the directors, following the directions to be hereafter laid down under Nos. 218, 219, and those following.

53. As often as the battalion breaks by companies, if to the right, the covering serjeant of each, denominated *director of the right*, (*guide de droite*,) of the company, shall place himself by the side of the man on the right of the front rank of his company, at the instant when the captain of the company shall halt the wheel; if the left is to be in front, the non-commissioned officer nearest to the left of each company, denominated, *director of the left*, (*guide de gauche*,) of the platoon, shall place himself by the side of the man on the left of the front rank of his platoon, at the instant when the captain of his company has halted the wheel; and, thus, whether the right or left is in front, the front rank of each company is square to its front, and included between its two directors.

54. In a column of grand divisions, the director of the right of the first, odd, or right hand company of each, shall be denominated *director of the right* of the grand division, and shall be placed on the right flank of his grand division;

VOL. I.

O

fion ;

* Two objections may be urged against the practice of wheeling forward, to which wheeling backwards is not liable. The first is, that after having wheeled forward, should it become necessary to wheel up again into line, without putting the column in march, the line will be to the front of its original position, and to the right of it, (if the right is in front,) the length of a company, supposing the wheel forward to have been made by companies. The second objection is, that as the companies will wheel up into line, respectively, into the very space which was occupied by the preceding company in line, a small difference in the breadths of the front-rank-men, may occasion, in the new line, a crowding of files in some companies, and an over distance between others. If the column marches off, the *march* will obviate this, after a few paces have been taken. Another remedy may be applied. The companies may be faced to the right about, and wheeled, on the flank on which they wheeled forward, with the rear rank leading and pivoting, two paces beyond the original line, in order, according to the French system, to be dressed up to that line. This may be done when the line is to occupy its original position, without any material loss of time.

sion ; and the *director of the left*, of the second, even, alternate, or left hand company, shall be denominated *director of the left* of the grand division, and shall be placed on the left flank of his grand division.

55. The battalion having broke into column, the adjutant-major and the adjutant, are to take post on the pivot flank of the column, the former in the line of the front of the leading, and the latter, in that of the front of the rear division. The lieutenant colonel of a battalion receiving elementary instruction, has no fixed situation assigned to him, but in columns composed of several battalions, the lieutenant colonels shall, habitually, take post on the pivot flank of the column, at the distance of eight or ten paces from the directing serjeants, and opposite to the centre of the battalion.

(Pl. X. Fig. 2.)

56. When the battalion is to prolong its direction in column towards the right or left, or is to march * perpendicularly, or diagonally, before, or behind, one of its flanks or wings, the commanding officer shall make it to break to the right or left as has been directed ; but, when the battalion is to break to the right, in order to march to the left, or the reverse ; the company on the flank shall march to its front, twice the extent of its front, while the other companies are wheeling forward into open column, and for this purpose, the lieutenant colonel shall command : *the battalion will form a column with the right in front, to march to the left ; or, the battalion will form a column with the left in front, to march to the right*, before he gives the word, *right (or left) wheel, by companies, into column †*.

Article Second.

To file to the rear into open column with the right or left in front.

Rompre en arrière à droite ou à gauche.

57. To effect this, with the right in front, the commands are :

4

1. *The*

* See Rules, Battalion, § 105, paragraphs 10 and 11.

† See Rules, Battalion, § 93.

(*"Rompre*

1. The battalion will file to the rear, from the right of companies into open column. (*Par peloton en arrière à droite.*)
 2. The battalion will face to the right. (*Bataillon par le flanc droit.*)
 3. To the right = FACE. (*A droite.*)
 4. MARCH. (*Marche.*)
- (Plate X. Fig. 3.)

58. At the first word, the captains of companies shall place themselves in front of the centre of their respective companies.

59. At the second, they must caution their companies that they are to face.

60. At the third word, the battalion will face; each captain shall move, nimbly, to the right of his company, causing the three files on the right to disengage to the rear, the front file to its right the breadth of the three ranks; the second file, lefts, and the third advancing only the left shoulder; which being effected, each captain of a company will then move opposite to the last file of the left of the platoon, which is immediately to the right of his own, placing himself there, so as to bear lightly his breast against the left arm of the man of the front rank of that file; the captain of the platoon on the right of the battalion, will place himself in the same manner as if there were a company to the right of his own, aligning himself on the other captains of companies; and the covering serjeant of each company shall throw himself to the rear with the head of his company when the three files of it disengage on the right, placing himself before the man of the front rank of the first file, in order to conduct it.

61. At the word, *march*, the first file of each platoon must wheel to the right, the covering serjeant conducting it

o 2

it

(“*Rompre par la droite, pour marcher vers la gauche, ou, rompre par la gauche, pour marcher vers la droite.*”) The Prussian system causes the companies to wheel, and march close along the front, if the movement is to be, afterwards, to the front.—*Tactique Prussienne*, page 294.

The above manner of forming open column on, and in rear of the line, is used in the French service, instead of wheeling on the left, or right, backwards, into open column, with the right, or left in front.

it, perpendicularly, to the rear; the following files will wheel, successively, on the same ground where the leading file wheeled; and the captains shall not stir, observing their companies wheel before them, and, at the instant when the last file shall have wheeled, halting them by the words,

1. *Company.* (*Peloton.*)
2. *Halt.* (*Halte.*)
3. *Front.* (*Front.*)
4. *Left = Dress.* (*A gauche = alignement.*)

62. At the instant the company fronts, the director of the left shall place himself opposite to the captain of the company, against whose breast he is to bear his left arm, lightly.

63. At the fourth word, the company is to dress up to the alignment the director of the left is on, and the captain shall direct the dressing, in such a manner, that the new position of the company may be perpendicular to that it occupied in line; and for this purpose, he shall move about two paces without the flank, or backward, to be the better enabled to ascertain the direction.

64. The company being dressed, the captain is to order, *FRONT*, and shall place himself in front of the centre of his company. This must be a general rule.

65. If the companies of grenadiers have more or less strength than the battalion companies, the captains of them, after having given the word, *front*, shall place their directors at the distance at which they ought to be, before the command for dressing up is given.

66. In order to file to the rear from the left of companies, and form column with the left in front, the commanding officer gives the same commands as in the last case, substituting *left* for *right*.

67. The movement is executed on the same principles, as in forming column with the right in front; each captain of a company, proceeds to the left of his company, causing three files to disengage, and placing himself immediately afterwards, facing and bearing lightly against the right arm of the front rank man of the last file of the right of the company on the left of his own, as has been described in an opposite sense, in No. 60.

68. As soon as the three files on the left of the company

pany have disengaged to the rear, the director of the left of each company, shall place himself before the front rank man of the first file, in order to lead it.

69. At the moment when each platoon fronts, the director of the right of each platoon, is to place himself opposite to the captain of his company, bearing his right arm, lightly, against the breast of the captain.

Remarks on the movement of filing to the rear from line, in order to form open column in the rear, with the right or left in front.

Observations relatives au mouvement de rompre en arrière, à droite ou à gauche.

70. This mode of forming open column from line, can be made use of, when want of room does not admit of wheeling forward according to the preceding article; and it must be always practised, as often as it may be necessary that the flank of the open column should march on the prolongation of the line from, and on which, the open column is formed *.

Article Third.

To form close column from line †.

Ployer le bataillon en colonne serrée.

71. This movement can be executed by companies, or grand divisions, either on a division of the right, or on one of the left, or on any other division of the battalion, the right or left being in front.

72. In order to form close column of grand divisions on a central one, with the right in front, the lieutenant colonel shall command,

o 3

1. *The*

* In the French service, the wheel is never made on the left, or, right, backwards. The above accurate mode of filing into open column is substituted. The French deem wheeling backward an unnatural movement, that in quick time, especially, no degree of practice can ever render easy or accurate. If their divisions are of unequal strength, after fronting from file, the unequal divisions, should there be any, are instantly closed to proper distance of pivots. In the Prussian service, wheeling backward is used when a canal, river, or precipice is close in front of the line. The wheel forward has the preference.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, page 291.

† See Rules, Battalion, § 137.

1. *The battalion will form close column of grand divisions.*
(*Colonne serrée par division.*)
2. *On the second grand division, with the right in front.*
(*Sur la deuxième division, la droite en tête.*)
Form close column. (*En colonne.*)
3. *The battalion will face to the left and right inwards.*
(*Battalion par le flanc gauche et le flanc droit.*)
4. *Left and right inwards = FACE.* (*A gauche = et à droite.*)

5. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

Pl. XI. Fig. 2.

73. At the second word, all the captains commanding grand divisions shall place themselves in front of the centre of their respective grand divisions.

74. At the third, the captain of the second grand division is to caution it to stand fast.

75. The captain commanding each grand division to the right of the second, shall warn his grand division that it is to face to the left; and the captain of each grand division to the left of the second, shall caution his grand division, that it is to face to the right.

76. At the fourth word of command, the first grand division, and the grenadiers shall face to the left; the captain commanding each of these grand divisions must step, nimbly, to the left of his grand division, causing the three files on the left to disengage to the front; and, then, the director of the left of the grand division, shall place himself before the man of the front rank of the first file, in order to lead it.

77. The third and fourth grand divisions are to face to the right; the captain of each shall step, nimbly, to the right of his grand division, causing the three files on the right, to disengage to the rear; and the directors of the right of these two grand divisions, shall, each, disengage to the rear, along with the files, placing themselves, respectively, before the man of the front rank of the first file, in order to conduct it.

78. The captains, commanding grand divisions, who shall have faced to the left and right, shall place themselves, those of the grand divisions of the right, by the side of their director of the left: and those commanding the grand divisions

divisions of the left, by the side of their respective directors of the right.

79. At the word, *march*, the captain commanding the second grand division shall command, *director to the left*; the director of the left of that grand division will move to its left flank, when he can pass to it, and the supernumerary rank is to close up to within one pace of the rear rank.

80. All the other grand divisions conducted by the captains commanding them, respectively, shall step off together, in order to take their stations in the column; the first shall gain, by wheeling by files to the front, the space of three paces which ought to separate it from the second in the column, directing itself, afterwards, in such a manner, as to enter into the column with files at right angles, and in a direction parallel to the second grand division; the grenadiers must regulate themselves on the first grand division, and shall enter the column, as has been described, by directing themselves accordingly, taking care to leave a space of three paces between their rear, and the front rank of the first grand division.

81. The third grand division will gain, by wheeling by files successively to the rear, the space of three paces which must separate it from the second, directing itself, afterwards, in such a manner, as to enter the column, with files at right angles, and in a direction parallel to the second grand division; the fourth grand division will regulate itself on the third, directing itself so as to enter the column, as has been explained, and leaving an interval, between its front rank and the rear rank of the third grand division, of three paces.

82. The captain commanding each of the grand divisions, which are to arrange themselves in front of the grand division, called the *directing one*, which is the second in this instance, is to halt his grand division, the instant before his director of the left arrives opposite to the director of the left of the directing grand division, and therefore, shall give the word of command,

1. *Such a grand division (or grenadiers.)* (*Telle division (ou, grenadiers.)*)

2. HALT. (*Halte.*)

83. On the second word, the grand division will halt; the

the director of its left shall, immediately, face to the rear, placing himself, quickly, so as to cover the directing serjeant on the left of the grand division of direction, and leaving a space of about five paces between himself and the director immediately before him, in order that there may remain an interval of three paces between each grand division, after the close column is formed.

84. The director of the left being, thus, established, the captain will command,

3. FRONT *. (*Front.*)

4. *Left* = DRESS. (*A gauche* = *alignement.*)

85. At the third word, the grand division shall face to its front in column, but the director of the left remains facing to the rear.

86. At the fourth word, the grand division shall join its director of the left, dressing to the left; the captain of the grand division is to proceed to the distance of two paces on the outside of the director, regulating the dressing from his situation, in such manner, that his grand division may be parallel to the *grand division of direction*; and when this is effected, he shall order (*eyes*) FRONT, (*fixe*), and place himself in front of the centre of his grand division.

87. The captain commanding each grand division which is to take its place in the column, in the rear of that of direction, shall conduct his grand division till it arrives as far as, and opposite to the director of the left of the grand division of direction; he himself must then stop, allowing his grand division to file past him, and at the instant when the last file shall have passed him, he will halt his grand division, by the words of command directed to be used in No. 82, of this article.

88. The

* Frederic the Great modified the ancient phalanx into the modern close column, which he successfully used to mask his designs; to facilitate movements to front, flanks, or rear; or to secure his army in an open country against the attacks of cavalry. The close column was well calculated to promote the King of Prussia's favourite object, the concentration of his forces to act on certain points by means of rapid deployments. The Prussians prefer the close column of companies, to that of grand divisions, the former being more adapted to the natural order of the battalion. A close column is not calculated for the purposes of marching; from the heat it generates, and the difficulty of maintaining its order.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, page 282 to 286.

88. The grand division being halted, the director of the left shall place himself, quickly, in the line of direction of the flank, at the distance of three paces from the rear rank of the grand division immediately preceding his own; which being done, the captain commanding the grand division commands, *FRONT*, (*front*), and, *left DRESS*, dressing his grand division, by putting himself in the situation mentioned for aligning his grand division from, in No. 86; and, then, he is to command (*eyes*) *FRONT* (*fixe*), placing himself in front of the centre of his grand division.

89. The grand divisions having arranged themselves in the close column, if any one of them should find its distance from that in front or rear of it, too great or too small, such grand division, in order not to extend this error, must remain in its place. This fault must necessarily arise, if the director of the left should neglect taking his proper distance in column, from the director on the left of the grand division placed in the column previously, or if the director of the left of this last, should be too long in ascertaining and taking his situation.

90. The movement being finished, the lieutenant colonel shall command,

Directors, to the right about = *FACE*. (*Guides, demi-tour* = *à droite*.)

91. At this word, the directing serjeants facing to the rear, shall front.

92. The commanding officer must superintend the general execution of the movement, observing that the prescribed principles are all adhered to.

93. The adjutant-major must place himself in front of, and facing the director of the left of the grand division of direction, marking the line perpendicular to its front; and from that situation, he is enabled to rectify any error committed by the directors of the left of grand divisions in front of that of direction, as they respectively come up; that is, the error of being too much to the right or left, for the taking of proper distance depends on the directors themselves.

94. The adjutant performs the same duty from the rear of the column, with respect to the directing serjeants who
take

take their places in the column, in rear of the grand division of direction.

95. The battalion forms close column, with the left in front, on the second grand division, by the same rules, principles, and words of command : substituting, only, the expression, *left in front*, for, *right in front*.

96. The grand divisions of the left shall, in this case, execute what has been directed for those of the right, and, *mutatis mutandis*.

97. The captain commanding the *grand division of direction*, at the commencement of the movement, shall order, *director to the right*.

98. These two examples include all the cases ; thus, if it is required to form close column from line, on the right grand division, the words of command shall be,

1. *The battalion will form a close column of grand divisions.* (*Colonne serrée par division.*)

2. *In rear (or front) of the grenadiers.* (*Sur les grenadiers en arrière (ou en avant.)*)

Form = close column. (*En colonne.*)

3. *The battalion will face to the right.* (*Bataillon par le flanc droit.*)

4. *To the right = FACE.* (*A droite.*)

5. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

(Plate XI. Fig. 1.)

99. The grenadiers stand fast, and at the commencement of the movement, the captain commanding them, orders,

Director to the left, (or, right.) (*Guide à gauche, (ou à droite.)*)

100. If the column is to be formed with the right in front, all the grand divisions, excepting the grenadiers, shall go through all that has been directed to be done by the two grand divisions on the left, in the case of forming the close column on a central grand division, with the right in front.

101. If on the contrary, the close column is to be formed with the left in front, they shall go through all that has been directed to be done by the two left grand divisions, when the close column is to be formed on a central grand division, with the left in front.

102. Fi-

102. Finally, to form a close column from line, on the left grand division, the commands shall be,

1. *The battalion will form a close column of grand divisions. (Colonne serrée par division.)*
2. *In rear (or front) of the fourth grand division. (Sur la quatrième division, en arrière (ou en avant.)*
Form close column. (Colonne serrée.)
3. *The battalion will face to the left. (Bataillon par le flanc gauche.)*
4. *To the left = FACE. (A gauche.)*
5. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

(Plate XI. Fig. 3.)

103. The fourth grand division stands fast, and the captain commanding it, orders, *director to the left*, (or, *to the right*), on the commencement of the movement.

104. If the column is to be formed with the right in front, all the grand divisions, except the fourth, shall execute what has been directed to be done by the two grand divisions on the right, when the close column was formed on a central grand division, with the right in front.

105. If, on the contrary, the close column is to be formed with the left in front, all the grand divisions, except the fourth, shall execute what has been directed to be done by the two grand divisions on the right, when the close column is directed to be formed on a central grand division with the left in front.

106. In all these various suppositions, the grand division nearest to that of direction, must gain, by wheeling by files to front or rear, according as it may be requisite to be placed before or behind the grand division of direction, the space of three paces, which must be between each grand division, when formed in the close column.

107. Whether the close column is formed with the right, or left in front, the director of the left, of the grand division of direction, must always repair to the left flank of that grand division, as soon as he can pass to it.

Remarks

*Remarks on the movement of filing into open or close column from line.**Observations relatives au mouvement de ployer le bataillon en colonne *.*

108. On the same principles, and by the same words of command, may open columns be formed by filing from line to *company* or *subdivision* distance, that is, to full or half distance, substituting one or other of these words for, *close column*.

109. It is of importance that the director of the grand division that enters first into the column, should be placed correctly covering the director on the pivot flank of the *grand division of direction*, since the position of these two directors determines those of all the others.

110. It is equally essential that each grand division, previous to arranging itself in the column, directs itself so as to enter square, and parallel to the front of that of direction, in order that a false direction of one grand division may not mislead the succeeding ones.

111. All the preceding movements may be executed either in ordinary, or quick time; and if, from the difficulty of the ground, it should happen that the files are too open, each captain of a grand division would take care to make them close up, to their front, previous to entering into the column.

PART III.

*Article First.**March in open Column, at full distance of companies.]**Marcher en colonne avec distance entière.*

112. When the commanding officer intends to put the column in march, he is to point out to the leading director two remarkable, or distinct objects, if such offer themselves

* See *L'art de la guerre par regles et par principes*, du Marechal de Puyfégur; and *Les Œuvres du Chevalier de Follard*; in both of which useful works, the column is advantageously treated of, and also in Dundas's principles of military movements, published in 1788, from which originated the British Rules and Regulations.

themselves on the line about to be moved on, to the front ; and the director shall, immediately, face towards these objects, taking as a point of sight, the more remote of the two, and as an intermediate point, the nearer object.

113. If only one striking, or distinct object offers in the line the leading director is to move on, he must face towards it, equally as before, choosing, immediately, an intermediate point on the ground.

114. Finally, if no striking, or distinct object offers, the lieutenant colonel must detach the adjutant-major to the distance of thirty or forty paces in front of the column, facing towards it, and establish him by a signal with his sword, on the line of direction on which the leading director is to march ; the adjutant-major being, thus, stationed, the leading director is to face towards him, immediately, choosing two points on the ground, in the straight line passing between both their heels, and assuming, successively, new points on the ground, in proportion as the column advances, as has been explained in the *discipline of the platoon*, No. 79.

115. The arrangements being made, the lieutenant colonel shall give the word of command,

1. *The column will advance.* (*Colonne en avant.*)
2. *Director on, or march by the left (or, right).* (*Guide à gauche (ou à droite.)*)
3. MARCH*. (*Marche.*)

116. By marching always on the prolongation of the two points which have been established, the leading director is enabled, easily, to move correctly on the given line, or he regulates his march on the two points chosen by himself ; and if these points, or objects, are elevated above the level of the ground, provided the nearer covers in, or hides from him the farther removed, he is morally certain that he is proceeding truly on the line of direction.

* See Rules, Battalion, Open Column, page 94, § 79, The March, § 82, Points of March.

Sudden runs and stops take place in the march of the column, by deviations from, and recurrence to the original line of march. To prevent this, those conducting a body of men must always march covering *two* objects before them. Marching on *one* object will not ensure accuracy. Much fatigue, also, will be, thus, saved to the soldier.—See Saldern's Tactics, March in Column.

117. The following directing serjeants must keep the exact step and distance, marching, each, in the path of the director preceding him immediately, without occupying the attention with the general direction.

118. The adjutant-major must march in a line with the leading director, to watch that he does not deviate from the line on which he ought to march, and to see that the director of the second division marches, exactly in the path of the first.

119. The adjutant will post himself opposite to the director of the rear platoon, and should any of the intermediate directors deviate, sensibly, from the line on which those at the head of the column are marching, he is to rectify that error, and to prevent its being communicated: but such correction must only take place, when it may be necessary to prevent considerable deviations.

120. The commanding officer of the battalion must be, constantly, on the pivot flank of the line of direction, in order to see that the step, the distance, and all the principles of marching in column, as laid down in the *discipline of the platoon*, are adhered to.

121. These means, which the practice of the *discipline of the platoon* must have rendered familiar, will enable a column to march in a given direction, with the requisite accuracy, as often as it may be required to form *line to the front, or, facing to the rear, to the right flank*; or, to the left flank, when the left is in front; or when it may be necessary to form close, from open column.

122. But when a column arriving in front or rear of a line on which it is to form in line, is to prolong that line, in order to wheel up to the *left, or, right* into it, it is essential that such column should neither intersect, nor deviate sensibly from the new line. To prevent this, the following means are made use of.

(Plate XII. Fig. 1.)

123. If the column with the right in front, arrives in front of the line, the director of the leading division must direct his march on the intermediate point which shall have been placed previously on that line, in order to indicate the point where the column is to wheel to the left, and prolong the new direction; the captain of the leading subdivision is not to cause it to wheel till he and his subdivision

subdivision* have passed four paces beyond the line to be formed on; at the instant when this subdivision has wheeled, the *general director* of the right, shall place himself on the real line opposite to the leading subdivision, facing to the two points of direction in front, which the commanding officer and the adjutant-major must point out to him, and he must march, correctly, on the prolongation of those two points.

124. *The bearer of the colours* is to place himself in the same manner, at the instant when the company in which the colours are, has wheeled; and shall march on the line, opposite to his company, taking care to carry the colours perpendicularly before the middle of his body, and keeping the *general director* who precedes him, and the distant point of sight in one and the same line. The distant point must be indicated to him previously.

125. Finally, the *general director* of the left, must place himself also, on the line, at the instant when the rear subdivision shall have wheeled, marching, accurately, in the direction of the bearer of the colours, and *general director* of the right, who precede him†.

126. The director of the leading subdivision, must march always opposite to, and as far advanced as the *general director* of the right, and about four paces on his inside; and the directors of the following divisions must, each, march in the path, and traces, of the director who immediately precedes, as has been directed in No. 117.

127. The lieutenant colonel placed on the flank, on the outside of the *general guides*, must observe that the column marches nearly in a parallel direction to, and about four paces on the inside of the line of the *general directors*.

128. The adjutant-major and the adjutant, must see that the general directors march, correctly, in the direction of the two points in front; and for this purpose, they must, sometimes, place themselves in the rear of the bearer

P 2

of

* It would appear that *subdivision*, the word in the text, and *platoon*, or company, mean, in general description of movement, the same thing. *Section* is uniformly the word in the text expressive of half of a company. Subdivision means, generally, what its component parts imply, inferior parts, or, divisions of a battalion.

† See Rules, Battalion, § 83, marching in an alignment.

of the colours, or of the *general director* of the left, being situations proper for ascertaining this.

129. If the column is composed of several battalions, the *general directors* of each, must place themselves, successively, on the line, in proportion as the leading subdivision, the subdivision of the colours, and the rear subdivision of their battalion, shall have wheeled in order to prolong, and march four paces on the inside of the line. They, the lieutenant colonel, the adjutant-major, and the adjutant, must conform to the directions laid down for the guidance of these respectively, in the battalion at the head of the column.

130. The adjutant-major of each battalion must always cause the director of the leading subdivision to march four paces on the inside of the line of the *general directors*, although even the rear subdivisions of the preceding battalion, should be more or less than they ought, to right or left; and this is done, that the false direction of one battalion may not influence the others, who follow.

(Plate XII. Fig. 2.)

131. If the column with the right in front, arrives in the rear of the line, the commanding officer of the column, or of the leading battalion, must conduct the director of the left, the pivot flank, of the first subdivision, not on the intermediate point situated on that line, but more to the left by, at least, the whole length of the front of the subdivision, ordering it to wheel to the right, in such a manner, as that when the wheel is finished, the director may be four paces from the intermediate point on the near, or rear side of the line *.

132. At the instant when the first subdivision, having wheeled to the right, will commence marching parallel to the line, the *general director* of the right shall place himself on the line, directing himself on the two points in front; the bearer of the colours when he comes up and wheels along with his subdivision, places himself, also, on the line; and, lastly, the *general director* of the left, after the rear subdivision has wheeled.

133. If the column is composed of several battalions, the

* See Rules, Battalion, § 115.

the *general directors* of the battalions coming up, will, successively, execute, what has been just directed to be done by those of the battalion at the head of the column; the *general directors*, the directors of subdivisions, the commanding officer, the adjutant-major and adjutant of each battalion, conforming to what has been detailed above, relative to a column arriving before a line on which it may form.

134. These movements are executed in a column with the left in front, and arriving before, or behind, the line to be formed on, by following the same rules, but in an inverted, or opposite order of things.

135. If, lastly, the column, instead of arriving before or behind the line, should arrive on the right or left of it, and was to prolong that line, in order to wheel up, afterwards, to the *left*, or, *right*, into line; the commanding officer would order the *general directors* to the flank of the column, by giving the word of command, *general directors on the line*, when these directors would prolong the line, conducting themselves conformable to what has been prescribed above.

136. If, instead of making the column march with the cadenced step, the lieutenant colonel should deem it necessary to direct it to march in column of route, *at ease*, the word *march*, would be preceded by *route-step*, or, *at ease*.

137. All that has been directed to be done above, relative to maintaining the direction, is equally applicable to the march of a column of route, *at ease*, on the march.

Remarks on the March in open Column.

Observations relatives à la marche en colonne.

138. Although the uncadenced step ought to be, habitually, that of a column of route, and that it ought also, for the most part, to be made use of in the evolutions of the line, because affording to the soldier the means of marching at ease, it is that best calculated for grand movements, and difficult, unfavourable ground; as, nevertheless, it is necessary above every other consideration, to endeavour to confirm the soldiers in the measure and movement of the cadenced step, the route step is not to

be used in the exercise of the battalion, excepting in going to, or returning from the field of exercise, or in order to shew the mechanism of the movements of a column of route, as will be explained, hereafter, in No. 148, and following.

139. When the march in column in ordinary time, is well acquired, the march in quick time may sometimes be practised.

140. Two non-commissioned officers, thoroughly, in every respect, trained, are to be chosen as *general directors*; they must be particularly qualified in the accuracy and precision of the step, and in prolonging, without deviation, a given direction of line; these two non-commissioned officers must be placed in line, one behind the company on the right, and the other behind the company on the left of their battalion; they are to be deemed in the number of the supernumerary rank of these companies; besides the duties required from them in *this article*, they are also intended for others, to be pointed out, when marching in line is treated of; and they are to be distinguished by the appellations of *general director of the right*, and, *general director of the left*, (*guide général de droite, et guide général de gauche* *.)

141. When the bearers of the colours are stationed on the flank of the column to march on, or prolong a line to be formed on, they are to carry their colours perpendicularly before, and between the eyes, the heel of the staff as high as the haunch.

142. As when a column prolongs, or marches on a line of formation, it is extremely important that the *general directors* should march on that line, correctly, it becomes necessary, that the commanding officers of battalions, the adjutants-

* “ The principal attention of the first officer must be never to change his step with regard to the length and cadence; because, otherwise, either a running, or a stop, would undoubtedly happen in a battalion, and still more so in a large column. He must farther endeavour to march, so as to keep his division, as much as possible, in such a direction, that his first rank may make a perpendicular with the line upon which he marches, but his mind being sufficiently employed, and not being able to attend to his men, they must be so exercised, as to dress themselves. The same is to be understood with respect to all the other officers, who lead the other divisions. —See Saldern's *Tactics*, pages 83 and 84.

adjutants-major and the adjutants, whose united duty it is to prevent deviations from it, should be able, as much as possible, always, to see the two objects on which the march of the *general directors* is conducted; consequently, as often as the ground marched on, does not present to the eye, striking or projecting objects, the commander of the column ought, timely, and before hand, to supply this want, by stationing aids-de-camp, or officers on horse-back, whom he can multiply as much as circumstances may require it*.

143. In the following manner, three aides-de-camp, or officers mounted, can prolong a line while it may be necessary so to do: they are to place themselves previously, on the line, the first where the head of the column is to enter, the second, three or four hundred paces behind, or more advanced than the first, and the third at the same distance from the second: the aid-de-camp stationed where the head of the column is to enter the alignment, must remain there, till the leading subdivision has wheeled, after which he is to gallop to the distance of three or four hundred paces behind the third; the second must act in the same manner, when the head of the column approaches him, and so on. The officers do not dismount; face towards the column; and align, or cover each other; it must be always on these mounted officers, that the *general directors* are to march, and it will be so much the more easy for them to keep on the line of direction, on account of always seeing these mounted officers over the heads of the preceding directors, so that if one of the *general directors* deviates, from inattention, from the true line, the fault committed by him, will not mislead the directors in his rear.

144. A single aid-de-camp, or mounted officer, is sufficient to ensure the just direction of a column, when the distant point of view towards which it is tending is distinct; in this case, the aid-de-camp is to post himself on the line, beyond the point where the head of the column is to rest, and to remain in his station, while the column continues to march, serving, thus, as an intermediate point for ensuring the accurate march of the *general directors*.

145. To

* See Rules, Battalion, § III.

145. To regulate the direction of a column of one or two battalions, it will be sufficient to employ men on foot, to establish the line which the *general directors* are to follow.

Article Second.

*Column of Route *.*

Colonne en Route.

146. It is a general principle with respect to columns of route, as well as columns of manœuvre, that they are not, when in column, to occupy more space than they would in line.

147. The observation and practice of this principle require no particular rule in a column of manœuvre; but as columns of route frequently meet with narrow roads, bridges, and defiles, which oblige them to diminish the front of subdivisions, it is necessary to point out the method to be pursued in such cases, in order to enable the column to march *at ease*, as long as possible, without the inconvenience of lengthening out the space it ought to occupy; therefore,

(Plate XIII. Fig. 1.)

148. 1st, When a column of route in companies, has its progress obstructed by a defile that will receive a subdivision only in front, the column of companies, previous to entering the defile, must form a column of subdivisions.

149. The companies, successively, will form subdivisions, on receiving a caution to that effect from the commanding officer, or adjutant-major, by the words of command and means detailed in the *discipline of the platoon*; and the companies in the rear will form subdivisions, successively, on the same ground, where the leading company diminished its front.

150. Or, the commanding officer may order the whole column, at the same time, to form subdivisions, as follows:

1. *The*

* See Rules, Line. Column of Route.

1. *The column of companies will form a column of subdivisions* *. (*Rompez les pelotons.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

151. All the captains commanding companies, those assigned to lead subdivisions, and all the subdivisions of the battalion, are, at once, in the execution of these orders, to conform to the rules laid down in the *discipline of the platoon*.

(Plate XIII. Fig. 2.)

152. 2dly, The column being in subdivisions, if a want of space demands a farther diminution of front, the officers leading subdivisions are to break off one or more files, corresponding to the breadth of the defile, posting themselves, at the same time, on the pivot flank of their subdivisions in the place of the director, who falls back to the centre rank; and the non-commissioned officer of the subdivision is, at the same time, also, to fall in behind the officer, the director falling back to the rear rank.

153. In order to diminish the front of subdivisions, files are to be broke off, alternately, and in equal numbers from the right and left, as want of room may require, until the front of the subdivision becomes reduced to six men, exclusive of the officer commanding the subdivision.

154. 3dly, The subdivision being reduced to six in front, not including the officer, if the want of space requires a farther diminution of front, as, then, files could be broke off to the rear, from one flank only, it would become indispensably necessary, to avoid lengthening out the column, to close up the ranks, and to resume the cadenced step; for which purpose the officer commanding the subdivision is to order,

1. *Rear ranks, take close order.* (*Serrez vos rangs.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

(Plate XIII. Fig. 3.)

155. The centre and rear ranks, and also the files broke off in the rear, are to lock up, quickly; the subdivision assumes the cadenced step, with arms supported; this being effected, the officer of the subdivision on the
pivot

* See Rules, Battalion, § 87, 88, 89, 90, and page 112.

pivot flank, shall order to the front, all the files, at once, that have been broke off from the reverse flank, breaking off, at the same time, from the pivot flank, the same number of files, more by one, or two, according as the front requires a diminution of one or two files; and in order that the files which form up, may not be obstructed by want of space, and may not, on that account, retard the movement of those breaking off from the opposite flank, the officer of the subdivision must caution the files that are continuing to march steadily forward, to oblique, with a lengthy step, towards the pivot flank, as has been explained in the *discipline of the platoon* under No. 241.

(Pl. XIII. Fig. 4.)

156. 4thly, The subdivision being reduced to four in front, exclusive of the officer commanding the subdivision, if the want of space requires that the front should be diminished by one file more, the officer on the flank is not to break off new files, but is to caution the four files forming the front to continue marching steadily on, he himself, the non-commissioned officer of his subdivision placed behind him, and the director covering them in the rear rank, halting at the same time; he is to caution, immediately, the files already in the rear, to oblique, or ease off towards the reverse flank, the breadth of one file, and the officer, the non-commissioned officer, and the director of the subdivision, are to follow close in the rear of the outward file of those in the front continuing to march straight forward; and by this means, the files in the rear, will have more room for marching in, than if the officer commanding the subdivision, had broke off another file.

(Plate XIII. Fig. 5.)

157. 5thly, The road now widening, the officer commanding the subdivision, the director and non-commissioned officer marching in his rear, move up to the front; and the officer, in proportion as the path widens, must order one or more files to form up to the front, the subdivision continuing, always, to march with a cadenced step, and closed ranks.

(Plate XIII. Fig. 6.)

158. 6thly, When six files are in front, exclusive of the officer commanding the subdivision, he is previous to
resuming

resuming the march of route, *at ease*, to order up to the front half the number of files who are still in the rear, and to break off, at the same time, an equal number, from the reverse flank, being that opposite to the flank the director is on; and, the subdivision consisting, thus, of six files in front, with the files behind each flank equal in number, the officer commanding it orders,

1. *Route-step* (or, *march at ease*.) (*Pas de route*.)

2. MARCH. (*Marche*.)

3. *Slope* = ARMS. (*L'arme* = *à volonté*.)

159. These orders are obeyed in following the directions given in the *discipline of the platoon*, under Nos. 243 and 244.

(Plate XIII. Fig. 7.)

160. The officer commanding the subdivision, shall then order up to the front, files from the rear of the right and left flanks, in proportion as the road, or defile, becomes more wide.

161. All the above movements are executed by word of command given by the officer commanding the subdivision, first, in the subdivision at the head of the column, and, successively, in those following, when they arrive on the same ground where the diminution originated.

162. The leading subdivision must follow the windings of the road, or defile; the following subdivisions are not to occupy the attention with the direction, but must, all, pass, successively, and follow where the preceding shall have passed*. The soldiers are not to endeavour to avoid bad roads, each, as much as possible, moving straight where his particular line of direction ought to conduct him.

163. When the subdivisions march in column of route, at ease, changes of direction take place always without words of command; the officers commanding subdivisions are only to caution them, when the change of direction is somewhat considerable; and the centre, rear rank, and files in the rear, change direction, successively, on the same ground where the front rank did the same.

164. When the two leading subdivisions have passed the defile, the captain commanding the company, will
form

* See Rules, Battalion, Open Column, No. 27]

form company, if so ordered by the commanding officer, or the adjutant-major; and the captains of the companies following, in subdivisions, will execute the same movement, successively, on the same ground.

165. The lieutenant colonel, the adjutant-major, and the adjutant, must carefully observe that the principles and rules laid down in this article, are strictly adhered to; and that there may not be sudden stops, transitions, or jerks in the march, that occasion a loss of the step, the preventing of which depends on the attention of the officers of subdivisions in causing the same rate of march to be maintained, without being accelerated, or retarded.

166. The lieutenant colonel, or the adjutant-major, remains at the head of the battalion to regulate the step, or rate of march of the leading subdivision, and to suggest to the officer commanding that subdivision, the instant at which he is to execute the various file-movements prescribed above, according as circumstances may require them.

167. If the column is composed of many battalions, each of them, in its turn, executes, what has been described as necessary to be done by the battalion at the head of the column; each taking care to go through the movement on the same ground, and in the same manner.

168. In order to render the mechanism of all these movements familiar to the troops, and to accustom them to march in column of route in narrow roads, without ever lengthening out the column, the commanding officers of battalions, will, regularly, cause them to march in column of route, to and from the field of exercise, practising diminutions of front in narrow passages, in order to inculcate the utility of the above rules and principles: they can even in the course of the ordinary drills, when the soldiers are confirmed in the practice of the length, and cadence of the ordinary step, cause the battalion to march, occasionally, in column of route, practising the formation of subdivisions sometimes, at once, at other times, successively; as also the various movements of breaking off, and moving up files to the front, as has been explained.

169. For

169. For this purpose, the officer commanding the subdivision at the head, will reduce its front, successively, to four files, causing them, afterwards, to form up, successively, to the front, according to the principles detailed;—and the commanding officer will give it in charge to the adjutant-major to superintend this, and to suggest to the officer of the subdivision, the moment when he is to execute the various file-movements which have been explained in this article.

170. The commanding officer will, himself, carefully, see, that the other subdivisions, shall, each, go through the same movements, and in the same place, as the leading one did; and that the column does not lengthen out beyond its just extent.

171. Some repetitions of this lesson will give the officers of subdivisions a grounded knowledge of the mechanism, or component parts of these movements, and accustom the soldiers to execute with facility and precision, all such as the nature of roads may render necessary in a column of route.

172. The observation of the rules prescribed in this article, for diminishing the front of a column, according to circumstances, is so much the more easy, as it requires on the part of the commanding officers of subdivisions, simply, to do, respectively, in successive order, what is executed by the subdivision immediately preceding.

General Observations relative to a Column of Route.

Observations générales relatives à la Colonne en Route.

173. Of all the lessons that can be given to soldiers, there is none more important in its application than that relating to the column of route;—if the instruction it inculcates is not established on just and accurate principles, it will generally happen, that the rear of a column of route shall be under the necessity of running, to regain its distances, or that the head must halt till the rear comes up:—it will result also, that the column occupying more space than it ought, will not be in a condition to sustain an unforeseen attack, and that its march will take up several more hours than if it were made in good order;—another bad consequence will be, that the soldiers will be harassed, and that the general, unable, on these accounts,

to calculate the time which a column will take to go over a certain distance, can never, with precision, combine properly the march of several columns acting relatively.

174. The ordinary rate of march of a column of route on good roads, and in a level, even country, ought to be from eighty-five, to ninety paces a minute;—this rate of quickness can be easily kept up, whatever may be the depth of the column;—but on roads cut up by rain, in ploughed lands, on sands, and among mountains, the rate ought to be about seventy-six a minute;—it depends on the commander of the column, to regulate it according to circumstances:—and a column of one regiment, or even of one brigade, can easily march, when necessary, from ninety to a hundred paces*.

175. The maintaining of an equal and regulated movement, is the surest means of marching well in column of route—and if any obstacle renders it necessary for one or more subdivisions to slacken or shorten the step of march, they will resume it when the cause is removed.

176. A subdivision ought never to have too great an interval between itself and the preceding one;—but, sometimes, a necessity arises for contracting this interval, in order that the march may not be retarded, as will be soon explained†.

177. If,

* 85	
90	
76	
90	
100	
5 441	88 Average number of paces in a minute.
	60
	5280 Paces in an hour.
	2
	10560 French feet in an hour.
	616 Add feet, because a French foot is equal to 12 inches English and 7-10ths nearly
3 11176	English feet.
Yards 3725	Average rate of French marching nearly 2 miles and 1-8th an hour.

† “ At home, our battalions are too little accustomed to act with others, as part of a large body. On the common roads we are obliged to give way to every obstacle, and fall into file, so that the necessity

177. If, for instance, the leading subdivision meets with a difficult pass, a steep declivity, or some other obstacle which occasions a shortening of the step, or decrease of the rate of its march, the succeeding subdivision is not to shorten or slacken its pace till it arrives at the same place, although it may be necessitated to close up entirely to the leading one;—and, in its turn, the third respecting the second subdivision, must observe the same rule, and so on to the rear of the column.

178. If, instead of following this rule, all the subdivisions of a column were to march at a slower rate, or shortened the step, at the same time with the subdivision at the head of the column, it would result, in supposing the length of the column to be 1200 yards, that the rear subdivision would commence marching in a slower time, at the distance of 1200 yards from the obstacle;—and it would necessarily follow, to prevent an elongation of the column, that the leading subdivision, after passing the obstacle, must, for the space of 1200 yards, continue to march slower, or to shorten the step: it is evident how much the march of a column meeting frequently with such obstacles, would be retarded.

179. It would also happen, if it were endeavoured to preserve always, exactly, the same distance between the subdivisions, that the leading one having begun to march slower, or to shorten the step, the second would not perceive this alteration till one or two steps, at least, had been taken, and would, consequently, diminish its distance

Q 2

more

necessity and importance of division marching is not sufficiently impressed on the minds, or attended to by British officers. Yet it is only in that order that a battalion should at any time perform its marches; that the columns of an army should be permitted to move; that an enemy should be approached; and that safety can be insured to the troops in their transition from one point to another.”—See Dundas’s *Principles of Military Movements*, published in 1788, page 190.—File marching is a vicious and unmilitary mode, only to be applied where a difficulty of ground admits of no greater front.—It would be beneficial to discipline, were the British army to assemble, annually, in divisions, at certain points, to practise evolutions. This would establish a correctness of division marching, and a skill in executing manœuvres that would carry our excellent army to a high state of perfection in discipline.—*The French act on such principles as these.*

more or less ;—the same thing would happen with respect to the second and third, third and fourth subdivisions, and, thus, to the rear of the column ;—from which it would arise, that each of these subdivisions would be obliged to mark time, or step short, more or less time, to regain the distance, a thing that would produce irregular stops, sudden jerks, transitions, and a perpetual undulation in the column.

180. These inconveniences are avoided by each subdivision preserving the same rate of march till the very moment of the occurrence of the obstacle ; and the distances, afterwards, would be very naturally re-established, because each subdivision resuming the original rate of march the moment the obstacle is passed, while the following subdivision being still engaged by the obstacle is obliged to slacken the rate of march, it must follow, that the leading subdivision becomes as far removed from the second, that is, in the same proportion as the second, at first, closed up to the first ; and this being applicable to all the subdivisions, successively, each, after passing the obstacle, must, necessarily, find itself at the proper distance from that which precedes it.

181. No elongation of the column can happen if this rule is adhered to ; but when the column arrives at an acclivity or a mountain, it will happen that the ascending part of it, will close distances in proportion to the rate of alteration in the march occasioned by the ascent ; so that if it were forced to retard the rate of march by a sixth part, for example, it would result, that a sixth part of each subdivision on the acclivity would not find room were the column wheeled into line, while the subdivisions not as yet entered on the ascent, and those that have ascended, are at their proper distances :—if, under these circumstances, the column were obligated to wheel up into line, those subdivisions not at their wheeling distances, would leave out of the line one or more files, which would be attended with no inconvenience, because these supernumerary files of each battalion, might be formed into one or two companies, to constitute a reserve in the rear of their battalions, or to be employed to reinforce such parts of the line as might require it.

182. If, instead of wheeling up to a flank into line, it became

became necessary to form the line on the then front, or, facing to the rear, the less space the column occupied in depth, so much the sooner would the line be formed; and, therefore, it is demonstrated, that the principle just established offers the advantage of rendering the march of a column quicker and less fatiguing, without exposing it to any danger, in case of attack.

183. As often as the head of a column descends a mountain, or along a declivity, it must preserve the same rate of march as in plains.

184. When the commanding officer deems it necessary to accelerate or retard the rate of march, he will transmit his orders to the different lieutenant colonels of battalions, directing them to regulate themselves, respectively, by that preceding them; and he will, himself, order the step to be quickened, or the reverse, in the leading battalion, till the rate of march is such as he may wish to establish.

185. Should the column consist of several battalions, the commander will, always, station an aid-de-camp in the rear of the column, to inform him whether the rear finds any difficulty in keeping up.

186. In marching in column of companies, should want of space require the breaking off of some files, the captains shall break off such files from the flanks; but if the want of room requires a diminution of the half of the front, subdivisions must be formed in preference.

• 187. Subdivisions ought to be formed, at once, by the whole battalions, by one word of command; but to form companies from subdivisions, it is a matter of indifference whether the movement is successive, or executed by all the subdivisions at once: when the breadth of the narrowest part of a defile can be previously known, it is preferable, in a column of subdivisions, that before entering, the necessary number of files should be broke off, at once, by order of the commanding officer: and when a deficiency of space in front obliges a subdivision to resume the cadenced step, it must march, at the same rate, as when in column of route.

188. Subdivisions must step out well in obliquing when the front of a company is diminished or increased; and files, in breaking off, or in forming up again, must follow

follow this rule. In diminishing, or increasing the front of companies, successively, it is of the utmost importance that no subdivision should march slower, nor step shorter, while the preceding one is executing the movement, to avoid an elongation of the column.

189. It has been demonstrated in this article, that, exclusive of the officer commanding the subdivision, a column of route cannot march on a less front than six men, without lengthening out the column; a column of route marching on a front of three, exclusive of the officer commanding the subdivision, would occupy double the space that it would in line; and if it were attacked, unexpectedly, it would run a risk of being beat before it could form. From these considerations, it becomes eligible, when near an enemy, to march with a cadenced step, and closed ranks, provided the breadth of the roads does not admit of a front of six men, exclusive of the officer.

190. If a column meets with a pass so narrow as to require defiling with one or two in front, the commander of the column will order one or two files to pass at a time; the files ought to follow each other as close as possible, without losing time: the subdivisions will form up in proportion as they pass; the head of the column marches forward till a sufficient space intervenes between it and the defile, to contain the whole of the battalion in close column; and it must then halt, and wait till the rear may have passed the defile.

Article Third.

Change of Direction of the open Column on the march, at full Distance of Companies or Subdivisions.*

Changement de Direction en Colonne, avec Distance entière.

(P. XIV. Fig. 1. and 2.)

191. The commander intending to have this movement executed, must intimate the same to the captain leading the first subdivision of the column, he himself, immediately,

* See Rules—Battalion, § 112, 113, and 114, for the wheel on the pivot-flank, on the march, in the French system, is on a momentarily fixed pivot, as far as regards the pivot-man. When the wheel,

mediately, repairing to the spot where the movement is to commence; he is to place himself there, whether the wheel is to be on the pivot, or reverse flank, as represented Plate XIVth, figures 1st and 2d, and remains in that situation till the rear subdivision of his battalion is up to him.

192. The director of each subdivision is to conduct himself so as to pass before, and close to the head of the horse of the commander; and when there, ^{the} ~~will~~ ^{captain} cause the subdivision to change direction, according to the principles laid down in the *Discipline of the Platoon*, and by the words of command directed to be used there.

193. When the column changes direction on the reverse flank, being that opposite to the one the director is on, the lieutenant colonel must observe, that the director moves, accurately, on the wheeling portion, or arc of a concentric circle, without deviating to the right or left of that curve.

194. As often as remarkable or distinct objects, do not present themselves in the new direction, to the director of the leading subdivision, to serve as a distinct point of view, the adjutant-major must step, beforehand, to the front, to the distance of thirty or forty paces, and the leading director, as soon as he has turned, or wheeled, must fix on two points on the ground, in the straight line running from himself to between the heels of the adjutant-major who faces towards the column; and this leading director will assume new points to march on, in proportion as he advances.

195. The adjutant must be vigilant in observing, that the directors conduct their march on the commander placed at the wheeling point, and that they, respectively, graze the head of his horse †.

196. In

wheel, on the march, is made on the reverse flank (*sur le côté opposé au guide*,) it is on a moveable pivot; in which case the pivot-man takes steps of six inches, in order that the men towards the flank describing the larger concentric curve, may be enabled to conform their step, and preserve their dressing.—See *Preface by the Translator*.

† See Rules—Battalion—Points of Formation, § 84, Number 4. *Adjutant*, derived from *adjuvare* to help or assist.

196. In a column formed of several battalions, the commander of the second battalion will post himself at the wheeling point in the situation of the first, at the moment of his relinquishing it, this constant succession taking place till the rear of the column comes up; and the adjutant-major of the leading battalion, only, is to place himself thirty or forty paces in front, on the new direction, the heads of the following battalions marching in the path chalked out by the preceding one.

Remarks on the Changes of Direction of a Column.*

Observations relative au Changemens de Direction en Colonne.

197. It has been pointed out in the *discipline of the platoon*, how important it is, that each subdivision should execute, successively, its change of direction, precisely, on the same ground, where the leading one effected it, and arrive there at right angles to the *line* passing through the flank of the column; and then march on wheeling: it has been shewed how important it is, that the ground should be cleared, and the initial wheeling point disengaged, always, in such manner, that the wheeling subdivision may, at no time, obstruct the movement of the succeeding one, and that the director of each subdivision situated on the proper pivot flank on which the direction is changed, should neither step out, nor step shorter in wheeling, than is directed: the deeper the column is, the more strictly ought these principles to be adhered to, because an almost insensible

* "The movements of the open column are particularly necessary, when a line in order of battle is to extend in the same direction to either flank, in order to follow the movements of an enemy, or to outflank him if he remains posted."

"By this simple movement, the flank of an enemy is gained by troops accustomed to diligence and precision in the execution of their marches; nor (where the ground allows of it) is there any manœuvre of a great army more important, or that can be more securely or effectually practised against an enemy inaccurate and inferior in discipline, who in attempting the counter-movement, is generally thrown into confusion. The battles of Prague, of Rossbach, of Lissa, among others, are examples of this truth, and of the superior movements of the Prussian troops."—See Dundas's *Principles of Military Movements*, published in 1788, pages 106, and 195.

insensible error committed at the head of the column, would, by communication along an extensive column, increase infinitely; a circumstance which the commander, and adjutants, must prevent by every possible effort.

198. When a battalion is undergoing a course of discipline, and not acting with others, the commander has no occasion to post himself at the wheeling point, where it will be sufficient to station a marker, or camp-colourman.

Article Fourth

When the battalion open column, at full distance, changes direction, into which the rear companies are filed in quick time, previous to halting, or prolonging the new direction.

Changer de direction en colonne, avec distance entière, par la prompte manœuvre.

199. Changes of direction by the *quick manœuvre*, or, filing the rear companies in quick time, consist in moving, rapidly, a column in march, on a new line of direction, by filing the companies into it from the nearest flank, instead of continuing to wheel them, successively, into it, at the point where the leading company commenced the movement.

(Plate XIV. Fig. 3.)

200. Thus, suppose an open column, marching with the right in front, is to change direction to the left, by the quick manœuvre, the commander will caution the captain of the leading company that he is to turn, or wheel his subdivision on the march, to the left, pointing out, at the same time, to the director on the pivot flank of that subdivision, the point in front towards which he is to march, after having wheeled; and if no distinct object offers for the director of the leading company to conduct himself on, the commander will, in that case, send forward the adjutant-major 30 or 40 paces in front, in order to post himself on the new direction*.

201. The leading company will wheel to the left, by word of command from the captain; and the director on the

* See Rules, battalion, points of formation, § 84, No. 7.
See Rules, battalion, § 85, No. 7.

the left, will, then, prolong the new line, according to the instructions given in No. 194 of this article.

202. When, at least, two companies are in the new direction, the lieutenant colonel will give the word,

1. *The rear companies will file, in quick time, into the new direction, from the right flank. (Prompte manœuvre par le flanc droit.)*
2. *Six rear companies, Quick = MARCH. (Six derniers pelotons, pas accéléré = Marche.)*

203. At the word, *march*, all the companies, excepting those that have wheeled into, and are on the new direction, shall turn to the right on the march, into file, assuming the quick step; the companies conducted, each, by its captain, who has shifted to the right flank, where he places himself by the side of his director of the right, march, thus, to the right flank, towards the new direction, entering, successively, into the column, inclining, as they tend towards the column, to its head, while it continues to prolong the new direction; and each company, in entering the column, must take a direction parallel to the preceding company already arranged there, and marching on.

204. As soon as each captain of a company shall arrive as far as the line passing through the directors of the left of those companies already arranged in the column, he will halt in his own person, allowing his company to file past him, and seeing that the director of the right conducts the company parallel to the preceding one: and when the directing serjeant of the left is up to the captain, he (the captain) commands,

1. *Company. (Peloton.)*
2. *Halt. (Halte.)*
3. *Front. (Front.)*
4. *MARCH. (Marche.)*
5. *Take the touch of the elbow from the left. (Guide à gauche.)*

205. These words of command succeed each other rapidly.

At the second word, the company shall halt.

206. At the third, the company faces to the front; the captain takes his situation two paces in front of the centre, and the director of the left will, quickly, cover the preceding directors.

207. The

207. The word, *march*, shall be pronounced at the instant when the company is at its proper distance from the preceding ; the company will step off, smartly, together, regularly, taking the step from the preceding one ; and the director of the left follows in the path of the one before him.

208. At the fifth word, the platoon will bear and dress to the left, gradually, touching with the elbow lightly towards the director of the left, if there has been any opening among the files ; and the company will march by the left, where the director is on the pivot flank.

209. The commander must follow the movement of the companies that file to a flank, seeing that they incline, on the march, towards the head of the column, so that when they enter it, there may not be too much distance between them ; and to insure the proper distance, each company, in entering the column, ought to close towards the preceding one.

210. The adjutant-major marches opposite to the leading director, observing that this latter, and the following one, march, accurately, on the given line.

211. The adjutant superintends the march from his situation opposite to the rear companies.

212. This movement, with the left in front, is executed by the opposite means of procedure.

Remarks on filing the rear companies into the column, which is termed the quick manœuvre.*

Observations relatives à la prompte manœuvre.

213. It is of the greatest importance that the companies arriving in the column, should never lose their distances ; and it is for this reason that they are directed to incline towards the head of the column in filing, and to march in quick time, without doing which, the distance must, inevitably, be lost : and it is for the same reason that the captains are directed, when arrived with their companies in the column marching on, to give the various words of command, rapidly, and to give the word, *march*, before that of *march by*, or, *take the light touch of the elbow from the left*.

214. If

* See Rules, battalions, § 126, 121.

214. If it were deemed necessary, at the commencement, the two companies at the head of the column, might be turned on the march, and filed to the flank, at the same time with those that follow ; and they would be conducted so as to enter square, or at right angles to the new direction, to be taken up, on which having placed their pivot flanks, they would be ordered to face, and prolong it.

215. Should the commander *halt* the battalion before all the companies have filed into the column, those, only, would halt, that had fully established themselves in the column ; those companies filing, would continue their march, inclining to the rear, and enter the column, halting, fronting and dressing at their proper pivot distances from these preceding them, respectively ; and if the column should have wheeled up into line, these rear companies would, one after the other, wheel up, also, into line.

Article Fifth.

To halt the Column.*

Arrêter la Colonne.

216. The column is halted by the commander, who gives these words,

1. *Column.* (*Colonne.*)

2. HALT. (*Halte.*)

217. At the word, *halt*, which is to be repeated by the captains commanding companies, at the instant they hear it, the column shall halt ; and no director must stir, even though he should not be at his proper distance from the preceding one, and though he may not be covering those before him in column.

218. The column being halted, if the commander intends to form the line, he is to place himself a little in front of the leading director, whom he is to face ; and the leading director, and following one, must turn their eyes towards the commander, to conform readily to any direction he may deem it requisite to give them.

219. Should the commander judge it proper to place the directors on a general line, he will place the two first

on

* See Rules, battalion, § 118.

on the line of direction ; immediately, afterwards, commanding,

Directors cover your file-leaders in column. (Guides à vos chefs de files.)

220. At this word of command, all the directors towards the rear of the column, shall, nimbly, cover the two first, precisely at their company distances from each other, and the commander will correct any inaccuracies in their covering in column, afterwards commanding,

Left (or right) = Dress. (À gauche (ou à droite) = alignement.)

221. At this word, each company shall dress to its director, by closing to the left ; the captains commanding companies, shall place themselves two paces without their directors, causing their respective companies to align, quickly, parallel to that immediately preceding : and they will, then, command (*eyes*) *Front (fixe)*, stepping, nimbly, to their places in column.

222. Should the commander deem it unnecessary to establish the directing serjeants on a general line, he would correct any inaccuracy in the position of any director, too much within or without the flank of the column, by saying, *Director of such a company, (or of such companies) to your right, or, to your left ;* and, on hearing this, the directors named, shall place themselves on the line of direction, all the other directors standing fast.

223. If, finally, the general directors march on the pivot flank of the column, the commander having halted it, will place himself behind the bearer of the colours, ascertaining from that situation whether or not he and the general director of the head of the column are, accurately, standing on the prolongation of the two points in front of the column, and on which they marched ; if not on this line, the commander will place them on it ; and the adjutant, in like manner, will ascertain, and rectify, if necessary, the situation of the general director of the rear of the column, which being accomplished, the commander orders,

1. *Directors cover on the line. (Guides sur la ligne.)*

224. At this word of command, the director situated on the pivot flank of each company, shall step, nimbly, on the line of the general directors, facing towards the head of the column ; the adjutant-major, situated in front of

the general director of the head of the column towards which he is faced, and the adjutant, placed in the rear of the general director of the rear, shall, quickly, and readily, align the directors of companies.

225. The commander having verified the position of the directors, orders,

2. *Left (or, right) = DRESS.* (*A gauche (ou, à droite) = alignement.*)

226. At this word, all the companies shall dress, laterally, to their respective directors, as their points of appui; and will be correctly, and quickly, aligned by their captains, who, for this purpose, have placed themselves two paces on the outside of their respective directing sergeants.

Remark.

Observation.

227. The mode pointed out in No. 219 of this article, for placing the company directors of a column, on a general line, can only be applicable to an open column, at full distance, consisting of one, or of two battalions at most; if the number of battalions exceeded this, the commander of the column, would order the colours and general directors of each battalion on the line to be established, as will be fully treated of, hereafter, in the *section of evolutions of the line.*

Article Sixth.

To close to half distance, or, to form close, from open column.

Serrer la colonne à distance de section, ou en masse.

228. The battalion being in column of companies, at full distance, is closed to half distance, by the following words of command, given by the commander:

1. *The column will close to half distance*.* (*A distance de section, serrez la colonne.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

229. At the word, *march*, which shall be repeated by all

* When a Prussian open column is to form close column, or is to close

all the captains of companies, excepting by that of the leading one, the company at the head of the column, if halting, stands fast, its captain giving the word, *left (or, right)* DRESS. (*A gauche (ou, à droite) alignement*; but if the column is marching, the captain of the leading platoon, on hearing the first caution, given by the commander, shall order,

1. *Company.* (*Peloton.*)

2. HALT. (*Halte.*)

3. *Left (or, right)* = DRESS. (*A gauche, (ou, à droite) = alignement.*)

230. At the word, *march*, given by the commander of the battalion, all the companies, excepting that of the head, shall step off together, each being halted, as above, by its captain, when at half distance from the preceding company.

231. At the instant when each company halts, the director of the left, if the right is in front, or, the director of the right, if the left is in front, shall place himself, accurately, and actively, covering the preceding directors; and the captain moves two paces without, or on the outside of his director, giving the word, *left (or, right)* = DRESS. (*A gauche, (ou, à droite) = alignement.*)

232. The company being dressed, the captain shall order, (*eyes*) FRONT (*fixe,*) moving to the distance of two paces before the centre of his company.

233. The covering of the directors in closing up, need not be particularly attended to, previous to the halt; it being sufficient that each of them marches in the path chalked out for him by the preceding one.

234. The commander situated on the pivot flank of the column, towards the head, superintends the execution of the movement, observing, that the captains halt their companies at subdivision-distance from that which precedes.

435. The adjutant-major will post himself at the distance of some paces in front of the leading company, facing its director who is on the pivot flank; and he shall carefully establish the accuracy of the position of each di-

R 2

rector,

close to half distance, the head of the column is seldom halted to effect either. The head of the column steps short, while the rear companies close up: or the head of the column continues marching in ordinary time, while the companies in the rear, close up in quick time.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, pages 312, 318.

rector, as each of them arrives on the line of direction passing through the flanks.

236. The adjutant shall, from his situation on the flank of the rear company, aid in establishing the accuracy of the movement.

237. To form close, in lieu of column at half distance, the commander will substitute, *to the front*, instead of, *to half distance*, in giving the word of command; otherwise, as detailed.

238. The captains of companies shall conform to all that has been prescribed above, excepting that they are not to halt their companies till within three paces of the preceding one; and the fourth rank shall close up within one pace of the rear rank of their company, when such company has dressed.

Article Seventh.

To march in close column, or in column at half distance.

Marcher en colonne à distance de section, ou en masse.

239. A column at half distance, or a close column, is put in march from a halt, by the same words of command made use of, if the column were an open one, at full company distance; and the commander gives the words of command requisite.

240. The means of preserving the line of direction of a column at half distance, or of a close column, are the same as those used for an open column at full distance, with the exception of general directors.

241. When the commander means to halt the column marching at half distance, or the close column, he is to give the words of command directed to be used for halting an open column at full distance; and if, afterwards, he may deem it necessary to give a general directing line to the directors on the pivot flank, he will make use of the means and words of command prescribed in No. 219 of article fifth.

242. In columns at half distance, or in close column, the captains commanding companies, shall repeat the words, *march*, or, *halt*, as is done in the case of a column at full distance of companies, being the regular open column.

Article

Article Eighth.

When the open column at half distance wheels into a new direction on a moveable pivot.

Changemens de direction en colonne, à distance de section.*

(Pl. XV. Fig. 1.)

243. A column in march, at half distance, that is to change its direction, either on the pivot, or reverse flank, will effect the movement, on the same principles, and by the same words of command, as a column at full distance, excepting that in changing direction on the reverse flank, the pivot-man of each company must take steps of one foot, in lieu of six inches; for without this, the initial point of wheeling would not be disengaged, or cleared, sufficiently soon, since the distance between the companies is, by one half, less than when the column is at full distance, a circumstance which requires that the pivot-man should step out in the same proportion, in order not to retard the march of the succeeding company.

Article Ninth.

When a close column halted changes its direction.

Changement de direction en masse.

244. When a close column is to change its direction, it is halted, if marching, and the movement is effected by filing from the flanks of companies, or grand divisions, in the following manner.

(Pl. XV. Fig. 2.)

245. The battalion (*a*) having the right in front, and the commander intending to place it on the line (*e b*) is to point out to the adjutant-major the tree (*b*) supposed to be the point of direction of the right; the adjutant-major will, immediately, place two markers on the new
R 3 direction;

* It is proper again to remark, that the movement in the French service, on a moveable pivot, bears an analogy to that in the English service, only, when the French movement is made on the reverse flank. The English wheel on a moveable pivot, made to the pivot flank, is diametrically opposite to the French one in principle. Which of the two modes is the more eligible, we are not, here, deciding.—See Preface,

direction; as (*e d*) distant from each other something less than the front of the column, the first of them being placed in front of the place where the right-hand file will be; which being effected, the commander orders,

1. *The close column will change its direction by filing from the right flank. (Changement de direction par le flanc droit.)*

2. *Battalion, to the right = FACE. (Bataillon = à droite.)*

3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

246. At the second word of command, the captain commanding each grand division, shall move to the side of the director of the right; and the column will face to the right.

247. At the word, *march*, the grand divisions shall march off together; the director of the right of that of the head of the column, will from the first step, proceed parallel to the two marking men previously stationed on the line of direction; the captain commanding the grand division stands fast, but sees it file past him, and, as soon as the director of the left shall have passed him, will command,

1. *Company (or Grand Division). Peloton (ou Division*.)*

2. HALT. (*Halte.*)

3. FRONT. (*Front.*)

4. Left = DRESS. (*A Gauche = Alignement.*)

248. At the fourth word of command, the grand division will dress forward to the markers, and shall be, quickly, aligned by the captain commanding it.

249. The director of the right of each of the following grand divisions must conform himself to the direction of the director of the right of the grand division which precedes his own in the order of the column, in such a manner as to enter on the new direction, parallel to that
grand

* In this line, it is evident, that the close column is supposed to consist of companies, or, grand divisions, it being understood that the French substantive "*subdivision*" means an *inferior portion of the battalion*, we have rendered it above, from a consideration of the context "*grand division*." A reference to the plate ascertains this clearly.

grand division, and at three paces of distance from its rear rank.

250. Each captain commanding a grand division must stop in his own person, when he arrives on the line of the directors of the left, of the grand divisions already placed on the new direction, seeing his grand division file past him, and conforming himself, in order to halt, and dress it, to the directions given in Nos. 87 and 88 of this *Section*.

(Pl. XV. Fig. 2.)

251. If the commander, instead of ordering the column to change direction to the left, by filing from the right; should see it necessary to change direction to the right, by filing from the left, so as to place the column at right angles to the original direction, he will point out to the adjutant-major the tree (*f*) supposed to be the distant point of formation, through which the line of direction runs; the adjutant-major must place two camp-colour-men, immediately, on the new direction (*bg*) distant from each other somewhat less than the front of the leading grand division of the column, placing the first just in front of the left file of that grand division, that is, in the front of the place where the left will be, after changing the direction; this being accomplished, the commander orders,

1. *The close column will change its direction, by filing from the left flank. (Changement de direction par le flanc gauche *.)*

2. *Battalion, to the left FACE. (Bataillon = à gauche.)*

3. *MARCH. (Marche.)*

252. At the second word, all the grand divisions will face to the left; and the captains commanding them are to post themselves by the side of their directors of the left.

253. At the word, *march*, all the grand divisions shall step off together, each conducted by its captain.

254. The leading grand division is to direct its march, and shall be halted and dressed, as directed above, in changing direction from the other flank, with this only difference, that the captain commanding this grand division shall

* See Rules—Battalion Close Column, § 141.

shall conduct it till his director of the left shall have arrived, nearly, at the situation of the marker (*g*), and shall halt it an instant before it arrives there: and the same shall take place respecting each of the other grand divisions.

255. The commander must always place himself on the flank from which the grand divisions file to the new direction, giving attention that each enters parallel to the preceding one, and keeps at the prescribed distance from it.

256. The adjutant-major must, always, place himself some paces in front of the director of the leading grand division, facing towards him, and establishing, correctly, each director of the left, as he comes up, on the perpendicular line passing along the flank of the column.

257. The adjutant must overlook the detail of the movement, on the flank of the rear grand division.

Remarks on the changes of direction of the close column, by filing from the flanks of grand divisions.

Observations relatives aux changemens de direction en masse par le flanc des subdivisions.

258. In order that this movement may be executed with facility and precision, it is necessary that the leading grand division should unmask, or uncover, entirely, the front of the column; thus, if the movement is made from the right flank, it is necessary that the director of the left of that grand division should arrive, at least, on the spot where that of the right had been, in order that each of the following grand divisions, having, at least, the extent of its front to march, to carry it on the new direction, and passing its left over the ground the right had been on, may, at the word *halt*, given by the captain commanding it, be found in a parallel direction to the leading grand division, in its entire extent of front.

259. By pursuing this method, any direction may be given to a close column, of whatever number of battalions it may consist.

(Pl. XV. Fig. 2.)

260. In fact, the column may be established on any direction included within the semicircle (*i, k, l*); and if it

it countermarches, the requisite direction may be given in the opposite semicircle (*m, n, o*).

261. If no tree (*b*, or *f*), or any other distinct object in lieu of it presents itself, the commander must, himself, place two camp-colour-men on the new direction to be established.

Article Tenth.

The Countermarch.*

La Contre-marche.

262. If the column is at full, or half-distance, the countermarch is executed as directed in the *discipline of the platoon*; the commander substitutes the word *battalion*, instead of *platoon*, and each captain must put before the cautionary word *company*, which precedes that of *halt*, the appellation of *first*, *second*, &c. according to the number of his company.

263. If the close column is to countermarch, the following means and words of command will be practised.

264. The close column being supposed formed of grand divisions,

* See Rules—Battalion Countermarch in Column, § 100.—A Prussian company countermarches close along its own front or rear, and changes its ground the exact depth of a company to the front, or rear of its situation. If the countermarch is by successive files, the company shifts its ground to a flank, a space equal to the extent of its front, at the same time that it also changes ground a space equal to its depth, to front, or rear, according as the countermarch is before or behind the situation it originally stood on. A French company countermarches opposite to, but at a small distance from its front, dressing up and placing its front rank on its original ground, with the centre and rear ranks on new ground. An English company countermarches before or behind its ground, at a small distance from it, placing the front rank on its original ground, and the centre and rear ranks on new ground. The files, after wheeling on a moveable pivot, move to their situations, diagonally, across the area the company originally stood on. In countermarching, the Prussians go over the least degree of ground; and the English over less than the French; whose mode ensures great accuracy, from dressing forward in line, to the original position of the front rank.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, pages 259, 260, 261.—Countermarching a battalion by files from the centre; from either flank; from both flanks; or by companies from, and on the centre, are movements peculiarly Prussian.—See *Tactique*, pages 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274.

divisions, with the right in front, the lieutenant colonel commands,

1. *The close column will countermarch* *. (*Contre-marche.*)

2. *The column will face to the right.* (*Bataillon par le flanc droit.*)

3. *To the right* = FACE. (*à droite.*)

4. *The even grand divisions will march, or lead out.* (*Divisions paires en avant.*)

5. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

(Pl. XVI. Fig. 1.)

265. At the third word of command, the whole column will face to the right, the captains commanding grand divisions shall move, respectively, to the side of their director of the right; and the director of the left of each grand division, shall face to the right about, exactly on his ground.

266. At the word, *march*, the even, or left-hand grand divisions, shall march from the right flank in order to uncover the odd, or right-hand grand divisions; and the directors who have faced to the right about, stand fast.

267. When the rear file of the grand divisions marching shall have, nearly, uncovered the director of the right of those standing fast, the lieutenant colonel shall command,

6. *Even and odd (or, right and left) grand divisions to the left countermarch.* (*Divisions paires et impaires par file à gauche.*)

7. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

268. At the word, *march*, which shall be given at the instant when the grand divisions marching, or leading out, have cleared the front of those halting, all the grand divisions shall accomplish the countermarch, conformable to the directions laid down in the *discipline of the platoon*; and those that have marched out of the column, having effected the countermarch on the outside of it, shall continue to march on, till in their respective places in the close column.

269. Each grand division having arrived, nearly, opposite

* See Rules—Battalion Close Column Countermarch, § 143.

posite to its director of the left, the captain commanding it orders,

1. *Such a grand division (or, it may be) Grenadiers. (Telle grand division (ou, bien) Grenadiers).*

2. HALT. (*Halte.*)

3. FRONT. (*Front.*)

270. Each grand division having fronted, the captain commanding it shall move to the distance of two paces on the outside of the director of the left, commanding when there,

By the right forward = DRESS. (*à droite* = *alignement*).

271. At this command, the grand division shall dress up to its director of the left, the captain forming the alignment on a line perpendicular to that of the directors; which being finished, he shall order (*eyes*) FRONT (*fixe*), taking his own place in front of the centre of his grand division; the director of the left, placed on the line of the pivots, shall move along the front of the grand division to his place on the left; and the director of the right shall occupy his proper situation on the right, that has been recently left by the other director.

272. The countermarch with the left in front, is executed on the same principles; in this case, as in the preceding, the even grand divisions lead out to countermarch without the column.

273. Were the close column formed of companies, instead of grand divisions, the even, alternate, or left companies, would lead out to accomplish the countermarch on the flank, or outside of the column*.

274. In the first battalion, the grenadiers execute the same movements as the even grand divisions; and in the second, they are to conform to the directions prescribed for the odd grand divisions.

275. The commander situated on the pivot flank superintends the general execution of the movement.

276. The countermarch being accomplished, the adjutant-

* It appears that the odd companies, or right-hand companies, are, the *first, third, fifth, and seventh*, and also grenadiers when on the left of the second battalion. The even companies are, the *second, fourth, sixth, and eighth*, as also the grenadiers. These companies are left hand, and alternate companies.

tant-major is to post himself near the rear grand division now become the front one, and the adjutant, with the front grand division now, by countermarching, become the rear one.

Article Eleventh.

To form close column of two companies, or grand divisions, from a halted close column of companies, right or left in front.

*En colonne par peloton, en masse de pied ferme, la droite ou la gauche en tête, former les divisions *.*

277. To the close column of companies, with the right in front, in order to form grand divisions, the commander gives the following orders :

1. *Alternate companies will form column of grand divisions. (Formez les divisions.)*

2. *The even companies will face to the left. (Pelotons pairs par le flanc gauche.)*

3. *To the left = FACE. (à gauche.)*

4. *MARCH. (Marche.)*

(Pl. XVI. Fig. 2.)

278. At the third word, all the even, or left-hand companies, shall face to the left, and the captains of these companies are to move to the side of their director of the left.

279. The odd, or right-hand companies, and their captains, stand fast ; but the directors of the right and left of these companies shall place themselves, facing to the right, in front of the file, respectively, next to them, bearing the right arm, gently, against the breast of the front rank men of these files, in order, thus, to mark the line for the left companies to dress on.

280. At the word, *march*, the even companies, only, shall lead, or march out of the column ; and the captains of these companies stand fast, letting their companies file past them ; and when these companies have, nearly, cleared the column, they shall command,

1. *Com-*

* See Rules—Battalion, § 147.—The Prussian battalions form also grand divisions on the march, by obliquing (always in ordinary time) the left companies into line with the right ; or the reverse.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, pages 317, 318.

1. *Company.* (*Peloton.*)

2. HALT. (*Halte.*)

3. FRONT. (*Front.*)

281. The captains of the even companies, having given these words of command, are to move up to the side of the man of the front rank, on the left of the first, or right-hand company of their grand division, dressing, in their own persons, correctly, on the front rank of that company.

282. The directors of the left of the second companies shall move, at the same time, opposite to the front of one of the three files on the left of his company, facing to the right, and covering, correctly, the two directors of the first company of the grand division.

283. The director of the left of each second company, being, thus, situated, the captain of this company commands,

By the right forward = DRESS. (*à droite alignement.*)

284. The second company shall dress up into the alignment of the first; the man of the front rank opposite to the director of the left, without preceding his rank, shall bear, lightly, his breast against the right arm of this director, and the captain of the second company shall direct the alignment on this man; the dressing being established, the captains of the second companies shall command (*eyes*) FRONT, (*fixe,*) but shall not post themselves in front of the centre of their companies.

285. The lieutenant-colonel perceiving the grand divisions formed, must command,

Directors to your = PLACES. (*Guides = à vos places.*)

286. At this command, the directors shall, quickly, resume their places; and the director of the left of the first company is to pass to his place in the rear, through the interval of the captain of the second company, who, with his covering serjeant, must fall back, for a moment, for that purpose.

287. At this word of command also, the captains of the first companies, who have remained in front of the centre of their companies, shall place themselves, respectively, two paces in front of the centre of their grand divisions.

288. This movement, with the left in front, is executed by the contrary means of procedure, the first com-

panies shall conform to what has been directed to be done, above, by the second ones ; and the directors placed before the right and left-hand files of the second companies, must face to the left. At the word, *directors to your places*, given by the lieutenant-colonel, the directors of the right, and the captains of the second companies, shall retake their places in the centre of the grand division, in the front and rear ranks : and the captain of the grand division, who is in the place to be occupied by the captain of the second company, shall move out to the distance of two paces in front of the centre of the grand division.

289. The commander situated on the pivot flank, superintends the execution of the movement.

290. If the column, instead of being close, is an open one at full, or half distance, the captains of the second companies, after giving the word *front*, move in front of the centre of their companies, and give the words, if the right is in front,

1. *The company is to advance.* (*Peloton en avant.*)

2. *March by the right.* (*Guide à droite*.*)

3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

291. The director of the right of each platoon marches in such a line as would conduct him to the side of the left-hand man of the first company of his grand division ; the second companies being arrived as far as the rear rank of the first company of the grand division they belong to, respectively, shall be halted by their different captains, who are to give the words,

1. *Company.* (*Peloton.*)

2. HALT. (*Halte.*)

3. *By the right forward* = DRESS. (*à droite* = *alignement.*)

292. At the word, *halt*, the captains, and directors of the left, of the second companies, shall place themselves as has been prescribed in Nos. 281 and 282 of this article.

Remarks

* This cautionary expression of "*Guide à droite*, or *Guide à gauche*," is intended to suggest to the men to which elbow the light touch of *appui* is to be maintained, so as to enable them to march, accurately, without opening out, floating, or waving.

Remarks on forming a column of grand divisions from the halt.

Observations relatives au mouvement de former les divisions de pied ferme.

293. This movement may be considered as the basis of all deployments, and it must, frequently, be practised, in this stage of elementary discipline, with the utmost correctness.

294. If, when the second companies are leading out, the lock-step is not maintained, there will be openings between the files, when the companies are fronted.

295. If the captain halts his company prematurely, space will be wanting to form the company in; and the files which may not, thus, have cleared the flank of the standing company, must, necessarily, push the others, laterally, in order to make room for themselves.

296. If, on the contrary, he is too late in halting his company, the men must, afterwards, incline again towards the company they are to form on; and in deploying a column into line, either of these faults would mislead the following companies.

297. As often as a director of a company moves to the front of it, to mark off the direction, he must be very careful in placing himself so as to be exactly opposite to one of the three exterior files of his company aligned; if he placed himself too far from the standing company, so that no one of the files of his company was opposite to him, the captain of his company would not have a determined point within it, on which to dress it.

PART IV.

Different modes of forming in line from open, and close column.

Differentes manières de passer de l'ordre en colonne, à l'ordre de bataille.

Article First.

Manner of ascertaining the line to be formed on.

Manière de déterminer la ligne de bataille.

298. The line may be marked off in three different manners.

299. 1st, By placing two camp-colour-men in the direction to be given to the line.

300. 2dly, By fixing on a point where the head or the rear is to rest, and choosing, afterwards, a second point on the opposite flank ; by means of which two points, the line is determined.

301. 3dly, In choosing, at first, the points of direction of the two flanks, or wings, and determining, afterwards, by intermediate points, the straight line running between these two points, which may be sometimes both inaccessible.

302. In the first case, the adjutant charged with establishing the line, must place two markers forty or fifty paces from each other in the direction, previously, indicated to him ; and the line passing between these two men, will constitute the general base of the alignment *.

303. In the second case, the point of *appui* must be indicated to the adjutant, and the point of direction or correction on or beyond the opposite flank ; the adjutant must repair to the point of *appui* ; and fix two markers, distant from each other a little less than the extent of the front of the leading subdivision of the column, in the direction pointed out to him : and the first of these markers must be stationed at the point of *appui*.

304. In the third case, where the points of direction of the two flanks are given, the line running between them is determined as follows.

(Pl.

* See Rules—Line, § 84. Points of Formation, 83.—*Appui*.

(Pl. XVI. Fig. 3.)

305. In ascertaining this line, two adjutants, or markers, must be employed, (*a*) and (*b*).

306. The two points given being the steeple (*d*) to the right, and the tree (*c*) to the left, the marker (*a*) shall stop, while the other (*b*) moving to some distance from him towards the right, must bring the marker (*a*) and the tree (*c*) into one and the same straight line.

307. The two markers then march, wheeling as it were to the left on the point (*c*) as a centre, or pivot; and the marker (*b*) during the whole movement, must regulate himself on the marker (*a*), keeping him and the tree (*c*), always in one line.

308. The marker (*a*) during the march, must keep his eyes fixed on the marker (*b*), in order to halt him at the instant when he covers the steeple (*d*).

309. If the marker (*b*) conforms, exactly, to the movement of the other (*a*), in such manner, that the latter covers in the tree (*c*), at the moment when the former appears on (*d*), both must be on the line (*c*) (*d*), and the intermediate points are ascertained*.

310. The two markers being halted, face towards each other; if not accurately on the line, from inattention, the marker (*a*) can rectify the position as follows.

311. Suppose the marker (*a*) perceive the steeple (*d*) without the line, to his left; he will incline a little to the left; the marker (*b*) always intent on keeping the marker (*a*) and the tree (*c*) in one line, follows the movement of the marker (*a*) who halts him, when he covers in the steeple (*d*).

312. If, on the contrary, the marker (*a*) perceived the steeple, or belfry (*d*) to his right, he would incline a little to the right, till the marker (*b*), who followed his movement, covered in, or appeared on, the belfry (*d*).

313. These intermediate points being, thus, ascertained, the line becomes determined.

s 3

Article

* See Line, Part IV. § 179. Taking up lines of march and formation, where this method is detailed, as above. This mode of finding two points, as above, is practised in the Prussian service.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, page 356.—See *Saldern's Tactics*, Alignment, page 73; where this is also explained.

Article Second.

Different modes of forming line, from open column at full distance, with the right or left in front.

Differentes manières de former la colonne, avec distance entière, la droite ou la gauche en tête, sur la ligne de bataille.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1st, To the left (or right) wheel up into.— | } <i>en bataille</i>
<i>line.</i> |
| (à gauche (ou à droite). | |
| 2dly, Forming to the right (or left) flank into.—(Sur la droite, ou, sur la gauche). | |
| 3dly, Forming to the front, by the echelon march into.—(En avant.) | |
| 4thly, Forming fronting to the rear of the march into.—(Face en arrière.) | |

1st, *When the open column, at full distance, with the right in front, is to wheel up to the left, into line.—(Colonne avec distance entière, la droite en tête, à gauche en bataille).*

§ 14. The column is supposed halted; the lieutenant-colonel, having ascertained the accuracy of the position of the directors, shall command,

1. *Left wheel into line. (à gauche en bataille.)*

MARCH*. (*Marche.*)

§ 15. At the first caution, the director of the right of the leading company, shall move, smartly, on the line of directors, facing towards them on the pivot flank, and placing himself so as to be immediately in front of one of the three files on the right of his company when wheeled up into line. The adjutant-major must observe that this director is, thus, properly situated.

§ 16. At the word, *march*, loudly and lively repeated by the captains of companies, the man on the left of the front rank of each company, shall face to the left, bearing his breast, lightly, against the right arm of the director of the left of his company; the companies will wheel to the left, according to the principles of wheeling from a halt, and conformable to the rules detailed in the *discipline of the*

* See Rules—Battalion, § 118.

the platoon, No. 164. Each captain of a company is to face about to his platoon, to conduct the movement; and when the right of his company is within two paces of the line, he will command,

1. *Company.* (*Peloton.*)

2. HALT. (*Halte.*)

317. The company being halted, the captain of it shall place himself on the line, by the side of the man on the left of the company immediately on the right, and aligning himself correctly, commands,

Right = DRESS. (*à droite* = *alignement.*)

318. At this word, the company shall dress into its opening, or situation, between the captain of it and the pivot front rank man on the left, the captain forming the company on that man on the left; the man of the right of the leading company who will find himself opposite to the director of the right of that company who had placed himself on the line of directors on the pivot flank, shall bear his breast lightly against the left arm of his director standing before him.

319. Each captain of a company, having dressed it in the alignment, must order (*eyes*) FRONT (*fixe*), and the lieutenant-colonel shall command,

Directors to your = PLACES. (*Guides* = *à vos places.*)

320. At this word of command, the directing serjeants resume their places in line, passing each through the interval of the captain nearest to them, who, as well as their covering serjeants, fall back, to allow the directors to pass to the fourth rank; and the lieutenant-colonel will, from the right, judge of the accuracy of the alignment, causing it, if necessary, to be rectified by the captains of companies.

321. When the companies are formed in line, the officers and non-commissioned officers in the supernumerary rank, will dress, correctly, at the distance of two paces from the rear rank, which will establish their line with sufficient accuracy.

322. The battalion being correctly aligned, if it forms a part of a line consisting of many battalions, the lieutenant colonel, the adjutant-major, and the adjutant, will occupy their respective situations in line; but if the battalion is at exercise, separately, they will move, generally, to such places as their presence may be required in; and
this

this regulating principle shall be general, after all formations in line.

323. If the column had the left in front, the wheel would be to the *right into line*, according to the same rules and principles; the director of the left of the eighth company would act, on the first cautionary command, as has been directed to be done by the director of the right of the leading company, in No. 315 of this article.

*When the battalion open column wheels into line to the reverse flank *. (Inversion.)*

324. The commander is to suppose the existence of a necessity, sometimes, of wheeling into line, on the flank not the pivot; and to effect this movement, in the readiest manner, he commands, when the right is in front,

1. *By inversion, right wheel into line. (Par inversion, à droite en bataille.)*

2. *Battalion, take the light touch of appui from the right. (Bataillon, guides à droite †.)*

325. At the first command, the adjutant-major shall place himself a little in front of, and facing the director of the right of the leading company, and the adjutant shall place himself, also, a little in the rear of the director of the right of the rear company; the director of the left of the leading company, must place himself, at the same time, on the line of the directors of the right of the column, facing towards them, and posting himself as has been directed in No. 315.

326. At the second word, the adjutant-major and adjutant shall, as quickly as possible, cause the directors of the right to cover each other, on the reverse flank of the column.

327. The commander will, then, order

3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

328. At this word, the man on the right of the front rank of each company must face to the right, bearing his breast,

* See Rules, line movements, page 286, paragraph 14.—Adjutants term this movement, “Clubbing the Battalion.”—See Rules, Battalion, § 136, paragraph first.

† The spirit of this expression is rendered, as the literal sense would not convey the import of the order.

breast, lightly, against the left arm of the director placed before him; and the column will wheel up into line, according to the prescribed principles, which being executed, the lieutenant colonel commands,

Directors to your = PLACES. (*Guides* = *à vos places.*)

2dly, When the battalion open column, with the right in front, is to form to the right flank. (*Colonne avec distance entière, la droite en tête, sur la droite en bataille.*)

(Pl. XVII. Fig. 1.)

329. When the column is to form line, with the right in front, to its right flank, the commander will, beforehand, point out to the adjutant-major where the head is to rest, as also the point of direction of the left; and the adjutant, accompanied by two markers, will proceed to establish them in the line of direction, as follows.

330. The first is to be posted at the point of *appui*, and marks the situation where the front rank man on the right of the battalion, will rest, when in line; the second will be placed on the line, where one of the three files on the left of the leading company will dress up to, when coming into line; and they are stationed with the right shoulder to the battalion when formed in line.

331. The head of the column having arrived, nearly, at the point, or opposite to the point, where the commander means to rest the right, he will order,

1. *The column will form line to the right flank.* (*Sur la droite en bataille.*)

2. *The pivot flank of the column, is the right.* (*Bataillon, guides à droite.*)

332. At the second command, the pivot directors are considered on the right, and the light touch of the elbow is to be towards that flank; and the director of the right of the leading company, shall march straight forward to the point at which this company is to wheel to the right.

333. The directing serjeants of the following companies, will march, respectively, in the track of the director who precedes them.

334. The leading company having arrived, nearly, opposite to the first marker, the captain of that company commands,

Turn, or wheel to the right. (*Tournez à droite.*)

And

And when the company has its right, precisely, opposite to the marker, the captain commands,

MARCH. (*Marche.*)

335. At the word, *march*, the company wheels to the right, according to the principles of wheeling, on the march, to the pivot flank, and the director of the right directs his march, after turning to his right, in such a manner as to conduct the man who is next to him, opposite to the marker of the right; and the captain of the company will march at the distance of two paces in front of its centre.

336. The company being arrived opposite and near to the two markers, the captain of it commands,

1. *Company.* (*Peloton.*)

2. HALT. (*Halte.*)

3. *Right* = DRESS. (*à droite* = *alignement.*)

337. At the second word, the company halts.

338. At the third word, the company shall align; the two front rank men who are close and opposite to the markers, shall bear their breasts, lightly, against their right arms, respectively; the director of the left retires to the supernumerary rank; the captain of the company shall move to the right of his front rank, establishing the dressing on the two men whose breasts touch the right arms of the markers; and this rule is to be observed in regulating and establishing accuracy in all cases of successive formations.

339. The second company shall continue to march straight forward, and when arrived opposite to the left flank of the first, it shall turn, or wheel, to the right, by word of command from the captain, as above, marching afterwards towards the line; the director of the right shall conduct the march so as to arrive by the side of the left-hand man of the first company; and the captain marches at the distance of two paces in front of the centre of his company.

340. When the company shall have arrived within two paces of the line, the captain must halt it, as prescribed above, and move, nimbly, up to the man on the left of the first company, dressing himself, accurately, in the line of the front rank of that company.

341. The director of the left shall, at the same time,
move

move to the front, opposite to one of the three files on the left of his company ; and facing to the right, he shall place himself in the line of the two markers of the first company.

342. The captain of the second company must, then, order,

By the right forward = DRESS. (*à droite* = *alignement*.)

343. The second company must dress up to the line ; and the captain shall direct the alignment on the man of his front rank whose breast bears, lightly, against the right arm of his director of the left.

344. The succeeding companies shall come, thus, one after the other, into line, conforming to the directions prescribed for the second company ; and when the whole battalion is correctly in line, the lieutenant-colonel will command,

Directors to your = PLACES. (*Guides* = *a vos places*.)

345. At this word, the directors retire to their places in line, and the markers, situated in front of the first company, retire also ; the same will take place after all formations in line, and the directors, always, will pass to their places, through the interval of the captain who is nearest to them.

346. The commander follows up the successive formation along the front of the line, and, always, opposite to the company about to wheel, in order to move up to the line ; and from this situation, he is enabled to rectify any error arising from a word of command given too soon, or too late, to the preceding company.

347. The adjutant-major, with the utmost care, must correct the covering of the directors, in proportion as they come on the line, placing himself, for this purpose, some paces behind them on the line : and this rule will be general in all successive formations.

348. An open column, with the left in front, will form to the left flank into line, by the contrary procedure, and words of command. The captains of companies move to the left, in order to align them ; at the command, *directors to your places*, they will move to their situations in line ; and this will, always, be the case, also, when

when an open column, with the left in front, wheels up into line.

Remarks on formations to the right (or left) flank when the companies pass along the rear, to form, successively, in line.

*Observations relatives à la formation sur la droite (ou, sur la gauche) en bataille *.*

349. In order that this movement may be executed with the requisite regularity, it will be advantageous to mark off the line in such manner, that each company, after wheeling, may have, at least, four paces to march, to bring them on the line.

350. In inculcating primary instruction, the line will be established parallel, or nearly so, to the direction of the column; but when the captains of companies, and directing serjeants, understand the mechanism of the movement, the commander will choose oblique directions, in order to habituate the battalion to form line in any direction that may be adopted.

(Pl. XVII. Fig. 1.)

351. When the direction of the line forms a sensible angle with that of the march of the column (*d e*), the commander will point out to the director of the leading company, previous to commencing the movement, an object in front (*f*), in the direction nearly parallel to the line to be formed on; the director of the leading company will, immediately, conduct his march on and towards this point, and his company conforms to the new direction, on receiving a command, or it may be, a caution, from the captain commanding it; each of the rear companies, successively, on the same ground, as they come up, go through the same movement; and by this means, all the companies of the column, coming, one after another to the same point, and turning there, will afterwards have, very nearly, the same number of paces, or steps to take, to carry them to, and behind the line.

352. The captains of companies must not, after placing themselves on the line, give the word, *dress*, till their directing-

* See Rules—Battalion, § 128, 136, paragraph second, § 104, No. 7.

directing-serjeant is, accurately, established on the line, by the adjutant-major: and this rule will be general, in all successive formations.

3dly, *When the open column, at full distance, with the right in front, is to form line on the head company *.*
(*Colonne avec distance entière, la droite en tête, en avant en bataille.*)

353. The column being supposed to arrive, with the right in front, behind the right of the line on which the formation is to take place, the commander will indicate, beforehand, to the adjutant, the point where the head of the column, or the right, is to rest, as also, the point of direction, and correction, on the left; and the adjutant will, immediately, establish the markers on the line, in the manner directed to be done in No. 330 of this article.

354. The head of the column having arrived at about the distance of the front of a company from the two markers established on the line, the commander halts the column, directing the captain of the leading company to march that company up to the line, in contact with the markers; which being effected, the commander orders,

1. *The column will form line on the leading company.*
(*En avant en bataille.*)

2. *Column, march by the right.* (*Bataillon, guides à droite.*)

3. *By companies, left half wheel.* (*Par peloton, demi à gauche.*)

4. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

355. At the word, *march*, all the companies, excepting the leading one established on the line, shall wheel forty-five degrees to the left on a halted pivot; and at the moment when the commander shall judge that they have

VOL. I.

T

wheeled

* See Rules, Battalion, § 158. § 164, No. 5; § 104, No. 6. —In the Prussian service, the outer man in wheeling, takes steps of 32 Rhinish inches. The files, one with another, occupy twenty-one full inches. The quarter circle is one-half part longer than the radius. Combining these considerations, it will result with sufficient accuracy for the formation of an echelon, that the outer wheeling man is to describe the eighth of the circle in half as many steps as there are files in the company. The rule in the British service is analogous to this. The Prussian echellons do not, as formerly, shoulder forward on the march, when near the line: they wheel up 45° on the line itself.— See *Tactique Prussienne*, pages 275, 276.

wheeled sufficiently according to the direction of the line, he is to order,

1. *Forward.* (*En avant.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

(Pl. XVII. Fig. 2.)

356. At the word, *march*, the director of the right of the company, which is nearest to the line, ceasing to wheel, shall march forward, square to his front.

357. At the same word of command, the director of the right of the following company, ceasing also to wheel, shall march on square to his front, following the file of the preceding company that is directly opposite to him, till the moment when that company shall wheel to the right as much as may enable it to march up square to the line; and, then, this director, ceasing to march on the file which was in his front, will continue his march straight forward.

358. The director of the right of each of the following companies, is to act according to the directions detailed in the last paragraph, in regard to the company immediately preceding him.

359. At the instant when the director of the right of each company shall arrive opposite to the file on the left of the company which precedes his own immediately in line, ^{Captain} the must command,

1. *Turn (or wheel) to the right.* (*Tournez à droite*.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

360. These two commands shall be executed as has been prescribed in this article, when *forming to the right flank into line.*

361. Each company is to be halted by the captain of it, when at the distance of two paces from the line; the director of the left of each shall place himself, immediately, on the line, opposite to one of the three files on the left of his company, and the adjutant-major shall correct any error in his position; and having done this, the captain of the company, who, at the same time, has aligned himself on the left of the front rank of the company on the right, shall command,

By

* When this word of command occurs, the reader ought to carry in his mind the nature of this wheel, which is detailed in Nos. 268, 269, and 270, of the *Discipline of the Soldier*. The wheel of *Tournez à droite (ou à gauche)*, is always made on the pivot flank.

By the right forward = DRESS. (*à droite* = *alignement*.)

362. The formation being accomplished, the lieutenant colonel must command,

Directors to your = PLACES. (*Guides* = *à vos places*.)

363. With the left in front, this formation is executed by the contrary means and words of command; the right acting as the left has done here, and the left, as the right, in the above instance.

364. The commander, and the adjutant-major, will, each, discharge the duties in these formations, which they are directed to do, in this article, in forming to the right, or left flank.

Observations on forming a column at full distance of companies to the front of the march by an Echelon movement of the rear companies.

Observations relatives à la formation d'une colonne, avec distance entière, en avant en bataille.

365. The precision of this movement depends on the directions which the companies may be in, at the moment when the commander gives the words, *forward*, MARCH; the commander will ascertain the moment of giving this last word, by considering that if the direction of the line forms with that of the column, nearly a right angle, the companies must wheel the half of this, or one-eighth of the circle; and that the more acute the angle is which these two directions form with each other, so much the more ought the companies to wheel, before they move forward.

(Pl. XVII. Fig. 2.)

366. It is essentially important that each company should so conduct its echelon march, as to turn, or wheel, at the point (*e*) opposite to the place where the captain is to dress on the preceding company, in order to align his own. If the company wheels too soon, the flank of it nearest to the line would be covered by the line, and the company would be obliged to oblique, to clear the flank of the last formed company; if, again, the company should wheel too late, it would pass beyond the flank of the company in line, constituting its point of appui, and would be obliged, to repair this error, to oblique, in moving up to the line.

In both cases, the fault committed by the company, leading the next into error, might communicate itself, successively, as far as the last company.

367. The director of each company must turn, or wheel, as much as is necessary to bring his company up square, or in a parallel direction to the line*.

368. If the angle formed by the line, with the original direction of the column, were so acute, that the companies, in arriving opposite to their respective places of formation in line, should be almost parallel to the line, the captains of companies would not give the word, *turn*, or *wheel to the right* (or, *left*); but would halt their companies two paces from the line, and, in this position, they would give the word, *right* (or *left*) *DRESS*.

369. If, on the contrary, the angle which the line forms with the original direction of the column, were, evidently, more than a right angle, the formation in line, would not be conducted in echelon; but the companies would *form, successively, in line, to the right* (or *left flank*), according to the rules prescribed for these respective formations, when *the right* (or *left*) *is in front*.

370. If a company meets with an obstacle opposing the march to the front, it must *right*, or *left turn*, into file, on the march†, and wheel its flank so as to follow the preceding company; and when the obstacle is cleared, it would form company, from file, on the march, by order from the captain.

4thly,

* In forming line on the head company, in the British service, the requisite degree of wheel, according to the position given to the leading company, is made, *backward*, on the reverse flank. As the French do not wheel *backward* in any case, the wheel in this instance is *forward*, on the pivot-flank; and the head company is moved straight forward into the new position, so that the right flank of the second company arrives in rear of the left of the first; is, there, wheeled parallel to the new line, and is, then, marched up, square, upon that line. *Shouldering forward*, in a formation of this nature, they deem inaccurate, and occasioning loss of time on the march.

† To turn on the march, from line into file—*vide* No. 226 of the *Discipline of the Soldier*.—To wheel the head of a company to the right or left, on the march—*vide* Nos. 125, 126, and 127, of the *Discipline of the Platoon*.—To form company, from file, on the march—*vide* article *fifth* of *Lesson fourth*, of the *Discipline of the Platoon*.

4thly, *When a column, open at full distance of companies, with the right in front, forms line fronting to its then rear. (Colonne avec distance entière, la droite en tête, face en arrière en bataille.)*

371. The column being supposed to arrive, with the right in front, before, or in front of, the right flank of the line to be formed on, the commander must, previously, point out to the adjutant, the spot where the right is to rest, as also, the object of direction, and correction, on the left; the adjutant will immediately proceed to mark off the line, by stationing two camp-colour-men on it, as has been directed to be done in *forming line to the right flank*, from open column.

372. The head of the column having arrived at about the distance of a platoon from the two markers established on the line, the commander will direct the column to halt, and the captain of the leading company to countermarch his company, on the march, so as to come on the line behind, and close to the markers; the company faces, for this purpose, to the right, and wheels in file, and by files, to the left, by word from the captain, crossing the line; and when the leading file has passed the line, by two paces, it will wheel again to the left, in order to march behind the markers, where, when arrived, the captain will front, and align it from the point of appui on the right.

373. In this position the leading company of the column, will be facing towards the column, and as soon as that company is established on the line, the commander orders,

1. *The column will form line on the first company, and fronting to the rear of the march. (Face en arrière en bataille*.)*

2. *The column will face to the right. (Bataillon par le flanc droit.)*

3. To the right = FACE. (*à droite.*)

4. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

T 3

374. At

* See Rules, Battalion, § 136, paragraph third, § 124, gives a part of this movement, with this difference, that the new line fronts as the column does; because the companies do not, as above, countermarch into the new line fronting to the rear of the column, § 104, No. 3.

374. At the third word of command, all the companies, excepting that established on the line, shall face to the right; and the captains of companies must post themselves by the side of their director of the right.

(Pl. XVIII. Fig. 1.)

375. At the word, *march*, all the companies which have faced to the right, shall march off together; the director of the left (*e*) of the company nearest to the line, must step, nimbly, up to the line to mark off the prolongation of it, on which it is to form; he will place himself on the line as has been directed in successive formations, and will indicate to the captain of his company the point, nearly, where he is to cross the line, in order to pass beyond it two paces, and to wheel, then, to the left by files, so as to move with his company parallel to the line, as in (*f*).

376. As soon as the leading file of this company shall have arrived near the left file of the company already formed on the line, the captain is to order,

1. *Company.* (*Peloton.*)

2. *HALT.* (*Halte.*)

3. *FRONT.* (*Front.*)

4. *By the right forward* = *DRESS.* (*à droite* = *alignement.*)

377. The first cautionary word is given, when the company is within two paces of the place where it is to be halted.

378. At the second word, the company shall halt; and if there are any openings between the files, they must close, quickly, to the front.

379. The third word being given, the captain of the company must, immediately, place himself by the side of the man on the left of the company which is dressed in line on his right, aligning himself on the front rank of that company.

380. The fourth word of command is obeyed as has been directed, in No. 343 of this article.

381. All the rear companies shall form, in the same manner, each regulating itself by that which precedes it, in coming on the line; the directors of the left must detach themselves from their companies, when they, relatively, approach within about twelve paces of the line, placing

placing themselves, covering the other directors on the line, so as to be opposite to one of the three files on the left of their company when in line.

382. The line being formed, the commander orders,
Directors to your = PLACES. (*Guides* = à vos places.)

383. This movement, when the left is in front, is executed by the opposite mode of proceeding.

384. The lieutenant colonel and the adjutant-major will discharge the same duties in these formations, as have been prescribed for them, when the column forms *to the right flank* (*sur la droite en bataille.**)

Remark on the formation in Line, fronting to the rear, by an open column at full distance.

Observation relative à la formation d'une colonne, avec distance entière, face in arrière en bataille.

385. When the captains of companies march with them towards the line, they must so direct the march as to cross the line a little behind their director of the left, placed on the line; and, therefore, each director ought to quit his company in sufficient time to be correctly fixed on the line, before his company can arrive opposite to him, to cross it.

Article Third.

When a battalion open column marches up to, and enters a new position at a point where a central company is to rest, from a cessation of movement in the front, and that the rear companies form in line by an echelon movement †.

Formation en bataille composée de deux mouvemens.

386. A column with the right in front, arriving behind

* In the French service, formations of battalions in line-movements, and of companies in battalion-movements, are *successive*, as they come on the line. A general wheel into line is seldom used. Their officers say that time is saved by *successive formations*, by which means an enemy may be received by the part of the line, or battalion, already formed.

† See Rules. Battalion, § 118, § 126, § 127, where this compound, or double movement is used in forming to the front of the march.

hind the line, and prolonging that line, will be halted by the commander, if he sees it expedient to form the line, before the three (or any other number) of rear companies have entered the alignment; and, after ascertaining the accuracy of position of the directors on the pivot flanks on the line, he commands,

1. *Left wheel into line, (à gauche en bataille.)*
2. *The three rear companies will form in line by an echelon movement. (Trois derniers pelotons, en avant en bataille.)*

387. At the second word of command, the captains of each of these three rear companies will command, 1st—*March by the right (Guides à droite)*; 2dly, by companies, *Left half wheel (par peloton demi à gauche.)*

The lieutenant-colonel will afterwards command,
MARCH. (*Marche.*)

388. At the word *march*, given by the commander, and repeated quickly and smartly by the captains of companies, the five first companies will *wheel up to the left, into line*, and the three rear companies will form to the front in echelon, both acting as prescribed for effecting these two movements. The captains of each of the three rear companies shall give the words *forward (en avant)*, and MARCH, when their companies have wheeled the requisite number of degrees.

389. If, instead of arriving in the rear, the column marched up to the front of the line to be formed on, the lieutenant colonel would command,

1. *Left wheel into line. (À gauche en bataille.)*
2. *The three rear companies will file from the right of companies, into the line fronting to the rear. (Trois derniers pelotons, face en arrière en bataille.)*

390. At the second word of cautionary directions, the captains of each of the three companies shall command, 1st, the company will *face to the right (peloton par le flanc droit)*; 2dly, to the right = FACE, (*à droite.*)

The commander then orders,

3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

391. At the word, *march*, given by the commander, and repeated, lively, by the captains of companies, the

five companies having their pivot flanks on the line, will *wheel up to the left into line*; and the three rear companies will file behind the line, and dress forward on it (*face en arrière en bataille*) the companies following, respectively, the rules applying to these different formations.

392. These various movements will be executed by a column with the left in front, according to the same principles.

Article Fourth.

Different modes of forming a column at half distance of companies, in line, with either right or left in front.

Differens moyens de former la colonne à demi-distance, sur la ligne de bataille, la droite ou la gauche en tête.

1st, By wheeling to the left, or right, into line, after the companies have taken wheeling distances, opening out from the head of the column.

2dly, By forming in line to the right or left flank, according as the right or left may be in front.

3dly, By forming to the front, facing in the direction of march of the column.

4thly, By forming in line fronting to the rear of the march of the column.

1st. *When the column, at half wheeling distance, with the right in front, is to wheel to the left into line, by previously taking wheeling distances of companies, opening out, successively, from the head of the column. (Colonne à demi-distance, la droite en tête, à gauche en bataille, en prenant les distances par la tête de la colonne *.)*

393. It is supposed that the column is prolonging the line to be formed on; when the rear company arrives at the point where the left is to rest, the lieutenant colonel halts the column, and commands,

The

* See Rules, battalion, § 153. In the Prussian service, the close column takes distances by putting the leading company in march.—The officer of the next company counts the number of paces establishing the distance of the first, and, then, gives the word, *march*, to his own.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, page 288.

They also open out the column from the rear, each officer halting the preceding company.—See *Saldern's Tactics*, page 101.

The column will take wheeling distances, by opening out from the head. (Prenez les distances par la tête de la colonne.)

394. He will order the captain of the leading company to march off his company ; on which the captain, immediately, orders,

1. *The company is to advance. (Peloton en avant.)*

2. *March by the left. (Guides à gauche.)*

3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

395. The captain of the second company perceiving that his company is, nearly, at its proper distance from the first, shall give the words, *the company will advance—March by the Left*, and then, MARCH, at the moment when he sees his company at the accurate distance from the first : and this will be done, successively, by the companies to the rear of the column, each taking up the step from the one preceding.

396. If the line is to be formed, by wheeling to the left into line, the commander halts the column, at the instant when the rear company has the requisite wheeling distance from that in front of it.

397. The close column takes wheeling distances in the same manner ; and if the column has the left in front, the movement is effected by the same rules ; but by the companies, from the left, acting, successively, as those of the right are here directed to do.

398. The commander is to see that each company steps off at the instant the wheeling distance is open.

399. The adjutant-major is attached to the head of the column, superintending the accuracy of march of the leading director.

400. The adjutant is posted near the director of the rear company.

2dly, *When a column, at half wheeling distance, with the right, or left, in front, is to form line to the right, or left flank. (Colonne à demi-distance, la droite ou la gauche en tête, sur la droite ou sur la gauche en bataille *.)*

401. The movement is to be executed as has been prescribed for a column at full wheeling distance.

3dly, *When a column, at half wheeling distance, is to form forward to the front of the march, in line, by an echelon*

* See Rules, Battalion, § 136, § 104, No. 7, § 128.

*echelon movement. (Colonne à demi-distance, en avant en bataille *.)*

402. This movement cannot be executed at half distance, because the distance between the companies will not admit of a wheel of forty-five degrees; and, therefore, it will be necessary that the column should take wheeling distances as directed, unless it may be deemed more eligible to form close † column in rear of the leading company, and to deploy into line.

4thly, *When a column, at half wheeling distance, is to form line fronting to its then rear. (Colonne à demi-distance, face en arrière en bataille.)*

403. This movement will be executed as has been directed to be done by a column at full distance.

Article Fifth.

Deployment of close columns into line ‡.

Deploiement des colonnes serrées.

404. The means pointed out in this section for changing the direction of a close column, affording a facility for establishing it on any requisite direction, deployments shall be always square, because the first step taken will be to establish the column perpendicular to the line on which it is to deploy §.

405. Thus a close column may form line :

1st, By deploying, fronting as it then stands.

2d, By counter-marching on its ground, and deploying, fronting, thus, to its former rear ;

3d, By facing to the right, or left flank, in order to change the direction of the close column, which may then deploy into line.

406. The line being ascertained, the adjutant will, previously, establish two markers on it, distant from each other a little less than the extent of the front of one of the

* See Rules, Battalion, § 127.

† See Rules, Battalion, § 104, last paragraph.

‡ See Rules, Battalion, deployment of the close column into line.

§ See Rules, Battalion, oblique deployments end of § 150. The Prussian system of Tactics details the mode of deploying by companies into line : but recommends effecting the movement by grand divisions ; excepting where a few battalions deploy, speedily, and save the time that would be lost in forming grand divisions.

the grand divisions of the column ; the march of the column will be directed on these markers, and it will be halted two paces, at least, short of them, when the column will be established parallel to the line, if not already so.

(Plate XVIII. Fig. 2.)

407. In the example which follows, a leading battalion (*a*) in close column of grand divisions with the right in front, established parallel to the line the two markers (*d, e.*) are on, and about to deploy on the second grand division, is supposed.

408. This supposition embraces all the cases of deploying. The lieutenant colonel commands,

1. *The column will deploy into line, on the second grand division. (Sur la seconde division, deployer la colonne*.)*

2. *Column, outwards = FACE. (Bataillon à droite = et à gauche.)*

3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

409. At the first caution, each captain commanding a grand division, shall warn his grand division, that it is to face to the right, or left ; and the captain of the second grand division must warn it to stand fast.

410. At the second word of command, the grand divisions that, in line, are to be on the right of the grand division named, that is to say, the grenadiers, and the first grand division, shall face to the right, and the captains commanding them, are to post themselves by the side of their director of the right ; those which are, in line, to be on the left of the named grand division, that is, the third and fourth, shall face to the left, and the captains commanding them are to post themselves by the side of their director of the left ; and the captain of the grand division of grenadiers, shall, immediately, take two points on the ground, to direct his march on.

411. At the word, *march*, all the grand divisions faced to the flanks shall step off together ; the captain of the grand division of grenadiers must march perfectly straight to his front, taking the most particular care not to cross, or be beyond the line.

412. The

* See Rules, Battalion, § 146, § 150.—See Saldern's Tactics, from page 105 to page 118, where the reasoning is clear and judicious respecting grand divisions, which, in deploying, deviate from their parallelism to the line to be formed on.

412. The directors of the right (*b*) of the grand divisions that have faced to the right, and the directors of the left (*i*) of those that have faced to the left, shall maintain, accurately, in marching to the flanks, the distance of three paces that ought to be between them and the preceding grand division when in column; and the directors must march straight and steadily, parallel to the line to be formed on, and without preceding each other.

413. Each captain commanding a grand division shall halt, in his own person, at the word, *halt*, given to the grand division which, in the order of deployment, is to halt before his own, from its immediate position in his front; and he will permit his grand division to file past him, estimating the moment when he ought to halt it, both from the distance between himself and the director conducting it, and from any opening that there may be between the files; and this double attention, on the part of captains commanding grand divisions, will enable them to estimate the distance with precision.

414. The captains of the first and third grand divisions, posted by the side of their director, will stand fast, permitting their grand divisions to file past them; and the captain commanding the first grand division, judging his distance as has been explained, commands,

1. *First grand division.* (*Premiere division.*)

2. HALT. (*Halte.*)

3. FRONT. (*Front.*)

415. The captain places himself in front of the centre of his grand division.

The captain commanding the second grand division, when he sees the front of it uncovered by the deployment of the first, commands,

1. *The grand division will advance.* (*Division en avant.*)

2. *March by the left.* (*Guide à gauche.*)

3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

416. At the word, *march*, which is given at the moment when the front of it is cleared, the second grand division shall move up to the line, and when arrived close to the markers on the line (*d*, *e*), the captain commanding it must order,

4. *Grand Division.* (*Division.*)

5. HALT. (*Halte.*)

417. At the word, *halt*, the second grand division shall halt, and the covering serjeant of the fourth company is to post himself in (*m*) between the two markers, facing to the right, being correctly stationed on the line by the adjutant-major; and the captain of the second grand division, having immediately on that, moved to the left of his grand division, commands,

6. *Left* = DRESS. (*A gauche* = *alignement.*)

418. The captain commanding the grand division, and the captain of the fourth company belonging to it, shall, each, align the company of the grand division that has its eyes turned towards them, giving, afterwards, the word (*Eyes*) FRONT, (*Fixe.*)

419. During this time, the grenadiers will have cleared the front, or will, in deploying, have uncovered the first grand division, and immediately on that, their captain, who shall have halted in his own person, on hearing the word *halt* given to the first grand division, is to command,

1. *Grenadiers.* (*Grenadiers.*)

2. HALT. (*Halte.*)

3. FRONT. (*Front.*)

420. At the word, *front*, the director of the right of each company shall place himself on the line, facing to the left, and covering the two markers established on the line, in front of the second grand division.

421. As soon as the captain commanding the first grand division (*k*) shall see his grand division uncovered by the grenadiers, he is to command,

1. *The grand division will advance.* (*Division en avant.*)

2. *March by the left.* (*Guide à gauche.*)

3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

He shall give this last word at the instant when the grenadiers have left the front of his grand division uncovered.

422. The first grand division is to march up to the line, and when arrived within two paces of the line, the captain commanding it shall order,

4. *Grand*

4. *Grand Division.* (*Division.*)

5. HALT. (*Halte.*)

423. The captain of the first grand division, having given this last word of command, will move and place himself by the side of the man on the right of the second grand division; the director of the right of each of the companies of the first grand division, shall at the same time place himself on the line, facing to the left, and covering the two markers, immediately, in front of the second grand division; and the captain of the first grand division must then command,

6. *By the left forward* = DRESS. (*A gauche = alignement.*)

424. The captain commanding the grand division, and the captain of the second company belonging to it, shall, each, dress the company that have their eyes turned towards them; afterwards giving the word (*Eyes*) FRONT, (*fixe.*)

425. As soon as the captain of grenadiers shall see the first grand division in the alignment (and without waiting till the captain of that grand division has given the word, FRONT,) he shall place himself by the side of the front rank man on the right of the first grand division, and command *Left* = DRESS. The grand division of grenadiers is to be aligned in the same manner that the first has been.

426. The deployment of the left wing is conducted on the same principles.

427. The captain commanding the third grand division who has stood fast opposite to the left flank of the second grand division, in order to see his own grand division file past him, shall halt it, as has been directed to be done by the captain commanding the first, springing then, nimbly forward, and placing himself in front of the centre of his grand division, commanding when there,

1. *The grand division will advance.* (*Division en avant.*)

2. *March by the Right.* (*Guide à droite.*)

3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

428. At the word, *march*, the third grand division shall march towards the line, and when within two paces of it the captain commanding it will order,

4. *Grand Division.* (*Division.*)

5. HALT. (*Halte.*)

429. The captain commanding the third grand division, having given this last word of command, shall move to the side of the man on the left of the second grand division; the director of the left of each of the companies of the third grand division, will, at the same time, place himself on the line facing to the right, and covering the two markers established on the line, close in the front of the second grand division, and the captain commanding this last shall fall back to the centre rank, when the captain commanding the third comes to occupy his proper place.

430. The captain commanding the third grand division shall, then, command,

6. *By the right forward* = DRESS. (*à droite* = *alignement*.)

431. The captain commanding the grand division, and the captain of the sixth company belonging to it, shall, each, dress the company which has its eyes turned towards them, giving afterwards the word (*eyes*) FRONT, (*fixe*).

432. The fourth grand division will deploy into line in all respects similarly to the mode regulating the third.

433. The deployment being effected, the lieutenant-colonel shall command,

Directors to your = PLACES. (*Guides* = *à vos places*.)

434. At this word, the captains commanding the first and second grand divisions, the captain commanding the grenadiers, and the directors, shall take their respective places in line; and the captain commanding the third grand division will fall back, or move sideways between the men of the front and centre rank next to him, in order to make room for the captain of the second grand division to pass to the right of his company.

The markers shall retire.

435. The commander will superintend the execution of the movement, seeing that it is in conformity with the principles, and particularly that the grand divisions, when deploying, are not halted either too soon, or too late; he will, without noise, rectify the error arising from a word of command not properly timed; and he will take care that a fault of this kind does not extend beyond the grand division committing it.

436. The adjutant-major will confirm, successively,
the

the positions of the directors of the grand divisions of the right, when the deployment is a central one ; but when the deployment is made on a front, or rear grand division, he will correct, successively, the positions of all the directors, coming on the line.

437. As often as the deployment is on a centre grand division, the adjutant is to establish the accurate covering on the line, of the directors of the grand divisions of the left.

A brief recapitulation of the general principles, and remarks on deployment.

Résumé des principes généraux, et observations relatives au déploiement.

438. Whatever grand division is deployed on, all those that, in line, will be on the right of it, face to the right ; and all those that, in line, are to be on the left of the named grand division, will face to the left.

439. All the grand divisions are to march square, and parallel to the line ; and the leading flanks must, in deploying, cover in a straight line passing through them, which will be perpendicular to the line.

440. Each grand division, the moment it becomes uncovered, must march up to the line, dressing on the base of the alignment formed by the named grand division deployed on, which must itself dress by the left, if the right is in front, and by the right, if the left is in front.

441. The captains commanding grand divisions must strictly attend, in deploying, to the rules and principles prescribed for marching to a flank ; and if an opening happens among the files, which will not take place, excepting on uneven, difficult ground, they must cause them to close up to proper distance, after giving the word, *halt*.

442. Were a captain commanding a grand division to halt it prematurely, or the reverse, the grand division would be under the necessity of obliquing to the right, or left, in marching up to the line ; and this inaccuracy might lead the next grand division into error.

443. In the grand divisions, which deploy to the left flank, it is always the director of the left of the even and odd company composing it, who places himself on the line, to mark off the direction, at the word, *halt*, given to the grand

grand division, when within two paces of the line ; and, in the grand divisions which deploy to the right flank, it is, on the contrary, the director of the right of each company, who must place himself on the line, in order to prolong it, or mark it off.

444. In order to facilitate the alignment of the grand division on which the deployment is made, the adjutant-major ought always carefully, to establish on the line, between the two markers, placed, previously, on the line, the covering serjeant who is in the centre of the grand division, at the instant when it arrives on the line.

445. These regulating principles are equally applicable to a close column that deploys into line, wholly, on the front, or rear grand division*.

PART V.

When the battalion halted, and correctly dressed, is to advance in line †. (Marche en bataille.)

Article First.

To march in line to the front. (Marcher en bataille en avant.)

446. The battalion being correctly dressed, and supposed to be the directing battalion, the lieutenant colonel intending that it shall advance, will previously intimate the same to the adjutant-major ; and he himself is to repair forty paces in rear of the file of the colours, and face towards the battalion.

(Plate XIX. Fig. 1.)

447. The adjutant-major places himself in front, at an equal distance from the file of the colours, facing to the battalion, and the lieutenant colonel will, by a signal made with his sword, establish him opposite to the bearer of the colours,

* See Rules, Battalion, § 148, § 149.

† See Rules, Battalion, § 166. A line of twenty Prussian battalions, occupying an extent of 4000 yards, advances above 1200 yards in line, in accurate alignment. The same line executes an oblique and central change of front in ten minutes. A column of twenty squadrons, each on a front of ninety yards, deploys into line in fifty-four seconds. This appears incredible to those unacquainted with Prussian movements.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, page 131.

colours, on the line perpendicular to the front of the battalion; and he will, then, looking over the heads of these two men, fix on a point of direction on the ground, to the front, if such distinct point offers itself, which may be exactly in the prolongation of the line on which the adjutant-major, and bearer of the colours, are placed.

448. The lieutenant colonel, then, moves to the distance of sixty paces in the rear, and will place two camp-colour-men (*a* and *b*) on the prolongation of the line of the adjutant-major and bearer of the colours; these markers will face to the rear; the first (*a*) will be placed about twenty-five paces from the rear rank of the battalion, and the second (*b*) at the same distance from the first*.

449. The bearer of the colours, after the adjutant-major is established on the perpendicular line, will assume two points on the ground, in the straight line passing from himself, and running between the heels of the adjutant-major; and the nearest of these points will be taken at the distance of fifteen or twenty paces from the bearer of the colours.

450. These arrangements made, the lieutenant colonel commands,

1. *The battalion will advance. (Bataillon en avant.)*

451. At this word, the front rank of the guard of the colours, shall move six paces to the front, in ordinary time, and the second rank of that guard shall occupy their place; the two general directors (*f g*) will move out, at the same time, six paces, the one, marked (*f*), opposite to the captain of the company on the right, and the other, marked (*g*), opposite to the non-commissioned officer placed on the left of the front rank of the battalion.

452. The adjutant-major shall establish, correctly, the bearer of the colours, between himself and the non-commissioned officer of the file that has taken his place in the front rank, posting himself, afterwards, in the situation which will be pointed out hereafter, No. 460.

453. The adjutant is to post himself at the distance of some paces, on either flank of the rank of the bearer of the colours.

454. The

* These markers being, thus, placed with their backs to the battalion, and shifting as directed in No. 464, are always nearly at the same distance from the battalion, as they shift to their own proper rear.—See Plate 19, fig. 1.

454. The lieutenant-colonel will command afterwards,

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

455. At this word, the battalion shall step off, smartly, together; the bearer of the colours, who is answerable for the direction, and the equal cadence and length of step, is to march, accurately, on the prolongation of the two points which he had taken on the ground, between himself and the adjutant-major, and shall take, successively, others, in proportion as he advances, by the means prescribed in the *discipline of the platoon*, No. 79. The two non-commissioned officers placed, the one on his right, and the other on his left, shall march with the same regularity and accuracy as he does, marching square to the front, without turning the head, or shoulders, either to the right or left; and the bearer of the colours is to carry the colours bearing on the haunch *.

456. The two general directors shall march at the same rate, and with the same accuracy, as the rank of the bearer of the colours; and shall march on this rank, nearly, without attending to each other.

457. The three non-commissioned officers forming the centre rank of the guard of the colours, and placed, now, in the front rank, in the centre of the battalion, shall march

* Frederick William, the father of Frederick II. laid the foundation of the Prussian system of Tactics. Frederick the Great, in the course of 46 years, rendered it perfect. He ascertained that marching well in line, charging steadily, and firing quick, were the essential parts of discipline. To the combined effect of these he owed his most splendid victories. In the war of 1756, he introduced these rapid changes of front, and of the order of battle, which gave him the victory, before his enemy was even aware of his intentions. The Prussians, first, saw the necessity of having light, flying, or horse artillery. The Austrians and French adopted this useful invention, and, recently, the English. The Prussian common systems of artillery and engineering, are, scientifically, inferior to those of other nations. See *Tactique Prussienne*, pages 130, 135, 148, 157, 161.

Frederick the Great did not hold the artillery in such high estimation as he did his infantry; hence the inferiority of the former. "*Les distinctions inspirent de l'orgueil, et l'orgueil produit des grandes choses.*" There is much truth in this remark; emulation, a powerful spring of action, arises from it. In the department of field engineering, the Prussians excel.—Frederick disliked fortifications, and afforded no encouragement to genius in engineers, nor to the useful department of topography, in which the French have always been the first proficient.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, page 121, 181, 166, 183.

march well aligned, elbow to elbow, the head direct to the front, and the shoulders square to the front; the one in the centre, must follow, accurately, the track of the bearer of the colours; and shall maintain the same cadence and length of step, without ever stepping out, or stepping short, but by order, or caution from the lieutenant-colonel, though even he should find himself at more or less distance than six paces from the rank of the bearer of the colours.

458. The captain of the fifth company (d), shall march on the same line with the three non-commissioned officers in the centre, touching, lightly, the elbow of the one next to him; and he must keep his head direct to the front.

459. The captains of the fourth and sixth companies, constituting with the three non-commissioned officers of the guard of the colours placed in the centre, as it were the basis of the alignment of the battalion, will march with the same accuracy of step as the bearer of the colours, keeping their shoulders perfectly square to the front; for this purpose they are to keep the head direct to the front, only, occasionally casting the eyes towards the three non-commissioned officers in the centre of the battalion; and if they perceive that they are either advanced before them, or that they are less advanced than they are, they must step out, or step short, gradually, so as to regain the alignment in the course of several steps, in order to avoid the sudden jerks or transitions which would necessarily produce a waving or floating.

460. The adjutant (e) major placed at the distance of twelve or fifteen paces to the right of the captain of the fourth company, will retain the captain of it, and of the sixth company in a line with the three non-commissioned officers in the centre of the battalion; and for this purpose he will caution them to step out, or step short, when it may be requisite, which, as has been suggested, must be done gradually.

461. The captains of the other companies will keep in, and march steadily on the prolongation of this base; and for this purpose they will look towards the centre, without turning the head too much, and without deranging the direction of their shoulders.

462. The captains of companies will, each, superintend
the

the marching of the company which is next to them towards the centre ; and will prevent the men from bulging out, or being too far advanced ; they must not correct faults, nor even cause the men to step out, or step short, except it may be absolutely necessary, because an over particular attention in rectifying small errors, always produces greater, and disturbs the calm steadiness, the silence, and the equality of step, which it is important that the battalion should maintain.

463. The men must, always, keep the head direct to the front, keep up the light touch of the elbow of the man next to them towards the centre ; resist, always, pressure from the flanks, pay the utmost attention in preserving the shoulders square, and keep, in a very small degree, farther back than the line of captains of companies, in order never to hide from them the base of alignment ; and they will glance, from time to time, to the rank of the bearer of the colours, or to the general directors, in order to march, constantly, with the same regularity, cadence, and length of step that they follow.

(Plate XIX. Fig. 1.)

464. The line of direction ascertained by the two markers, (*a*, and *b*,) is prolonged during the march, by placing, in proportion as the battalion advances, a third marker (*i*), about twenty-five paces in the rear of the first (*a*) ; on this the marker (*b*) leaves his situation and posts himself, at the same distance in the rear of the marker (*i*) ; the marker (*a*) in his turn, will do the same thing, and this may be repeated as often as may be necessary during the march of the battalion to the front. The markers, as they succeed each other, face to the rear, taking care to place themselves correctly covering the markers placed already before them : an officer, or non-commissioned officer, selected for the purpose, and who is to be always stationed fifteen or twenty paces distant from the battalion-rear of the marker farthest removed from the battalion, will caution each the moment at which he is to quit his situation, and will, afterwards, establish them on the line of direction as each retires to the rear of the others, to be posted on it ; and their line is always directed on the object in front, which the commanding officer will have taken care to point out..

265. The.

465. The lieutenant colonel will, habitually, be at the distance of fifteen or twenty paces in rear of the centre of his battalion, but not so exactly so as to hide or intercept from the adjutant (*k*) the line of the markers: if by the slanting or bulging out of the line, so as to lose its parallelism, or by the indications which will be hereafter adverted to in Nos. 475 and 476, he judges that the direction of the bearer of the colours is not perpendicular to the line, he must, quickly, command, *the point of direction more to the right, (or to the left.)*

466. On this command, the adjutant will step forward, nimbly, thirty or forty paces in front of the rank of the bearer of the colours, halt there, facing the lieutenant colonel, and placing himself on the line of direction indicated to him by the lieutenant colonel, who makes the signals to that effect, with his sword; the non-commissioned officer in the centre of the battalion directs, then, his march on the adjutant, on a caution given by the lieutenant colonel, by bringing forward for that purpose, the opposite shoulder; and the non-commissioned officer on his right and left, conforms to his direction.

467. The bearer of the colours will also direct his march on the adjutant, by advancing, for that effect, the opposite shoulder; and the adjutant will direct him, by signal, to incline to the right or left, till he covers, accurately, the non-commissioned officer of his file*.

468. The two directors-general will conform to the new direction given to the rank of the bearer of the colours.

469. The officer, or non-commissioned officer, charged with the care of stationing on the line of direction, successively,

* The bearer of the colours and two non-commissioned officers are placed six paces in front of the battalions. A non-commissioned officer in the front and rear rank, cover the non-commissioned officer on the right of the three in front. An officer is stationed five paces in the rear, to see that these three non-commissioned officers preserve the direction. The major, or the aide-major, on horseback, is constantly behind this officer. The captain on the left of one battalion, and right of the next, maintain themselves, by mutual observation, in the line of the central colours. By such simple means, a Prussian line moves with an accuracy of alignment to which other nations, from want of sufficient practice of nearly the same rules, are only approximating.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, from page 353 to page 362.

cessively, the markers behind the centre, will, quickly, establish them on the line of direction, passing through the place of the bearer of the colours, and that of the non-commissioned officer in the centre; and the lieutenant colonel will verify the accuracy of direction of the markers.

470. The adjutant-major, placed as directed in No. 460, will, carefully, see that the fourth and sixth companies, and the others, successively, conform to the new direction of the centre, but without hurry or disorder; and is to endeavour, afterwards, to maintain this basis of the alignment, as much as possible perpendicular to the line of direction on which the bearer of the colours marches.

471. He will keep his eye on the march of the wings of the battalion: and if he observes that the captains of companies neglect to conform to the base of alignment, he is to caution them by the word of command, *captain of such a company*, or, *captains of such companies, on the line.* (*Chef de tel, (ou, tels pelotons,) sur la ligne;*) and this he will do, without endeavouring, too minutely, to correct small faults.

472. The adjutant stationed, habitually, during the march, on the flank of the rank of the bearer of the colours, will, frequently, step forward fifteen or twenty paces in front of this rank; he will halt there, face to the rear, and place himself, correctly, on the prolongation of the line of the markers stationed on the line of direction behind the centre, in order to ascertain whether or not the bearer of the colours marches, exactly, on that line; and, if necessary, he is to rectify the position of the bearer of the colours, who will, immediately, take two new points on the ground between himself and the adjutant.

473. The principles of the march in line are equally applicable to the *other subordinate* battalions in line, as to that of *direction*; but when the battalion is supposed *subordinate*, or forming a part of the line, markers are not placed behind the centre.

Remarks on the march in line.

Observations relatives à la marche en bataille.

474. If in the exercise of detail of discipline, the officers,

cers, non-commissioned officers, and soldiers, are not confirmed in the knowledge of the rules and principles, and in the practice of the position of the body, the length, accuracy, and cadence of the step, the march in line will be floating, waving, unconnected, and uncertain.

475. Were the bearer of the colours, instead of marching perpendicularly to the front, to follow an oblique direction, the battalion would slant on the line, bulge out, and lose its original parallelism; crowding and jostling would arise in one wing, and a breaking and opening of the files in the other; and these defects, greater in proportion as the false line of direction deviated from the true, would commence near the centre.

(Plate XX. Fig. 1.)

476. If, for example, the bearer of the colours, by advancing the left shoulder, pursued a direction more or less oblique to the right of the true perpendicular line of direction, the right wing would be obliged to step short, and the left wing to step out; the alignment would be lost, crowding and pushing would take place in the right wing, and an opening of files in the left; the same consequences would happen, in a contrary sense, were the bearer of the colours, by bringing forward the right shoulder, to follow an oblique direction to the left, that would form an acute angle with the true direction perpendicular to the original line.

477. The same consequences would also take place, if the base of alignment described, is not at right angles to the perpendicular line of direction marched on by the centre of the battalion; if, for example, the captain of the fourth company, instead of keeping, accurately, dressed on the three non-commissioned officers in the centre, were behind the line drawn along their front, and if, at the same time, the captain of the sixth company were advanced before that line, the left wing would be forced to step out, and the right, to step short.

478. It becomes, therefore, of the utmost importance that the bearer of the colours should march on a line at right angles to the original front; and that the basis of the alignment of the battalion should be, always, perpendicular to the line of direction on which the bearer of the colours marches.

479. After the battalion marches a few paces, the lieutenant colonel can easily judge, from the indications mentioned herein, whether or not the bearer of the colours is marching on a line truly perpendicular to the original front.

480. It will be also easy for the adjutant-major, placed twelve or fifteen paces to the right of the captain of the fourth company, to perceive whether or not the captains of the fourth and sixth companies are before or behind the line drawn along the front of the three non-commissioned officers in the centre, by observing if the captains of the companies in the wings are necessitated to step out, or step short; by keeping up this attention, he will, always, be easily enabled to maintain the alignment perpendicular to the line of direction on which the bearer of the colours marches, and, thus, to prevent a waving and floating in the march of the battalion.

481. If openings are formed, if the files are crowded, or if any other disorder arises, the remedy must be applied as speedily as possible, but with coolness and steadiness of manner, in few words, and without noise or hurry.

482. The general-directors have for object in the march of the battalion, to indicate to the companies towards the flanks, the cadence and length of step with which the centre is marching, and to afford a means of facility to these companies, to re-establish themselves on the direction of the centre, if they should be too much behind; it is, therefore, necessary, that they maintain the same exact cadence and length of step, and that they march, very nearly *, as far advanced, as the rank of the bearer of the colours, which will be easy to effect, by glancing from time to time towards that rank.

(Pl. XX. Fig. 2)

483. If, in a line of several battalions, the bearer of the colours of one battalion, instead of following the perpendicular (*o p*,) followed the oblique line (*c b*,) to the right

* Marshall Puysegur recommends marching in line by the centre in preference to the right, because the centre is nearer to the left wing. If the centre is the regulating point, a certain degree of convexity must be maintained, to be afterwards reduced to an alignment. In the British service, the regulating battalion is generally on the right; all the others march by it, and by their own respective centres. The principal attention is directed to the preserving intervals, and the parallelism of march.

right of that perpendicular, and if the battalion conformed to this false direction, it would not be sufficient to re-establish the battalion arrived at $(e,)$ on the line (fg) parallel to the original line $(kl:)$ it would be necessary, moreover, to make the battalion regain, afterwards, by obliquing to the left, the space $(mn,)$ in order to replace the centre of the battalion on the perpendicular $(op,)$ without which the interval (q) , between this battalion and the next (r) on its left, would be increased, while on its right, the interval would become diminished in the same proportion.

484. Should a battalion lose the step, the lieutenant colonel would caution it by the word of command, *take up the step, (au pas;)* the company, officers, and men, then ought to glance to the rank of the bearer of the colours, or to one of the general directors, and, thus, to resume the proper step, without delay.

485. In fine, it is of the utmost importance, with respect to the march in line, to accustom the soldiers to execute with as much regularity, as facility, the movements prescribed in No. 466, and those following, in order to rectify a false direction: and the commandants of battalions must, by indefatigable practice and care, endeavour to acquire the habit or aptitude of judging at a glance (*coup d'œil*) with precision and accuracy, of deviations from the direction, or of the direction which they are to give to their battalions.

Article Second.

Passage of obstacles when the battalion is advancing or retreating.*

Passage d'obstacle en marchant en avant, ou en arrière.

486. The battalion is supposed marching to the front,
x 2
and

* See Rules, Battalion, Part III. Passage of Obstacles, § 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, and 175.

A Prussian line advancing, meeting with an obstacle, passes it by facing into file the part of the line interrupted; and such part faces into file towards the company it belongs to, following that company *en potence*, or marching in file along the edge of the obstacle. When beyond the obstacle, these files form up again, successively. It is deemed

and when a company, or a grand division, is to practise the passage of a supposed obstacle, the commander will give the caution, *Such a company (or such companies) will pass the obstacle. (Tel peloton (ou tels pelotons,) obstacle.)*

487. The captain of the company, or of each of the named companies, moves two paces to the front, and turning round to his company, shall command, if he belongs to the right wing,

1. *(Such) Company. (Tel) Peloton.*

2. *Left turn, by files, to the right wheel. (Par le flanc gauche, par file à droite.)*

MARCH. *(Marche.)*

(Plate XXI. Fig. 1.)

488. At the word, *march*, the company shall turn to the left on the march, wheel, by files, to the right, and will follow at the distance of one or two paces, the three files on the right of the company on the left; and the company marching, thus, in file, with its left behind the right of the next company, has its left conducted. The captain will not, therefore, lead the front file, but shall march by the side of his covering serjeant, who steps from the rear, to the front rank.

489. If the company belongs to the left wing, it must face to the right, wheel, by files to the left, and follow the three files on the left of the company immediately on the right; and the captain will, in this instance, conduct the leading file, by marching by the side of his covering serjeant.

490. The obstacle being supposed passed, the lieutenant colonel

deemed preferable, on meeting with obstacles, to double, by successive sections, in rear of each other; and to deploy again into line, on passing the obstacle. The movement is executed in quick time. When a line retiring meets with obstacles, the battalions are halted; and the parts interrupted countermarch into file, marching in file along the edge of the obstacle, or double into column of sections so as to precede the retiring line, in order to be, thus, covered and protected against attacks. When the obstacle is passed, the parts in column, or in file, form again into line. Openings are also made for the passage of cavalry, by doubling sections.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, from page 345 to page 351.

The parts breaking off, when the battalion retires, precede it, in order to be covered from the enemy pursuing; and to be clear of the front of the battalion, should it be obliged to front, immediately, on a sudden attack.

colonel gives the word, *Such a company (or such companies) will move up into line.* (*Tel peloton (ou tels pelotons) en ligne.*)

The company officer shall command,

1. *Move up into line.* (*En ligne.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

491. At the word, *march*, the files shall move up successively, in quick time, into line, by following the directions detailed in the *discipline of the platoon*, No. 137; and the captain, if his company has been marching with the left file leading, will resume his place in line, along with the last file.

Remarks on the passage of an obstacle.

Observations relatives au passage d'obstacle.

492. In the right wing, the director of the left of the company, which is immediately on the right of that, or of those executing the passage of the obstacle, moves up to the front rank of the left of his company, and preserves between himself and the right flank of the company, behind which the companies that have doubled, or filed, march, the space requisite to contain them, when they can, after passing the obstacle, move up again into line; in the left wing, the captain of the company which is immediately on the left of that, or of those that have doubled, is to follow the same directions which regulate the conduct of the directors of the left, of the companies composing the right wing.

493. When the company to which the guard of the colours belongs, doubles, or files, behind the next company, in order to avoid an obstacle, the rank of the bearer of the colours will retire from the front, and fall into its place, at the moment when the company faces to right, or left; and the adjutant is to take post, six paces, in front of the company behind which the company of the bearer of the colours marches, where he will take up the step of the battalion, and be responsible for the cadence and length of the step.

494. As soon as the company to which the colours attach has moved up into line, the front rank of the guard of the colours, marches forward, with agility,

lity, six paces, in front of the battalion, taking up the step from the adjutant, who springs forward, fifteen or twenty paces, in front of the bearer of the colours, and faces towards the lieutenant colonel placed behind the centre, in order to be established, by signal from him, on the line perpendicular to the front of the battalion; and, this being effected, the bearer of the colours, must, instantly, take two points on the ground, in the line passing between himself and the adjutant.

495. When more than two contiguous companies have to double, in order to avoid an obstacle, they will form open column in rear of the company nearest to them towards the centre, by word of command from the lieutenant colonel, as will be explained.

496. Let it be supposed that an obstacle opposes the progress in line of the four companies on the left, as soon as the battalion has arrived at somewhat less than the length of the front of a company from the impediment, the company officer commands,

(Plate XXI. Fig. 2.)

1. *The four companies on the left will double into open column behind the fourth company.* (Quatre pelotons de gauche, obstacle.)

2. *File into column, from the right of companies.* (Par le flanc droit en arrière = en colonne.)

3. *Quick = MARCH.* (Pas accéléré, marche.)

497. At the second word of command, the company-captains of the four companies on the left, shall place themselves before the centre of their respective companies, cautioning them respecting the movement about to be executed.

498. At the word, *march*, the companies named, shall turn to the right, on the march, into file; each captain of a company will cause the head of it to disengage to the rear, and must then conduct it, in quick time, to the right, to the rear of the fourth company, conformable to the mode described for executing the quick manœuvre*; as

* "La prompte manœuvre," is adequate to the movement in the British service, of filing the rear companies into the rear of an open column, which changes direction on the march; or of forming open column behind the left company, as practised in the 8th manœuvre of the Rules and Regulations.

as each company arrives in rear of the fourth, the company-officer shall halt, *front* it, and follow the preceding company in ordinary time. The four companies on the left, will, thus, follow, in open column, at full distance, the fourth company; and when the rear company of this column shall have passed to the front of the obstacle, the lieutenant colonel commands,

1. *The four companies of the left, will form up into line, by an echelon movement. (Quatre pelotons de gauche, en avant en ligne.)*

499. At this word, the captain of each of these companies shall command,

1st, *Directors on the right, (meaning) (march by the right);* 2dly, *Company, left half wheel. (Par Peloton demi à gauche.)*

The lieutenant colonel shall, then, command,

2. *Quick = MARCH. (Pas accéléré = marche.)*

500. At the word, *march*, repeated by each of the captains of the four companies of the left, each of these companies is to wheel forty-five degrees to the left, and move up to the line, on hearing the words, *forward (en avant)*, *MARCH*, given by the captain when he judges that his company has wheeled forward the eighth of the circle; each company shall form in line, according to the rules laid down for *forming forward in line, on the leading company of an open column, (pour la formation en avant en bataille)*; in proportion as the companies move up, the company officers take their places in line, commanding, *take up the step, (or, ordinary) au pas*; and, on this, the company shall take up the step from the bearer of the colours, or from the adjutant, if the former is not moved up again to his post in front of the battalion.

501. In retiring with the rear rank in front, these various modes of passing obstacles, are executed on the same principles as if the battalion were marching to the front.

502. If a battalion marching in line to the front, finds it necessary to retreat, when one or two companies which had met with an obstacle, are in file, following the line *en potence*, (forming an angle with it, in this instance, a right one,) and if the ground will not admit of moving up into line, they will halt with the battalion, but will not face

about to the rear; the three files of the battalion behind which these companies are in file, will face to the right (or left), on a caution from the fourth rank man nearest to them, at the same time that the battalion faces to the right about, and will, afterwards, wheel, by files, in order to follow in file, the three next files to them whom they cover, when the battalion marches to the rear, with the rear rank leading: and these three files will be followed by the company, or companies in file, *en potence*, conforming to what is prescribed in passing a defile retreating, No. 652.

503. By means of this movement, the companies which in the march, to the front, are in file behind the rear rank, will, when the battalion is retiring, be arranged in the same order behind the front rank become the rear rank.

504. If, on the supposition of a battalion marching in *line* to the front, and obliged to halt, face about and retire, some of the companies should be in open column behind the rear rank, these companies would halt, face about, and march to the rear with the battalion, with their rear ranks leading; preceding, in this manner, in the retreat, the rear rank of the battalion, become the front rank: and these companies would, afterwards, oblique up into line, in proportion as the ground would admit of it*.

Article Third.

Change of direction of the battalion marching in line.

Changement de direction en marchant en ligne.

505. A battalion (*a*), marching in ordinary time, wheels on the right flank with an uniform front, by the following words of command, given by the lieutenant colonel:

1. *The*

* The French do not throw the companies opposed by an obstacle, into a close column in rear of the next company on the right, or left. They justify their formation of file, if two companies break off, or of open column, if more than two meet with an obstacle; by urging, that the rear is protected, in case of any unforeseen attack there, by being flanked by the companies in open column there, which could be, instantly, formed, or wheeled into line, and marched to the right or left, as might be necessary.

1. *The battalion is to change direction to the right, and on the right. (Changement de direction sur la droite.)*

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

(Pl. XXII. Fig. 1. and 2.)

506. At the word, *march*, the wheel commences; the rank of the bearer of the colours marches steps of one foot, directing ~~himself~~ ^{it} self, circularly, to the right, observing to turn, or advance, gradually, and insensibly, the left shoulder; the adjutant will place himself in front of the bearer of the colours, facing him, and directing his march in such a manner as to make him describe an arc of a circle which may be neither too large, nor too small; and he must also observe, that the bearer of the colours takes steps of one foot only.

507. The general director of the right (*i*) will only mark the time, in changing his direction.

508. The general director of the left (*g*) marches on the circumference of a circle of which the right is the centre; he takes steps of two feet, aligning on the bearer of the colours, and on the general director of the right.

509. The non-commissioned officer (*d*) placed in the centre of the battalion, takes steps of one foot only, and wheels to the right, by insensibly bringing forward the left shoulder; the battalion conforms to the movement of the centre; for this purpose, the captains of the fourth and sixth companies, attentively regulate their march, as well as the direction of their shoulders, on the three non-commissioned officers placed in the centre; and the other company officers, regulate the direction of their shoulders, and the measure of their steps, on this base.

510. The soldiers are to bestow uncommon attention in not bulging out, or being farther advanced than the line drawn from one captain to another.

511. In the left wing, the steps are taken in proportion larger, according to the distance from the centre; and the non-commissioned officer (*e*) who is on the left of the battalion, takes steps of two feet.

512. In the right wing, the steps are to be taken less and less, from the centre to the right, where the captain on the right of the battalion is the pivot on which it wheels, and he must yield a little, and give a little ground, if he is pushed laterally.

513. The

513. The lieutenant colonel must carefully observe, that the arc of the circle described by the centre of the battalion, is neither too large, nor too small; that the company-officers, in wheeling, maintain their proper distances from each other; and that the centre does not wheel too suddenly, but at such a rate as that the wings can conform to its march: he will endeavour to prevent faults, and to remedy them without noise; and he will prevent openings, or crowdings of the files, which might terminate in throwing them out of their ranks *.

514. The adjutant-major, placed in front of the battalion, will exert himself in attending to the same objects.

515. To resume the direct march, perpendicular to the then front, the lieutenant colonel commands,

1. *The battalion will advance.* (*En avant.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

(Pl. XXII. Fig. 3.).

516. At the word, *march*, the rank of the bearer of the colours, and the general-directors of the battalion, are to resume the direct march; the adjutant will, immediately, spring forward fifteen or twenty paces to the front, and face towards the lieutenant colonel, who, by a signal made with his sword, will establish him on the perpendicular direction which the non-commissioned officer in the centre is to follow; the adjutant will cause the bearer of the colours to incline, if necessary, to the right, or left, so as, exactly, to cover his proper file, the centre one.

517. The adjutant-major must pay every attention in giving to the fourth and fifth companies a direction that may be perpendicular to the line on which the non-commissioned officer in the centre marches; and the other company-captains will conform to this line, without hurry.

Article

* See Rules, Exercise of the Battalion, No. 23.—See Rules, § 169, Changes of a Battalion when in movement, No. 5.—See Saldern's Tactics, page 157, where a battalion in line is wheeled ninety degrees of change of front. Each platoon wheels on its concentric arc of a quadrant, like a single file in a common wheel of the quarter-circle. Supposing the wheel made on the right, all the captains are before the third file from the right. All the companies are ordered, *eyes right*, excepting the first, which receives the caution of, *eyes left*.

Article Fourth.

Obliquing a battalion, in a parallel direction, to a given flank.

(Marche oblique par bataillon.)

518. The battalion marching in ordinary time, the lieutenant colonel will command,

1. *The battalion will oblique to the right. (Oblique à droite.)*

2. MARCH *. *(Marche.)*

519. At the first word of command, the adjutant will move in front of the bearer of the colours, and will face towards him.

520. At the word, *march*, the whole battalion is to oblique to the right.

521. To resume the direct march, the lieutenant colonel will command,

1. *Forward. (En avant.)*

2. MARCH. *(Marche.)*

522. At the word, *march*, the battalion resumes the direct march.

(Plate XX. Fig. 3.)

523. In the oblique, equally as in the direct march, the battalion ought to move parallel to its original direction; thus, a battalion commencing the oblique march on the line (*sz*), ought to arrive on the line (*xx*), which is parallel to (*sz*).

524. The adjutant-major will carefully maintain the basis of alignment, on a parallel direction.

525. The commander will see that the files neither open out, nor crowd on each other; and for this purpose, he will cause the wing on the flank to which the battalion obliques, to ease off by disengaging, or marking time a little, when it may be necessary to prevent a crowding of files;

* See Rules, Battalion, § 169, Nos. 1, 2, 3, and 4. In the Prussian service, obliquing a battalion is only used to re-establish a lost interval. It is deemed so difficult, that the movement over the base and perpendicular takes place instead of that over the hypotenuse. Space is gained to a front and flank, by a march in echelon, to avoid obliquing in battalion.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, pages 351, 352.

files ; and he will also endeavour to maintain the battalion parallel to the original direction.

526. The adjutant who is in front of the bearer of the colours, will keep him on the line at right angles to the centre, and covering the under officer placed there, in such manner that the former will not oblique more or less than the latter.

527. When the battalion resumes the direct march, the adjutant springs forward fifteen or twenty paces in front of the bearer of the colours, and faces towards the lieutenant colonel, who, by a signal of his sword, will establish him on the line of direction in which the bearer of the colours is to march ; and this last will, immediately, fix on two points on the ground, between himself and the adjutant.

528. In resuming the march direct to the front, the soldiers, in their different files, must take great care to close, gradually, and insensibly, the openings that may have taken place among the files.

Remarks on oblique marching in line.

Observations relatives à la marche oblique.

529. Were the under-officer placed in the centre, to retire either shoulder, the right shoulder, for example, a fault very common in obliquing to the right, the commander would readily perceive this, from the indications mentioned in No. 476 ; and in order to remedy this error, he would direct this non-commissioned officer to advance the right shoulder, without which, the battalion would take a false direction.

530. Battalions well disciplined and aligned, march to the front, or obliquely, with the same facility, even on difficult, uneven ground ; provided the files are not permitted to close, or crowd on each other ; and the commander and adjutant-major, will use every exertion to prevent this.

Article Fifth.

To halt the battalion marching to the front, and to dress it*.

Arrêter le bataillon marchant en avant, et l'aligner.

531. The lieutenant colonel will give the words of command to the battalion marching to the front.

1. *Battalion.* (*Bataillon.*)

2. HALT. (*Halte.*)

532. At the word, *halt*, the battalion is to halt; the rank of the bearer of the colours, and the general directors, shall remain in their situations in front, unless the commander gives the word, *Colours and directors = to your places—(Drapeau et guides = à vos places)*; and this order will be given when the battalion is not to resume the march to the front, nor to undergo a general alignment.

533. When the lieutenant colonel does not deem it necessary to give the battalion a general dressing, he will, if he thinks proper, cause the alignment to be rectified; he will, in this case, command, *Captains of companies, rectify the alignment—(Chefs des pelotons, rectifiez l'alignement)*: the company-officers will, on this, turn their eyes towards the centre, arranging themselves on the base of alignment which the adjutant-major has carefully preserved in a good direction, and dressing, quickly, their respective companies. The adjutant-major will caution the company officers who are not accurately arranged on the continuation of the base of alignment, by giving the word, *Captain of such a company, or captains of such companies, move up, or fall back, (Chefs de tel (ou de tels pelotons) rentrez ou sortez.)*

(Pl. XIX. Fig. 2.)

534. When the commander requires a general dressing, either parallel, or oblique, he will place himself on the outside of one of the general directors, ordering the bearer of the colours, and the other general director, to face towards him, by making a signal with his sword to that effect; he will establish them on the line of direction in which the

* See Rules, Battalion, § 166. § 167.

battalion is to align. The bearer of the colours carries them perpendicularly between his eyes, and the two under officers belonging to the rank of the bearer of the colours take their places in line.

535. If the new direction will carry the position of one or more companies of one of the wings to the rear of the present front, the commander will, at first, cause these companies to march to the rear, either by the back step, or by facing them to the right about, according as the line of direction may be more or less in rear of that wing; and he will, then, establish the bearer of the colours, and the general directors, as has been explained above.

536. This arrangement being made, the lieutenant colonel commands,

1. *Directors* = *on the* LINE. (*Guides* = *sur la ligne*.)

537. At this word, the directors of the right of each of the companies of the right wing, and the directors of the left of each of the companies of the left wing, will place themselves in the line of direction of the bearer of the colours and general directors; they will face to the bearer of the colours, and will take their stations on the line, each, at the distance of the length of the front of his company from the director who is immediately before him.

538. The captains of companies of the right wing, will move to the left of their respective companies, excepting the captain of the fourth company, who will remain on the right of his company, taking care to place himself in the centre rank.

539. The adjutant-major will rectify, quickly, if there is occasion for it, the position of the directors of the right wing, and the adjutant, in the same manner, that of the directors of the left wing; and when these positions are ascertained to be accurate by the lieutenant colonel, he commands,

2. *By the centre* = DRESS. (*Sur le centre* = *alignement*.)

540. At this word of command, the companies will step off together in ordinary time, in order to move up to the directors, where having arrived, each captain of a company will dress his own, according to the prescribed principles; and the adjutant-major will align the company to which the colours are attached.

541. If the alignment is oblique, the captains of companies

panies will take care to conform the direction of their companies accordingly, in conducting them towards the line of the directors.

542. The battalion being dressed, the lieutenant colonel will command,

3. *Colours and directors = to your PLACES.* (*Drapeau et guides = à vos places.*)

543. At this word of command, the bearer of the colours, the general directors, and the directors of companies, as also the captains of companies of the right wing, take their places in line; and the bearer of the colours will carry them resting against the right haunch.

Article Sixth.

When the battalion is to retire.*

Marche en retraite.

544. The commander having halted the battalion in order to cause it to retire, commands,

1. *Battalion, to the right about = FACE.* (*Bataillon, = demi-tour à droite.*)

545. The moment the battalion has faced about, the rank of the bearer of the colours, and also the general directors, if in front, resume their places in line; the bearer of the colours will take post in the rear rank become the front rank; the two non-commissioned officers of his file will fall back, or glide laterally, a little, between the ranks close to them, to make room for the passage of the bearer of the colours to his situation; the commander moves behind the front rank become rear rank; and the adjutant-major, and adjutant, proceed to the front of the rear rank become front rank.

546. If the battalion is the *directing one*, the markers are stationed in the same manner as for the march to the front; excepting that they are to face towards the battalion: the commander placing himself about forty paces in the rear of the file of the bearer of the colours, will station the markers on the line, if they are not already established; or if they are, the officer, or non-commissioned

* See Rules, Battalion, § 168.

officer directed to superintend the prolongation of the line by the successive covering and shifting of the markers, will cause them to face about as soon as the battalion has faced to the rear *.

547. If it is a subordinate battalion, the commander will post himself as has been explained; the adjutant-major will place himself about forty paces in front of the supernumerary rank, opposite to the bearer of the colours, and the commander will establish him on the line of direction, as has been directed for marching in line to the front.

548. These arrangements being made, the lieutenant colonel commands,

2. *The battalion will retire* *. (*Bataillon = en avant* †.)

549. At this word, the bearer of the colours, and the two non-commissioned officers of the rear rank of the guard of the colours, shall march eight ordinary paces forward, and their places will be occupied by the centre rank of the guard of the colours; the two general directors move out in a line with the rank of the bearer of the colours; the covering serjeants step forward into the supernumerary rank, and the captains of companies occupy their places in the rear rank become front rank; and the three fourth rank men nearest to the centre of the battalion, are to unite into a rank in the rear of the rank of the bearer of the colours, in order to serve as a base of alignment for the supernumerary rank to march on.

550. The lieutenant colonel shall, then, command,

3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

551. The battalion is to march with the rear rank leading, on the same regulating principles as when the proper front rank leads; if it is a *directing battalion*, the bearer of the colours directs his march on the markers, who will themselves, successively, move to the proper rear of each other to prolong the line of direction, in proportion as the battalion retires, and approaches towards them;

* When the battalion retires, the markers have their faces towards the rear rank become the front rank, and as the battalion retires, they shift, behind each other, to their own proper rear.

† “En avant” is here translated as above, not according to the literal meaning, but conformable to the obvious sense.

them ; the officer superintending their movements will see that they place themselves, correctly, on the line of direction : if the battalion is *subordinate*, the bearer of the colours will march on the line, by means of points taken on the ground ; and the centre fourth-rank-man of the three united behind the bearer of the colours, will march, exactly in his track.

552. The commander, and adjutant also, act as when the battalion advances, with the proper front leading.

553. The adjutant-major placing himself on the outside of the supernumerary rank of the fourth company, must endeavour to preserve the part of the supernumerary rank constituting the base of alignment, perpendicular to the line of direction ; and the rest of that rank will march, keeping dressed on this basis.

Article Seventh.

To halt, and front, the battalion, when retiring.*

Arrêter le bataillon marchant en retraite, et le remettre face en tête.

554. The lieutenant colonel having halted the battalion, and intending to front it, commands,

1. *Battalion, to the right about* = FACE. (*Bataillon = demi-tour à droite.*)

555. At this word of command, the rank of the bearer of the colours, and the general directors, the captains of companies, and their covering serjeants, resume their places in line ; and the bearer of the colours will repass to the front rank.

556. If the commander intends that the battalion should undergo a general dressing, he will order,

2. *Colours and general directors on the line.* (*Drapeau et guides généraux sur la ligne.*)

557. At this word, the bearer of the colours, and the

Y 3

general

* In the Prussian system, when a line retires in the face of an enemy, the officers remain in their places, to be ready to act in their situations, in case the line were obliged to front ; but if, in retiring, it becomes necessary to fire, or sustain an attack with the rear rank leading, the officers and non-commissioned officers take post, as if the battalion were marching with the proper front rank leading.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, page 270.

general directors, move out in front, and face towards the lieutenant colonel, who is either on the right, or left; and he, after establishing them on the line of direction which he intends giving to the battalion, will command,

3. *Directors take your company distances = on the line.* (*Guides = sur la ligne.*)

4. *By the centre = DRESS.* (*Sur le centre = alignement.*)

Article Eighth.

To march in file to a flank.

Marcher par bataillon par le flanc.*

558. The lieutenant colonel will, sometimes, exercise the battalion in marking time, and when confirmed in the accuracy of the cadence, and length of the step in ordinary time, he will change to quick time; and he will, also, exercise the battalion in marching in file, to a flank, by commanding,

1. *The battalion will face to the right (or left †.)* (*Bataillon par le flanc droit (ou le flanc gauche).*)

2. *To the right (or left) = FACE.* (*à droite (ou à gauche).*)

3. *The battalion will advance in file.* (*Bataillon en avant).*

4. *MARCH.* (*Marche.*)

559. At the second word of command, the captains of companies, and the covering serjeants, will station themselves, as has been directed in the *discipline of the platoon*, No. 120.

560. The two non-commissioned officers who are stationed on the left of the front and rear rank of the battalion, will post themselves as follows, viz. the one in the front rank, similarly situated as the captains of companies, and the one in the rear rank, in the same situation as the covering serjeants.

561. When the battalion marches, in file, to the left flank, the captains of companies will not move to the left
file

* The edition of 1791 omits this heading; that of 1793 gives it.

† See Rules, Battalion, § 94.

file of their companies ; in this case, the above two non-commissioned officers on the left of the battalion, will conduct it.

562. Whether the battalion marches to the right, or left, in file, the adjutant-major takes his post as far advanced as the leading file, and the adjutant, his, at the place of the colours ; and both are on the front rank-side of the battalion, removed from it, about six paces.

563. At the fourth word of command, the battalion will step off smartly ; the non-commissioned officer placed before the leading file on the right, or left, will bestow the most particular attention in preserving the exact length and cadence of the step, and in marching straight to his front, without deviating from a given line into a curved direction.

564. The adjutant-major will march, constantly, the same step, and at the same rate, as the head of the battalion, and the adjutant will march, always, at the same rate, and with the same accuracy as the adjutant-major ; and these both, give the step which the battalion follows.

565. The captains of companies, and the officers, and non-commissioned officers in the supernumerary rank, will vigilantly observe, that the files neither open out, nor crowd forward on each other, and that they regain their distances, insensibly, should they have lost them.

566. The commandant will see that the rules and principles are strictly adhered to.

567. To wheel the head of the battalion marching in file, the lieutenant colonel commands,

1. *By files, to the right (or left) wheel. (Par file, à droite (ou à gauche.)*

2. MARCH *. (*Marche.*)

568. The files wheel, successively, and on the same ground where the leading file commenced the wheel, conforming

* See *Tactique Prussienne*, pages 306, 307, 308, 309, where marching by sections, in open column, and doubling of files, or forming six deep, are proposed as modes of obviating the defect of opening out when marching in file. When a Prussian battalion marches in file, and wheels its head to front rear, each file wheels sharp, and not on a pivot in a small degree moveable. In our service, and in the French, this wheel, by successive files, is on a pivot moveable in some degree.

forming to the principle prescribed in the *discipline of the platoon*, No. 126.

569. In the progress of instructing the battalion, the lieutenant colonel will cause it to wheel in file, sometimes, to the right, and at others, to the left, in such a manner that the front of the battalion may exhibit different divisions wheeling in file, at the same time, some to the front, and some to the rear, of the original direction of the battalion, without any alteration of the step, or loss of the lock step.

570. This lesson is one of the best that can be given to a battalion, in order to confirm it in the cadence of the step.

Article Ninth.

To form in line, from file, to either flank.

Former le bataillon sur la droite, ou sur la gauche, par file, en bataille.

571. If the battalion marching, in file, to the left flank, is to be formed to the left flank, the lieutenant colonel having ascertained the direction of the line, the adjutant-major will place two markers on it, distant from each other about the length of a company, and so situated as to have the left shoulder nearest to the battalion, when in line.

572. When the head of the battalion approaches near to the first marker, the commander orders,

1. *To the left form line *, by successive files. (Sur la gauche, par file, en bataille.)*

2. *Company-officers, shift to your leading files. (Chefs de pelotons à votre première file de gauche.)*

3. *MARCH. (Marche.)*

573. At the second word, all the captains shift to the left of their companies, placing themselves by the side of the front-rank-man of the left file; and the two non-commissioned officers on the left of the battalion, will resume their respective places in the front and rear rank.

574. At the word, *march*, the under-officer on the left of the front rank of the battalion, will turn to the left, and place himself with his breast in contact with the left arm

* See Rules, Battalion, § 95, No. 3.

arm of the marker situated on the line ; the battalion will form on the line, to the left flank, file by file, conforming to the directions laid down in the *discipline of the platoon* ; and each captain of a company will place himself on the line, at the same time with the man of the front rank of the first file on the left of his company, posting himself by the left of that man.

575. The director of the right of each company, excepting of the eighth, will place himself on the line of direction of the markers, opposite to the right file of his company, at the instant when that file arrives on the line.

576. The formation being accomplished, the lieutenant colonel is to command,

Directors to your = PLACES. (*Guides = à vos places*).

577. At **this word**, the captains of companies, and directors, will **resume** their places in line ; and the two markers will **retire**.

578. If the battalion is marching in file to the right, the movement will be executed by the contrary procedure ; and the commander will not give the second word, because the company officers are already by the side of their first file on the right.

579. The two markers placed, previously, on the line, will be so situated on it, as to have their right shoulders nearest to the battalion when formed in line.

580. The director of the left of each company, excepting of the company on the right, will place himself in the line of direction of the markers, at the instant when the last file of his company arrives on the line ; posting himself in front of that file.

581. The lieutenant colonel will superintend the successive formation of the companies, following up each company as it forms up.

582. The adjutant-major will regulate the successive positions of the directors ; and will prevent the men of the front rank, and dressing up to the line, from coming beyond it, or passing over it.

*Article Tenth.**Passage of battalions from line, through each other.**Passage des lignes.*

When a battalion in first line, passes through a second which does not advance to relieve the first.*

Mouvement de la première ligne en retraite.

(Pl. XXIII. Fig. 1.)

583. The battalion being supposed of the first line retreating in line, and going to pass through the second line; when within about twenty paces from it, the lieutenant colonel commands,

1. *The battalion is to turn to the left, on the march.* (*Bataillon, par le flanc gauche.*)

2. *The companies are to pass by files, from the proper right.* (*Par peloton, par file à droite.*)

3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

584. At the word, *march*, the battalion turns to the left, on the march, into file, and the leading file of each company will disengage, and, immediately, wheel to the right; the rank of the bearer of the colours, and, also, the general directors, shall resume their places; the covering serjeant of each company, placed before the leading file of his company, and the captain of the company, placed by his side, must direct their march towards the respective openings made in the second line, for their passage.

585. The heads of files march, by the left, and distances of companies are preserved from the left, during the filing, by companies, to the rear.

586. The lieutenant colonel, after passing one hundred paces beyond the second battalion, commands,

(Pl. XXIII. Fig. 2.)

1. *Battalion.* (*Bataillon.*)

2. HALT. (*Halte.*)

3. FRONT †. (*Front.*)

4. *Left*

* See Rules, Battalion, § 175, No. 4.

† After dressing in column, the column wheels up into line. In the French system of Tactics, the companies are halted when the wheeling flank is two paces from the line, after which they are dressed up into line. Their tacticians say, that if the companies are wheeled up, the whole of the quarter-circle, the dressing becomes liable to uncertainty, being made in a waving and floating manner, occasioned

4. *Left* = DRESS. (*à gauche* = *alignement*.)

5. *Left wheel into line.* (*à gauche en bataille*.)

6. MARCH. (*Marche*.)

587. At the second word, to be repeated by all the captains of companies, the battalion will halt.

588. At the third word of command, the captains of companies placed by the side of their director of the right, will, each, move to the front of the centre of their companies; the lieutenant colonel situated before the director of the left of the first company, will rectify the position of the directors, previous to giving the fourth word of command.

589. At the fourth word, not to be given till the directors are correctly covering in line to be wheeled up to, each captain of a company will conform to what has been prescribed in No. 221, of the *discipline of the battalion*.

590. At the moment when the first company has passed through the second line, the lieutenant colonel placing himself behind the captain of that company, will point out to him the direction he is to take to his front, by shewing a point to march on, if any offers; the captain of the first company will, immediately, on this, take two intermediate points, or the adjutant-major will proceed, quickly, thirty or forty paces in front of the captain of the first company, who will take two points on the ground, between himself and the adjutant-major, and new points, successively, as he advances.

591. The commander will maintain order in the march, and the preservation of distances; and will direct the march of the first company, accurately, in the requisite direction.

592. The adjutant-major (*b*), placed at the distance of a few paces on the left of the captain of the first company, and the adjutant (*k*), placed, also, at the same distance on the right of the eighth company, will see that the leading flanks of the companies march aligned by the proper right.

Movement

occasioned by some men being beyond the line, while others are short of it, by which, time, also, is lost. They say that dressing up, after a short intermediate halt, obviates the objection. The wheel from line into column, they found on similar reasoning.

4. *Right* = DRESS. (*à droite* = *alignement*.)

602. At the instant when the second subdivision marches in order to deploy, the covering serjeant stationed on the right flank of that subdivision, and the ensign, placed on the left flank of the first, will resume their places in line.

603. This arrangement for effecting the passage of lines, which has been considered here as applicable to retreating, may be equally applied to offensive operations, where it may be necessary to relieve troops of the first line that have sustained loss, by fresh detachments from the second line.

604. In this last case, the battalion of the second line will advance in line, in order to approach near to the first line; and the lieutenant colonel, in sufficient time not to interfere with the movement about to be executed by the first line, commands,

1. *The battalion will form subdivisions in close order.* (*Doublez les sections.*)

2. *Second subdivisions* = MARCH. (*Secondes sections* = *marche.*)

605. At the second word of command, the second subdivision of each company is to mark time; and as soon as the first subdivision shall have cleared its flank, the second shall oblique to the right, in order to double behind the first; these movements must be executed by a caution given by the officer of the second subdivision, who is in the supernumerary rank; the officers and non-commissioned officers will divide, and post themselves on the flanks of the subdivisions, as has been explained in No. 598; and the battalion is to continue to advance in this order*.

606. The ensigns, or second lieutenants, placed on the left flanks of the first subdivisions, will, in the right wing, preserve distance of subdivision, between themselves, and the captain of the company that is next to them, on the left.

607. The ensign stationed on the left of the first subdivision of the company to which the colours are attached, will march in the track of the bearer of the colours, whom the adjutant will take care to make incline to the right, so as to cover the ensign on a line perpendicular to the front.

608. The

* See Rules—Battalion, § 175, No. 3.

608. The captains of companies of the left wing preserve distance of subdivision between themselves, and the ensign placed on the left of the first subdivision of the company which is, immediately, on their right.

609. The centre and rear ranks of the guard of the colours, double along with the subdivision to which they belong ; but the rank of the bearer of the colours, and the general directors, remain conducting, before the front.

610. The lieutenant colonel of the battalion in first line, seeing him of the second arrived within about twenty paces of him, commands,

1. *The battalion will face to the right.* (*Bataillon par le flanc droit*.*)
2. *To the right* = FACE. (*A droite.*)
3. *By Companies, to the right wheel.* (*Par peloton, par file à droite.*)
4. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

611. The battalion of the first line, will file through that of the second, halting at the prescribed distance, and, afterwards, wheeling up into line, as has been explained in this section.

612. As soon as the first line has passed through the second, the lieutenant colonel of the second line will command,

1. *The second subdivisions will move up into line.*—(*Doublez les Sections.*)
2. *Second subdivisions* = MARCH. (*Secondes Sections* = *Marche.*)

613. At the word, *march*, the second subdivisions oblique to the left ; the ensign, the covering serjeant, and the second serjeant, resume their places in line ; and the first subdivisions continue to march steadily forward.

614. As soon as the second subdivisions are uncovered, or have their right flanks open, the officer belonging to each, will command,

z 2

1. *For-*

* In the French service, it may be observed, that a previous caution is given that a company, or battalion, is to face to the right, or left, in order to be prepared to face to a flank, on hearing the word, *à droite*, or, *à gauche*. This precaution is requisite, because there is no previous motion of the right foot ; and because, otherwise, the word of command would be too sudden to produce an uniformity of facing to a flank.—See page 17.

Movement of the second battalion, in order to permit the first to pass through in retiring column filing from the proper right of companies.

Mouvement de la seconde ligne dans le passage des lignes.

593. The battalion being supposed of the second line, and it being supposed that from a halt, the subdivisions are to double behind each other, in order to open passages for the first, the lieutenant colonel will, in sufficient time, not to retard the movement of the first battalion, command,

1. *The battalion will form subdivisions in close order.*
(*Doublez les sections.*)

2. *The second subdivision of companies will face to the right.* (*Seconde section par le flanc droit.*)

3. *To the right* = FACE. (*à droite,*)

4. MARCH *. (*Marche.*)

594. At the first caution, all the captains of companies will step, nimbly, in front of the centre of their respective companies.

(Plate XXIII. Fig. 3.)

595. At the second word, they will caution the first subdivision to stand fast; and the second, that it is to face to the right.

596. At the third word of command, the second subdivision of each company, will face to the right; and the captain will cause, immediately, the three files on the right, to disengage to the rear.

597. At the fourth word, the second subdivision of each company, will double behind the first, at the distance of one pace from the rear rank; and will be halted by the officer

* A second line advances to sustain a first which has expended its ammunition; is fatigued, thrown into disorder, or has been defeated. The second line throws sections of three files into close column, to afford intervals to the first to pass through in open column. When the first line retires through the second, it faces to the rear, and passes through in open column. Sometimes, a second line advances to improve an impression made by the first. In this case, the second line, after having passed to the front, through the first, instead of (from open column) wheeling up into line, forms line to the front, by files, or the évantail (*fan*) movement, as being the readiest mode.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, from page 361 to page 367.

officer of the second subdivision, who is to give the following words of command,

1. *Subdivision.* (*Section.*)
2. HALT. (*Halte.*)
3. FRONT. (*Front.*)
4. *Left* = DREES. (*à gauche* = *alignement.*)
5. (*Eyes*) FRONT. (*Fixe.*)

598. At the last word *front*, the officers and non-commissioned officers of each company will move to the flanks of the subdivisions, in order to cover and steady them; and will arrange themselves so that there shall be one on the right, and one on the left flank of each subdivision, and two, in supernumerary rank, in rear of the second, in the following order: the captain on the right of the front rank of the first subdivision, the ensign on the left of the same rank, the covering serjeant on the right of the rear rank of the second subdivision, the second serjeant on the left of the same rank, and the lieutenant and serjeant-major, in a supernumerary rank, behind the company.

599. If the number that ought to compose the supernumerary rank of each company is not complete, still the flanks of subdivisions must be covered as here directed, and the supernumeraries in the rear, would be posted on flanks. This arrangement of the officers and non-commissioned officers, has for object, the preventing the first line, if it should pass in disorder, from disturbing the regularity of the second.

600. The battalion of the first line being supposed passed through the intervals, the lieutenant colonel of the second line will command,

1. *The second subdivisions will move up into line.* (*Doublez les sections.*)
2. *The second subdivisions will face to the left.* (*Secondes sections par le flanc gauche.*)
3. *To the left* = FACE. (*à gauche.*)
4. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

601. At the word, *march*, the second subdivisions will march to the left flank, and when uncovered, their captains will command,

1. *Subdivision.* (*Section.*)
2. HALT. (*Halte.*)
3. FRONT. (*Front.*)

4. *Right* = DRESS. (*à droite* = *alignement*.)

602. At the instant when the second subdivision marches in order to deploy, the covering serjeant stationed on the right flank of that subdivision, and the ensign, placed on the left flank of the first, will resume their places in line.

603. This arrangement for effecting the passage of lines, which has been considered here as applicable to retreating, may be equally applied to offensive operations, where it may be necessary to relieve troops of the first line that have sustained loss, by fresh detachments from the second line.

604. In this last case, the battalion of the second line will advance in line, in order to approach near to the first line; and the lieutenant colonel, in sufficient time not to interfere with the movement about to be executed by the first line, commands,

1. *The battalion will form subdivisions in close order.* (*Doublez les sections.*)

2. *Second subdivisions* = MARCH. (*Secondes sections* = *marche.*)

605. At the second word of command, the second subdivision of each company is to mark time; and as soon as the first subdivision shall have cleared its flank, the second shall oblique to the right, in order to double behind the first; these movements must be executed by a caution given by the officer of the second subdivision, who is in the supernumerary rank; the officers and non-commissioned officers will divide, and post themselves on the flanks of the subdivisions, as has been explained in No. 598; and the battalion is to continue to advance in this order*.

606. The ensigns, or second lieutenants, placed on the left flanks of the first subdivisions, will, in the right wing, preserve distance of subdivision, between themselves, and the captain of the company that is next to them, on the left.

607. The ensign stationed on the left of the first subdivision of the company to which the colours are attached, will march in the track of the bearer of the colours, whom the adjutant will take care to make incline to the right, so as to cover the ensign on a line perpendicular to the front.

608. The

* See Rules—Battalion, § 175, No. 3.

608. The captains of companies of the left wing preserve distance of subdivision between themselves, and the ensign placed on the left of the first subdivision of the company which is, immediately, on their right.

609. The centre and rear ranks of the guard of the colours, double along with the subdivision to which they belong ; but the rank of the bearer of the colours, and the general directors, remain conducting, before the front.

610. The lieutenant colonel of the battalion in first line, seeing him of the second arrived within about twenty paces of him, commands,

1. *The battalion will face to the right.* (*Bataillon par le flanc droit*.*)
2. *To the right* = FACE. (*A droite.*)
3. *By Companies, to the right wheel.* (*Par peloton, par file à droite.*)
4. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

611. The battalion of the first line, will file through that of the second, halting at the prescribed distance, and, afterwards, wheeling up into line, as has been explained in this section.

612. As soon as the first line has passed through the second, the lieutenant colonel of the second line will command,

1. *The second subdivisions will move up into line.*—(*Doublez les Sections.*)
2. *Second subdivisions* = MARCH. (*Secondes Sections* = *Marche.*)

613. At the word, *march*, the second subdivisions oblique to the left ; the ensign, the covering serjeant, and the second serjeant, resume their places in line ; and the first subdivisions continue to march steadily forward.

614. As soon as the second subdivisions are uncovered, or have their right flanks open, the officer belonging to each, will command,

z 2

1. *For-*

* In the French service, it may be observed, that a previous caution is given that a company, or battalion, is to face to the right, or left, in order to be prepared to face to a flank, on hearing the word, *à droite*, or, *à gauche*. This precaution is requisite, because there is no previous motion of the right foot ; and because, otherwise, the word of command would be too sudden to produce an uniformity of facing to a flank.—See page 17.

1. *Forward (en avant).* 2. *Quick = MARCH. (Pas accéléré = Marche.)*

615. The second, or left, subdivisions move up to the line, taking up, of their own accord, the step, time, and alignment.

616. The lieutenant-colonel of the battalion of the second line may halt it, as soon as the first has passed through; the second subdivisions will, then, quickly deploy into line, on hearing the command, *second subdivisions move up into line, (secondes sections en ligne)*, given by the lieutenant colonel; or the commander may continue marching the battalion for some time to the front, previous to halting it.

General Observations on the passage of Lines.

Observations générales relatives au passage des lignes.

617. It is supposed, in this article, that the companies retiring in file, march, regulating their heads by the proper right, and filing from their right flanks; but the lieutenant colonel of the battalion of the first line, may cause the movement to be, equally, executed by passing from the proper left of companies in file; and in this case, the left being in front, after halting and fronting, the companies will regulate distances, and alignment of leading flanks from the right, which is the proper left, and will wheel up to the right, into line.

618. In order to execute the various movements explained in this article, in the progress of the exercise of the battalion, the commander will suppose the battalion, sometimes, of the first, and sometimes, of the second line.

Article Eleventh.

Change of Front. (Changement de front.)*

619. The battalion being in line, and the commander
intending

* See Rules, Battalion, § 159. See Rules, Battalion, § 120. The above movement is accomplished by filing the companies from open column into the new direction. When the Prussian line consists of a few battalions which are to be thrown forward on the flank of an enemy; or which are to be refused; such changes of front are effected by filing the platoons in open column into the new position, on arcs
of

intending to cause it to change front, will station two markers on the new direction, distant from each other something less than the length of the front of a company, and in front of the company that is to give the base of alignment.

620. It is supposed here, that the commander wishes to change position to the front on the fixed first flank company; he will station two markers as has been explained, and will direct the captain of the company to wheel and halt it in the new position, close to, and behind the markers; and when this is effected, the lieutenant colonel commands,

1. *The battalion will change position to the front, on the first company, by throwing forward the rest of the battalion. (Changement de front en avant, sur le premier peloton.)*
2. *By Companies = Right = half-wheel. (Par peloton = demi à droite.)*
3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)
4. FORWARD. (*En avant.*)
5. MARCH. (*Marche.*)
6. *March by the right. (Guides à droite.)*

(Plate XXIV. Fig. 1.)

621. At the second word of command, the captains of companies will move in front of the centres of their companies.

622. At the third word, the companies will commence wheeling to the right on a halted pivot; and when the lieutenant colonel perceives that they have wheeled, as

z. 3. many

of concentric circles. The company, either at the point of intersection of the new and old directions, or at the flank on which the platoons are thrown backward or forward, by filing, is previously placed, in the direction. All the other companies file into parallelism on the new line, and are wheeled up into line. See *Tactique Prussienne*, from page 365 to 371.

The Prussians wheel forward a battalion, by wheeling up the flank company into the new direction, and by causing all the other companies to wheel on a moveable pivot, on their own separate concentric arcs of the quadrant; supposing the battalion to change front, perpendicularly on the extremity of a flank. Here (*see preface*) the file on the inner flank, the pivot one, is directed to take short steps, having less ground to go over than the outer files of the company.—See Saldern's *Tactics*, § 28, Wheeling with a battalion. An echelon movement is more accurate than this wheel.

many degrees as are requisite, he will give the three remaining words of command.

623. At the fifth word of command, the companies will cease wheeling, and will march straight forward.

624. On hearing the sixth word of command, they will take the touch of the elbow from the right; the director of the right of each company will follow the file which is opposite to him in the preceding company, and will march in the track of that file, until the company, of which it forms a part, arriving as far as the place where it is to enter on the line, shall turn, or wheel to the right, and then, the director of the right, will direct his march straight, and square to his front.

625. The right of the second company, having come up opposite to the left flank of the first company, the captain of the second company commands,

1. *Turn (or wheel) to the right. (Tournez à droite.)*

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

626. At the word *march*, the second company will wheel on the principle of changes of direction on the pivot flank, on the march, in such a manner as to arrive square on the line; the company is halted by the captain, at the distance of two paces from the line, and aligned, according to the mode pointed out in successive formations.

627. All the other companies conform to the directions given for forming the second in line.

628. The formation being accomplished, the lieutenant colonel commands,

Directors to your = PLACES. (Guides = à vos places.)

629. In order to change position to the rear on the first, as a fixed flank company, the lieutenant colonel, after having caused this company to be established on the new direction *, and a marker to be placed before the file on the right and left, will command,

1. *The battalion will change position to the rear, on the first company, by throwing backward the rest of the battalion. (Changement de front en arrière, sur le premier peloton.)*

2. *Batta-*

* See Rules, Battalion, § 160. See Rules, Battalion, § 121. The above movement effected by filing the companies from open column into the new position.

2. *Battalion to the right about* = FACE. (*Bataillon, demi-tour* = *à droite.*)

3. *By companies, left half wheel.* (*Par peloton* = *demi à gauche.*)

4. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

5. FORWARD. (*En avant.*)

6. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

7. *March by the left.* (*Guides à gauche.*)

(Plate XXIV. Fig. 2.)

630. At the second word of command, all the companies, excepting the first, face to the right about.

631. At the third word, the captains of the companies which have faced about, move behind the centre of their companies, at the distance of two paces from the front rank become the rear rank.

632. At the fourth word, the companies commence wheeling on a fixed pivot, with the rear rank in front.

633. At the fifth word, they will cease wheeling, and move straight forward towards the new line.

634. At the seventh word, they will all take up the light touch of the elbow from the left, and the director placed on the right flank of each, become the left, will conform to the directions laid down in No. 624.

635. The proper right, become the left of the second company, having arrived opposite to the left of the first company, already dressed on the new line, the captain of the second company commands,

1. *Turn (or wheel) to the left.* (*Tournez à gauche.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

636. The second company wheels, or turns to the left, according to the principles of changes of direction on the pivot flank, on the march; and will move, afterwards, to the front, and be halted by the captain, when arrived as far as the supernumerary rank of the first company; the captain will, then, cause the second company to face about, and will align it, according to the mode already explained for successive formations.

637. All the other companies will execute what has been directed to be done by the second company.

638. The formation being effected, the lieutenant colonel will command,

Directors to your = PLACES. (*Guides* = *à vos places.*)

639. The

639. The lieutenant colonel will cause the battalion to change position to the front, or to the rear, on the left fixed company, on the same principles.

640. The commander superintends the general execution of the movement.

641. The adjutant-major will correct, if necessary, the position of the directors as they come on the line, conforming to the prescribed rules for successive formations.

642. The commander can, equally, cause the battalion to change front on a central company, or on any other company of the battalion that may be deemed eligible; and under any required angle formed by the new and old lines; and, in this case, one of the wings will change position to the front, and the other to the rear, both conforming to what has been prescribed to be executed, in this article, as applicable to each.

643. If, for instance, the change of front is to be executed on the fifth company, and if the left wing is to be thrown forward, and the right back, the commander will place two markers on the new direction in front of the fifth company, and he will order the captain of this company to wheel it into the new line, and dress it on the markers.

644. The fifth company being, thus, established in the new direction, the fourth company is to be formed on the new alignment, by command given by the captain of it, and the director of the right of the fourth company, will immediately station himself before the file on the right of his company, and covering the markers placed before the fifth company; the commander having ascertained the accuracy of position of this director, will order,

1. *The battalion will change position on the central fifth company, by advancing the left, and retiring the right wing*.* (*Changement de front sur le cinquième peloton, l'aile gauche en avant.*)

2. *Com-*

* See Rules, Battalion, § 161, or by filing, Battalion, § 122.

These changes of front made on either flank, to front or rear, or central, by throwing forward one wing, and the other back, are, literally, Prussian. See *Tactique Prussienne*, pages 274, 275, 276.

Frederick the Great, almost always, made use of the echelon movement, in effecting changes of front, which he generally made on a central division of the line. During oblique changes of front, he frequently wheeled the echellons into line, in their, then, positions

2. Companies of the right wing, Right about = FACE.
(*Pelotons de droite, demi-tour = à droite.*)
3. By companies = right half wheel. (*Par peloton = demi à droite.*)
4. MARCH. (*Marche.*)
5. FORWARD. (*En avant.*)
6. MARCH. (*Marche.*)
7. March by (or take the touch of the elbow from) the right. (*Guides à droite.*)

(Plate XXV. Fig. 1.)

645. At the second word of command, all the companies, to the right of the fourth, will face to the right about.

646. The movement will be executed according to the regulating principles laid down in detailing this article.

647. When the movement is a central one, as in this instance, the adjutant-major rectifies the position of the directors of the companies of the right wing, as they come up on the line; and the adjutant will correct, if necessary, the position of the directors of the companies of the left wing, on the alignment of directors.

Remarks on Changes of Front.

Observations relatives aux changemens de front.

648. When the new direction is nearly at right angles to that of the battalion, the companies wheel about the eighth of the circle, before they march forward to the new line; but when the two lines form an acute angle with each other, the less the angle, so much the less ought the companies to wheel previous to marching forward in echelon; and when the angle is very acute, the commander will cause the companies to wheel only as much as will disengage them from line, and from each other.

649. The precision of movement depends on the accuracy and aptitude of judging by the eye (*coup d'œil*) of the commander, relative to the instant at which he ought to give the words, *forward* (*en avant*), MARCH (*Marche.*)

650. If

tions, in order to oppose attacks of cavalry, which being repulsed, he has reformed the echellons, and completed the central and oblique change of front which had been interrupted. See *Tactique Prussienne*, from page 174 to page 182.

650. If the new line forms a very acute angle with that on which the battalion is placed, the companies will arrive on the line, nearly square, or parallel to it, without there being any necessity for the word, *turn* (or *wheel*) *to the right* (or *left*) being given, when the companies have arrived opposite to their respective situations for being dressed on the line.

Article Twelfth.

The battalion formed in line, may have to pass a defile in its rear, by successive filing of companies from the right or left flank. (Passer le défilé en retraite par l'aile droite, ou par l'aile gauche.)*

651. The battalion being in line, and the commander supposing the defile in rear of the left flank, he will command,

The battalion will pass the defile in the rear, by filing to the rear from the right flank. (En arrière par l'aile droite, passez le défilé.)

(Plate XXV. Fig. 2.)

The captain of the company on the right flank, will, immediately, order,

1. Grenadiers (or first company) will face to the right.
Grenadiers (ou premier peloton) par le flanc droite.

2. To the right = FACE. (*à droit.*)

3. MARCH †. (*Marche.*)

652. At the word, *march*, the first company steps off; the leading file will wheel to the right, and march to the rear four paces beyond the supernumerary rank; it will, there, wheel again to the right, and march straight forward

* See Rules, Battalion, § 92.

† The Prussian system establishes the passing of defiles by counter-marching battalions, or lines, in file, from a flank, or flanks, to form open column on the company in whose rear the defile is situated; and recommends the formation of close column when a passage must be opened in the face of cavalry. The formation of open column from a leading flank, to the front, by facing the battalion to a flank, and halting, fronting, and marching off each company as it acquires its place in the column, is deemed, in the Prussian system, not so eligible as forming a close column; on account of the opening out of files to which all file-marching is subject, occasioning inaccuracy of distances in the column when, thus, formed.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, pages 286, 287, 288.

ward towards the left wing ; and all the files of this company are to wheel, successively, on the same ground on which the leading wheeled.

653. The second company will put itself in motion, in its turn, by command of the captain, who will cause it to face to the right, when the leading file of the first company has arrived opposite to him ; he will give the word, *march*, to his company, at such time, as that the leading file of the second company may follow in immediate succession, the rear file of the first company, but without effort to take up the accurate step of the preceding company, which will happen on the march ; the leading file of the second company will wheel to the right on its ground, and all the other files will wheel, successively, on the same ground where the leading file wheeled.

654. The succeeding companies will execute, each in its turn, the same movements as have been prescribed for the second company.

655. The first file of the first company having come up opposite to the defile, supposed to be situated behind the left flank of the battalion, will wheel, by files, to the left, in order to enter the defile ; and all the following files will wheel, exactly, on the ground on which the file of the head of the company wheeled.

656. The companies pass through the defile, by marching in file, and as each has cleared it, the captain will form company, from file, by the rules detailed in No. 136, and the following ones, of the *discipline of the platoon*.

657. Supposing the defile to be in rear of the right flank, the lieutenant colonel commands,
The battalion will pass the defile in the rear, by filing to the rear, from the left flank. (En arrière par l'aile gauche, passez le défilé.)

658. The company on the left will, immediately, commence the movement, and the following companies, successively, conforming to the directions laid down for passing the defile, by filing from the right flank ; and in this case, the captains of companies will shift to the left flank of their companies, in order to conduct the leading file.

*Remarks on passing a defile retreating.**Observations relatives au passage du défilé en retraite.*

659. Should the breadth of the defile admit of the formation of companies, or subdivisions, from files, the captain of the leading company will effect this, after his company has entered the defile.

660. All the succeeding companies execute this movement by command of their respective captains, in the same place where the leading company commenced it.

661. As soon as the first company shall have passed the defile, if the right is in front, the head of the column can be wheeled to the left in a direction parallel to the original one, in order to be, afterwards, wheeled up to the left into line; or the head of the column may wheel to the right, in order to form line to the right flank, by successive formation of companies.

662. If the defile is narrow, and does not admit of forming companies, or subdivisions, the battalion will continue to march in file; and as soon as the leading file has cleared, or passed the defile, it may wheel to the left, prolong the direction of the battalion in file, and the formation may be made to the left flank, into line, by facing the battalion *to the left*; or, the leading file may wheel to the right, and the line may be formed *to the right flank from file, (sur la droite, par file, en bataille.)*

If judged more eligible, after passing, companies may be formed from file; and the wheel may be made to the right or left, in order to form line, on either side of the defile.

*Article Thirteenth.**Column of attack.**Colonne d'attaque.*

663. This movement, which consists in filing from line, into a double column, formed in rear of the two centre companies, is executed as follows, by word of command from the lieutenant colonel.

1. *The battalion will form a column of attack. (Colonne d'attaque.)*

2. The wings will form respective columns of companies in rear of the centre companies. (*Par peloton de droite et de gauche sur le centre = en COLONNE.*)

3. Battalion, inwards = FACE, (*Bataillon, à gauche = et à droite.*)

4. Quick = MARCH. (*Pas accéléré = Marche.*)
(Plate XXVI. Fig. 1.)

664. Upon the second caution, all the captains of companies, excepting those of the fourth and fifth, will move to the front of the centre of their companies, cautioning them that they are to face either to right or left, according to the wing they belong to; and the captains of the fourth and fifth companies will stand fast.

665. Upon the third word of command, the fourth and fifth companies stand fast; all the other companies will face, those of the right wing, *to the left*; and those of the left, *to the right*; the captains of the faced companies will, immediately, cause the three leading files of their respective companies to disengage or throw themselves to the rear; the directors of the left, of each of the companies of the right wing, and the directors of the right, of those of the left wing, will place themselves, respectively, before the front rank man of their leading file; and the captain of each company will station himself by the side of his director, in order to conduct the company*.

666. Upon the word, *march*, the movement commences, the captain of the fifth company steps, nimbly, to the left flank of his company, and the captain of the fourth, stands fast; and these companies, if necessary, dress on each other, on a caution given by their respective captains.

667. The fourth and fifth companies that are to form the head of the column, stand fast; all the others step off in quick time, in order to place themselves, at subdivision-distance, in rear of the company of the wing they belong to, in such arrangement, that the fourth company precedes the third, the third the second, and so on; and that in the left wing, the fifth company precedes the sixth, the sixth the seventh, and so on.

668. The corresponding companies of each wing will unite into one grand division in the column; and for this

VOL. I.

A a

purpose,

* See Rules, Battalion, § 94, where the officers are out of the ranks, being replaced by their serjeants.

purpose, the captain of each of the companies of the right, will command,

1. *Company.* (*Peloton.*)
2. *Halt.* (*Halte.*)
3. *Front.* (*Front.*)
4. *Left = Dress,* (*à Gauche = Alignement.*)

669. The captain of each of the companies of the left wing will give the same words of command, excepting that instead of his giving the fourth word of command, he will give his company the word, *Right = Dress.* (*A droite = alignement.*)

670. The captain of each of the companies having given the word, *Left (or right) = Dress.* (*A gauche (ou à droite) = alignement,*) will take post on the exterior flank of his company, those of the right wing, on the right flank, and those of the left wing, on the left flank; the two companies united will dress on each other; and the centre of the two companies is marked* by the covering serjeant of the company on the left, who must place himself, accurately, and carefully, covering the preceding serjeant.

671. The company of grenadiers follows the movement of the wing they are attached to, conforming to the directions given in this article, with this only difference, that the company takes post, at subdivision-distance, with its centre opposite to the centre of the rear grand division of the column, in which situation the right and left of the grenadiers will be outflanked, equally, by the flanks of the rear grand division of the column.

672. If, however, the superior officer saw it necessary to station the grenadiers at the head of the column, when forming, he would give an order to that effect to the captain, who, in that case, would cause the three leading files of his company to throw themselves to the front, instead of disengaging to the rear; and would conduct the grenadiers to half distance, in front of the two companies at the head of the column, placing them as described in the last No.

673. The

* See Rules, Battalion, § 147. The above arrangement of the captains and covering serjeants, is similar to that used in a close column of grand divisions, in the British service.

673. The drummers will take post in rear of the column.

Deployment into line of the column of attack.

Deploiment de la colonne d'attaque.

674. The commander deeming it necessary to deploy this column into line, will place two markers before the files on the right and left of the two companies at the head, and will, then, order,

1. *The column will deploy into line* *. (*Deployez la colonne.*)

2. *Companies, outwards* = FACE. (*Bataillon, à droite = et à gauche.*)

Quick = MARCH. (*Pas accéléré = marche.*
(Pl. XXVI. Fig. 2.)

675. Upon the word, *march*, the column deploys into line, according to the principles laid down for deploying close columns on the two front companies which stand fast; and the captain of the fifth company will shift to the right of his company.

676. The captain of the fourth company will fall back to the centre rank, at the instant when the captain of the third arrives on the line, and moves to the left of his company, to align it.

A a 2

677. The

* See Rules, Battalion, § 146.

In the course of the late war, the French, in mountainous situations, particularly, made frequent use of these columns of attack, which are readily formed, and are equally well calculated for advancing and retreating, “Après avoir été repoussés vigoureusement à quatre attaques successives, entreprises par la 93e demi-brigade, et ramenés chaque fois jusqu’au pied de la montagne, on se détermina à une cinquième charge, pour laquelle on avoit réservé le 106e et 109e demi-brigades. On se forma en colonne, et l’on marcha avec d’autant d’ordre que la nature du terrain le permettoit. Cette dernière tentative réussit complètement : on parvint sur le plateau, et l’ennemi fut enfoncé et mis en déroute. Nous les suivîmes la baïonnette dans les reins; nous lui tuâmes beaucoup du monde, et nous fîmes prisonniers près de douze cens hommes, dont douze officiers, et un officier supérieur.”—Campagnes de l’armée de Rhin et Moselle.

Though this description is not a remarkable specimen of modesty and reserve in narrating military events, it is quoted to shew the use to which these columns of attack are applied.

677. The deployment being accomplished, the lieutenant colonel commands,

Directors to your = PLACES. (*Guides* = à vos places.)

678. Should the commander judge it necessary to commence firing during the deployment, he would order the captains of the two companies at the head of the column to begin firing by independent files.

679. The captains of these companies would give the words of command prescribed for this species of firing, after hearing the word, (*eyes*) FRONT (*fixe*,) given to the third and sixth companies, subsequent to the word, *dress*; the captains of the two last mentioned companies, would observe the same rule with respect to the second and seventh companies, and so on.

680. Upon the word, *fire by independent files*, (*feu de deux rangs*,) given to the two companies at the head of the column, the two markers placed before these companies retire; and the director of each company, who had stationed himself on the line, in order to mark it off, resumes his place in line, on hearing the above word of command given to his own company.

681. The captains and covering serjeants of companies will fall back, during the firing, to the situations pointed out in No. 35, of the *discipline of the battalion*.

Remark on deploying the column of attack.

Observation relative au déploiement de la colonne d'attaque.

682. This species of column being always formed from single battalions, its small degree of depth renders it unnecessary to move up into close column, previous to deploying into line.

Article Fourteenth.

Rallying, or assembling to form, after breaking off.*

Ralliement.

683. The battalion being in line, the commander will cause the *working parties call* (*la breloque*) to be beat; and on this signal, the battalion will break off, and disperse.

684. When

* See Rules, Part III. § 83, 84, and 85.

684. When the commander wishes to re-assemble it, he will place two markers and the bearer of the colours on the line on which the battalion is to assemble, and form; after which, he will order the *assembly*, or, *troop* to beat, (*au drapeau.*)

685. Each captain of a company will assemble his officers, non-commissioned officers, and foldiers, about six paces in the rear of the place which they are to occupy in line.

686. The commander will, quickly, cause the company of the colours to be formed on the line, close to the markers; each company, by order of its captain, will move up, immediately on this, on the alignment of the company to which the colours are attached, and will be dressed on the line, according to the prescribed principles.

Discipline of the battalion arranged in lessons, such as are to be repeatedly practised in exercising battalions separately.

Ecole de bataillon classée par leçons, telle qu'elle doit être répétée dans les exercices par bataillon.*

Lesson I.

1st. To open ranks = (*Ouvrir les rangs.*)

2^{dly}. Manual exercise, and loading in quick time = (*Maniement des armes, et la charge précipitée.*)

3^{dly}. To close ranks = (*Serrer les rangs.*)

4^{thly}. Loading in quickest time, and the various firings to the front and rear = (*La charge à volonté, et les divers feux en avant, et en arrière.*)

Lesson II.

1st. To break or wheel forward, to the right or left, into open column. (*Rompre par peloton, à droite ou à gauche.*)

2^{dly}. To march in open column with a cadenced step, for a considerable time, the director at the head of the column conducting the

A a 3

* "Ecole" has been rendered "*discipline*," and not "*exercice*;" for from the above sentence, the French word "*exercice*" means the practice of elementary instruction or discipline of the school. Discipline, a *disciplina*, means what the *discipulus*, (or the recruit) from *dicere*, to learn, acquires a knowledge of in the school. Hence, the force and spirit of the substantive "*ecole*" in the text, convey to the mind the abstract sense included in the word "*discipline*."

See Rules, Battalion, § 86, or Exercise of the Battalion.

the march on two objects taken on the ground ; to change direction on the pivot flank, and on the reverse flank ; and to form subdivisions and companies, by doubling, and forming up on the march. (*Marcher en colonne au pas cadencé, long temps de suite, le guide de la tête se dirigeant par des points pris à terre ; changer de direction sur le côté du guide, et sur le côté opposé au guide ; rompre et former les pelotons en marchant.*)

3dly. To countermarch and repeat the same movements. (*Exécuter la contre-marche, et répéter les mêmes mouvemens.*)

4thly. To change direction in open column, by filing the rear companies into the new direction. (*Changer de direction par la prompte manœuvre.*)

5thly. To assume the route-step of column marching at ease ; to form subdivisions ; to go through, in succession, the various movements detailed in the article of column of route, such as reducing the front of subdivisions, by breaking off files, to four files in front, moving up the files again to the front, on the same principles, and forming companies. (*Prendre le pas de route ; rompre les pelotons ; exécuter, successivement, les divers mouvemens prescrits dans l'article de la colonne en route, pour réduire les subdivisions à quatre de front, faire rentrer les files en ligne d'après les mêmes principes, et former les pelotons.*)

6thly. To halt the column, and to wheel it up to the left, or right, into line. (*Arrêter la colonne, et la former à gauche, ou à droite, en bataille.*)

7thly. To wheel up the companies, sometimes, into line to the right or left, by inverting the natural order of the flanks. (*Former quelquefois la colonne par inversion, à droite, ou à gauche, en bataille.*)

Lesson III.

1st. To form open column, with the right or left in front, by filing the companies into column, on the line. (*Rompre par peloton, en arrière, à droite ou à gauche.*)

2dly. To form the column into line, to the front ; and fronting to the rear of the march. (*Former la colonne en avant ; et face en arrière en bataille.*)

3dly. To form line, from open column, to the right, or left flank. (*Former la colonne sur la droite, ou sur la gauche, en bataille.*)

4thly. To march in file to a flank, and to form companies, or subdivisions, on the march. (*Marcher par le flanc, et former les pelotons, ou les sections en marchant.*)

5thly. To prolong the march of the column in an alignment before, or behind which it has arrived ; and to wheel it up to the left, or right, into line. (*La colonne arrivant par derrière, ou par devant la ligne de bataille, la prolonger sur cette ligne, et la former à gauche, ou à droite, en bataille.*)

6thly. To change position to the front, or rear, on a fixed flank, either right or left, placed at right angles, and oblique, to the old line. (*Changer le front en avant et en arrière, sur l'extrémité de la droite ou de la gauche, perpendiculairement, et obliquement.*)

7thly. To change front on a central company, by throwing forward the left, or right wing, perpendicularly, and obliquely. (*Changer*

(Changer de front sur le centre, l'aile gauche, ou l'aile droite en avant, perpendiculairement et obliquement.)

Lesson IV.

1st. From line, to form close column * of grand divisions, or companies, on the company on the right, or left of the battalion, and in front, or rear of it; or on a central company, with either right, or left in front. (*Etant en bataille, se ployer en colonne serrée, par division, ou peloton, en avant ou en arrière, sur le peloton de droite ou de gauche du bataillon; ou bien, sur le peloton du centre, la droite ou la gauche en tête.*)

2^{dly}. To change the direction of a close column to the right, or left, by filing the column from either flank into the new direction. (*Etant en masse, changer de direction à droite ou à gauche par le flanc de la colonne.*)

3^{dly}. To countermarch the close column. (*Etant en masse, exécuter la contre-marche.*)

4^{thly}. To march in close column. (*Marcher en colonne serrée.*)

5^{thly}. To open out from the head of the column. (*Prendre les distances par la tête de la colonne.*)

6^{thly}. To close to half, or subdivision-distance, and change direction; to form close column, halt the column, form column of grand divisions from a halt, and deploy into line. (*Serrer à distance de section, et changer de direction; serrer en masse, arrêter la colonne, former les divisions de pied ferme, et déployer.*)

7^{thly}. To form the column of attack, and deploy it into line. (*Former la colonne d'attaque, et la déployer.*)

Lesson

* The Prussians form grand divisions from companies, in two different manners. The left, or even companies, lead out, halt, front, and form up on the standing, or right companies. When again the column with the right in front, arrives on the ground to be occupied by the even, or left company, the first, or uneven numbered companies lead out of the column to the right, and the even companies move and form up on them. When, on the contrary, the left is in front, the 8th, 6th, 4th, and 2d, even companies lead out, halt, front; and the odd, or first companies move up, and form on them; or again, if the even companies are already on their ground, the first, or uneven companies, 7th, 5th, 3d, and 1st, face to the right, lead out, halt, front, and form up on 8th, 6th, 4th, and 2d. The Prussians apply these four modes of forming grand divisions to circumstances, such as the nature of the ground, and the subsequent deployment, either to the left, or right, with the right in front, on a front, or rear, grand division; or, to the left, or right, with the left in front, on a rear, or front grand division. They also form grand divisions on the march of the open column, by causing the set of companies to be formed on to step short, and the others to oblique up to them, after which they close to half distance, or move up into close column, in order to deploy into line.

See *Tactique Prussienne*, pages 315, 316, 317, and 318.

Lesson V.

1st. To march in line for a considerable time, advancing and retreating; and to execute the passing of obstacles in different manners. (*Marcher en bataille long temps de suite, en avant et en retraite; et faire exécuter les divers passages d'obstacle.*)

2dly. To change direction in line, repeatedly. (*Changer de direction en bataille, plusieurs fois.*)

3dly. To march obliquely, often, and for a long time, without intermission. (*Marcher obliquement, souvent et long temps de suite.*)

4thly. Passage of lines, as a battalion of the first, and as battalion of the second line. (*Passage des lignes, comme bataillon de première, et comme bataillon de la seconde ligne.*)

5thly. To march, in file, to the right, or left flank; to wheel in file, successively by files; and to form line, to the right, or left flank, by files. (*Marcher par le flanc droit, ou par le flanc gauche; changer de direction par file; et se former sur la gauche en bataille.*)

6thly. To pass a defile retreating. (*Passer le défilé en retraite.*)

7thly. To cause the drums to beat the call for working parties; and, afterwards, to assemble, and form the battalion. (*Faire battre la breloque; et rallier, ensuite, le bataillon.*)

Remarks on this arrangement of the discipline of the battalion into lessons.

Observations relatives à cette division de l'école de bataillon par leçons.

The first lesson, which includes the loadings and firings; the second, which includes marching in column, and all that relates to it; the fifth, which comprehends the march in line, and the various movements connected with it, being the most essential parts of this instruction, are therefore those that ought to be most dwelt on, in the exercise of the battalion.

The battalions which are expert in the execution of the second and fifth lessons, will, in a very short time, attain perfection in the execution of the third and fourth.

Arms may be supported in marching in file, by companies, or grand divisions; as also, when marching in column with a cadenced step.

Arms may be, likewise, supported in marching in line, sometimes, when the battalions are well disciplined, and aligned.

The quick step must not be made use of in the instruction of battalions separately, either in marching in line, or in column, or in formations, until they are thoroughly confirmed and grounded in the cadence of the ordinary step.

The non-cadenced, or route-step, is not to be made use of in the discipline of the battalion, excepting for the purpose of practising the movements relating to a column of route.

SECTION V.

EVOLUTIONS OF THE LINE.

THE Discipline of the Battalion comprehending the principles and explication of all the movements that a single battalion can make in any case that may arise, it remains to apply these principles to the operation of a line consisting of many battalions.

In laying down the instructions for the movements of the line, eight battalions are supposed acting conjointly ; but the rules which will be given, are equally applicable to a regiment, to a brigade, or to any indefinite number of battalions.

The discipline of the battalion has been divided into five parts. A similar division will be observed here.

Whenever several brigades are to manœuvre in line, each battalion will be distinguished by its number, according to the rank it holds in the line. The battalion on the right will be termed the *first*, that next, the *second*, the following, the *third*, and so on, in this order, to the battalion on the left of the whole line.

The Situations of the Commander in Chief; of a Commandant of Brigade, and of a Colonel, in Line, and in Column.

Places du Commandant en Chef, des Chefs de Brigade et de Regiment, soit en ligne, soit en colonne.*

In line, the commander in chief has no fixed situation assigned him ; and he is to repair to all situations where his presence may be necessary.

In

* “ Chef de brigade” and “ colonel” have generally been supposed one and the same persons. They are, though in the following page, distinct situations are assigned to these two officers. When

In column, he is to be, invariably, at its head, in order to direct its movements according to the views he may have.

In evolutions, he will station himself where he can most advantageously direct the execution of the general movement. However, in all cases, the commander in chief will repair to every place where his presence may, by himself, be deemed requisite; placing, in his absence, another officer in his situation, who is entrusted with the care of directing the execution of his orders.

In line, the commandants of brigades post themselves about fifty paces in the rear of the centre of their brigades.

In column, they will post themselves on the pivot flank side of the column, opposite to the centre of the brigade, and

a colonel is called *chef de brigade*, he discharges the duty of a general of brigade, as appears from authorities adduced.

Brigadier, officier qui commande un corps de troupes appelé *brigade*: il marche après le *marechal-de-camp*; il commande, en tout, aux colonels, et obéit, en tout, aux officiers généraux de l'armée. — *Nouveau Dictionnaire Militaire (recently published at Paris.)*

The "brigadier," commanding the "colonel," must, in military language, be rendered, *commandant of brigade*. When lately in France, I found that the denominations of *chef de brigade*, *chef de regiment*, and *chef de bataillon*, in common conversation, were giving way to the old appellations.—"Toutes les brigades seront composées de deux demi-brigades, ou de six bataillons."—Les plus anciens régimens seront chefs de brigades. Chaque brigade sera commandée par un général de brigade. Le plus ancien *chef de brigade de la brigade*, commandera la brigade, en l'absence du général de brigade." "En l'absence du général de brigade, les chefs de brigades rempliront le même objet, chacun pour leur demi-brigade." *Des honneurs funèbres*, pour un chef de brigade, étant à son corps: le corps tout entier prendra les armes et marchera au convoi. Pour un chef de bataillon, la totalité de son bataillon, avec un drapeau."—"Règlement provisoire sur le service de l'infanterie en campagne, an. vii."

A translation of this small useful work may, probably, be published. It appears from the above extracts, that the senior colonel of each half brigade, when detached, or of each brigade, acts, occasionally, as a general of brigade, and that the colonel of the oldest regiment of three that compose a brigade, holds a rank nearly adequate to that of a brigadier general in our service. A general of brigade seems adequate to our major-general, a general of division to a lieutenant general, and a general in chief, to a general in the British service. A general of brigade was, under the old régime, called "*un maréchal de camp*."

and about twelve or fifteen paces on the outside of the line of the pivot directors.

In line, the colonels take post, about thirty paces in the rear of the centre of their regiment.

In column, they post themselves, like the commandants of brigades, opposite to the centre of their regiments.

The commandants of brigades, and colonels of regiments, in line, in column, or in going through the various other movements, will carefully superintend the exact and regular execution of all the orders communicated to them; and for this purpose, they are permitted to move, every where, throughout the extent of their brigade or regiment, where they may deem their presence necessary.

The posts of the lieutenant colonels, of the adjutants-major, and of the adjutants, have, either in line, or in column, been assigned them, in the *discipline of the battalion*.

General Rules for the Words of Command.

Règles générales pour les commandemens.

When all the battalions of the line are to execute the same movement, the commander in chief will give the battalion nearest to him, the general words of command relative to the movement, which are to be, immediately, repeated by the lieutenant colonel of that battalion*.

Each lieutenant colonel of a battalion must, always, repeat, with the utmost rapidity, all the general words of command which he may hear given to the battalion immediately on his right, or left, according to the side whence the word comes; unless the commander in chief may have given, or sent to him, a contrary order*.

The lieutenant colonels having repeated the general words of command, as has been directed, will order, and cause to be executed, immediately afterwards, without regulating themselves by each other, the preparatory movements in their battalion, which are to precede the general movement; the generals of brigade and colonels, will superintend the prompt execution of these preparatory movements, in their regiment and brigade, taking care
that

* See Rules, Line movements, Nos. 2. and 4.

that the lieutenant colonel does not make any mistake in this respect.

The commander in chief will, always, give the word of command which is to terminate the execution of the general movement.

The adjutants-major, and the adjutants, placed in the rear of the right and left of their battalion in line, repeat the general commands, either of caution, or execution, whenever the extent of the front of their battalions, the wind, or the noise of the small arms, prevent these words of commands from being easily heard from one battalion to another *.

In the case, where a lieutenant colonel has not heard the general word of command, and sees the next battalion executing the movement, he will, immediately, cause his own battalion to go through the same movement *.

When foreign regiments are in line with French regiments, the lieutenant colonels of the battalions of the foreign nations will, first, repeat the general words of command in French; and, then, the same, in their own proper language.

When the line is to execute a central movement, the commander in chief will repair to the point which he has chosen for the centre on which the movement is to take place; and he will communicate, or send to the lieutenant colonel of each of the nearest battalions on the right and left, the order to give the general word of command relative to the movement which each portion of the line is to execute; as will be explained herein, afterwards †.

In

* See Rules, Line movements, article 2, 3.

† “ Dans chaque ordonnance des troupes, on peut exécuter la même évolution de plusieurs manières différentes. Il s'agit de déterminer la meilleure; il s'agit de fixer les caractères d'après lesquels on doit estimer leur bonté.

Ces caractères sont—1^o. la promptitude; 2^o. la facilité; 3^o. la justesse qui doit être telle que chaque partie des troupes sache ce qu'elle doit faire, et soit dirigée dans son mouvement par des points fixes, qui l'empêchent de l'exécuter autrement qu'il ne doit être exécuté.—4^o. La sûreté, en supposant que les troupes qui manœuvrent aient à craindre quelque chose de la part de l'ennemi. Les évolutions qui réuniront ces caractères au plus haut degré seront infailliblement les meilleures.”—See *Tactique Prussienne*, page 251.

Let the reader carry this in his mind, in order to ascertain how far the French evolutions come up to these requisites.

In column, the repetition of words of command will be subject to the same rules.

Whenever a line breaks into several columns, the senior officer in rank of each, will command it, and will discharge with respect to the column, the duties of commander in chief.

Formation of Regiments in Line in front of their Quarters.*

Formation des Regimens en bataille devant leur quartier.

When a regiment is to form in line in front of its quarters, the colonel will order the company of the centre of either battalion, some paces to the front, establish it on the direction to be given to the line, and order two markers to place themselves close in front of this company; and he will cause the lieutenant colonel of the other battalion to be warned, at the same time, to establish the company of the centre of his battalion, on the same line of direction.

These two companies being, thus, formed, at battalion-distance, and the length of an interval, from each other, on one and the same line, the colonel will cause a short roll to be beat, at the conclusion of which, the companies of each battalion will, by command of their respective captains, move up, successively, on the alignment of the company of the centre of their respective battalions; and the lieutenant colonels must see that the directors of both battalions place themselves, accurately, on the same line. The battalions being formed, if the regiment is to manœuvre, the colonel will order the adjutants to tell off the battalions, which is to be, quickly, done, by beginning on the right of each; and the company of grenadiers of the second battalion will join that of the first, on the right of the regiment.

The companies are to be equalized as much as possible; the non-commissioned officers who are to form the guard

VOL. I.

B b

of

* “ Inventez les mouvemens les plus ingénieux relative à l'ordonnance adoptée; demontrez en la possibilité par le raisonnement: si vous les donnez à exécuter à des troupes mal dressés, ces manœuvres occasionneront la confusion la plus ridicule, et paroîtront impraticables.”—See *Tactique Prussienne*, page 254.

of the colours, of each battalion, will fall in on the left of the fourth company, and are to be reckoned among the number of files of that company, which, on this account, is to have three files of battalion men, less than the other companies.

The interval between the battalions, will be eight toises *.

Formation and order of march of a party for trooping the Colours.

Composition et marche du detachment qui ira chercher les drapeaux.

When the drums beat for parading the regiment under arms, if the colours are required, one of the two companies of grenadiers, in their tour of duty, or if they are detached, one of the battalion companies, will march to bring, and troop the colours, in the following order.

The drum-major, and the drummers of the battalion furnishing the party, followed by the band; the detachment, in column of subdivisions, with supported arms; and the two serjeants-major appointed for carrying the colours, abreast, between the two subdivisions.

The party marches in this order, without music, or beat of drum. When arrived in front of the commanding officer's quarters, the subdivisions wheel up into line, with the band formed on the right.

As soon as the detachment is in line, the two serjeants-major who are to carry the colours, will proceed to receive them, accompanied by the lieutenant, and a serjeant belonging to the party.

When, afterwards, the two serjeants-major come out with the colours, followed by the lieutenant, and serjeant, they will halt before the door, or gate.

At the instant when the colours are brought out, the officer commanding the party will order arms to be presented, and the drums will beat the *troop* (*le drapeau*.)

After beating some time, accompanied by the band, the officer commanding the party will direct the beating and music to cease; he will order the party, then, to shoulder arms, and to wheel, or file, into subdivisions: the

* Or 16 yards. See Rules, Part IV, commencement, paragraph seventh.

the two serjeants-major who carry the colours, place themselves, side by side, between the two subdivisions; and the lieutenant and serjeant resume their places.

The officer commanding will, then, march off the party in the same order in which it arrived, in order to join the regiment assembled on the parade. The drums beat, and the music accompanies.

Compliments paid to the Colours.

Honneurs qui seront rendus aux drapeaux.

When the colours arrive, the colonel will order arms to be shouldered; the drums will cease beating, and in quick time, with the party, will resume their places in line, passing for that purpose, in rear of the regiment; and the lieutenant colonels will place themselves, respectively, six paces in front of the file in the centre of their battalion.

The bearers of the colours will march, in quick time, side by side, at the distance of ten paces before the front, each halting opposite to the centre of his battalion, and facing towards it; the lieutenant colonel will, then, order arms to be presented, he himself, immediately afterwards, saluting with his sword; the bearers of the colours, will, immediately take their posts in the centre of the battalion, and the lieutenant colonel is to order arms to be shouldered.

The colours are escorted back to the quarters of the commandant of the regiment, in the order prescribed above.

PART I.

Article First.

To open Ranks.

Ouvrir les rangs.

1. To effect this, the commander in chief will order,
1. *Attention, in order to open ranks. (Garde à vous pour ouvrir vos rangs.)*

2. This word of command having been repeated, the lieutenant colonels of battalions, immediately afterwards, command, *rear ranks, take open order (en arrière, ouvrez*

vos rangs), which will be executed as prescribed in the *discipline of the battalion*; the commander in chief will, then, order,

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

3. Upon this word of command, loudly and quickly repeated, the centre and rear ranks step back, conforming to the directions laid down in the *discipline of the battalion*.

4. Each battalion executes this movement as if it were single; and, consequently, no attempt is to be made to align the centre and rear ranks of the different battalions, on each other.

Article Second.

Manual Exercise.

Maniement des armes.

5. The manual exercise is never to be gone through in line, when the number of battalions exceeds one.

Article Third.

Loading and Firings.

Charge et Feux.

6. In line, loading in quickest time only is to take place.

7. When the line is to load, the commander in chief gives the caution,

1. *Prepare to load.* (*Garde à vous pour charger vos armes.*)

The caution having been repeated, the commander in chief orders,

2. *Load.* (*Chargez vos armes.*)

8. This word of command, which is to be, immediately, repeated, will be obeyed, as has been prescribed in the *discipline of the battalion*.

9. When the line is to fire, posted, the commander in chief will order,

The line will fire by battalions, by wings, or, by companies. (*Feu de bataillon, (ou de demi-bataillon), ou de peloton.*)

This

This order having been repeated, the commander in chief will give the word *.

2. *Commence firing.* (*Commencez le feu.*)

10. The odd, or right hand battalions, will begin the firing by battalions; the lieutenant colonel of each of these battalions having repeated the word, *commence firing*, will, immediately, give the words directed to be used in the *discipline of the battalion*, for executing this fire.

11. The lieutenant colonels of the even, alternate, or left-hand battalions, are not to give their first word of command, till they observe some firelocks shouldered in the odd battalion which is, immediately, on their right; the lieutenant colonels of the first, or odd battalions, will, in their turns, observe the same rule with respect to the even battalion, which is, immediately, on their left; and the fire will continue, thus, alternately.

12. The fire by wings, is to be executed, in each battalion, as has been directed in the *discipline of the battalion*; each lieutenant colonel of a battalion, having repeated the word, *commence firing*, will, immediately afterwards, without regulating himself by the battalion next to him, give the words of command requisite for the execution of this fire.

13. Firing by companies will be executed as has been prescribed in the discipline of the battalion; and the captains of the odd, or right-hand companies, are to give their first word of command, immediately after the lieutenant colonel has given the word, *commence firing*.

14. The firing of companies, by independent files, will be executed as follows: the commander in chief orders,

1. *The battalion will fire by independent files.* (*Feu de deux rangs.*)

The command having been repeated, the lieutenant colonels will, immediately afterwards, order, 1st, *Battalion*; 2dly, *Ready*, (*armez.*)

The commander in chief, then, orders †,

2. *Commence firing.* (*Commencez le feu.*)

B. b 3

15. Upon

* See Rules, Line, § 206.

† “Le Commandant en Chef” means simply the senior officer present, who acts as commander in chief.

15. Upon this word of command, repeated by the lieutenant colonels of battalions, the fire by files independent, will commence, and be executed, as has been directed in the *discipline of the battalion*.

16. The commander in chief will cause the firing to cease by a very short ruffle, or roll of the drum, to be repeated by the drums of each battalion, the moment it is heard; and as soon as each battalion has loaded, the lieutenant colonel of it will order a tap of the drum-stick, as a signal for the captains of companies, and their covering serjeants, to resume their places in line.

17. To fire to the rear, the commander in chief will order,

1. *The battalion will fire to the rear. (Feu en arrière.)*

This command having been repeated, the lieutenant colonels will, immediately afterwards, command,

1. *Battalion, to the right about = FACE. (Bataillon demi-tour = à droite.)*

18. The commander in chief will, then, cause the various firings to be gone through, by the same words, and modes of procedure, as detailed in this article.

19. After causing the firing to cease, in order to front the line, the commander in chief orders,

1. *The line will front. (Face en tête.)*

The lieutenant colonels having repeated this word, will, immediately afterwards, order, 1st, *Battalion, right about, = FACE. (Bataillon demi-tour = à droite.)*

20. The commander in chief wishing to make the line stand at ease, will order,

1. *Prepare to stand at ease. (Garde à vous pour reposer.)*

This command of caution having been repeated, the commander in chief orders,

2. *Order (or support) = ARMS. (Reposez vous sur vos armes (ou l'arme au bras.)*

This command having been repeated, and executed, he will order,

3. *Stand at ease, (or, stand at ease in your positions.) (Repos (ou en place repos*.)*

This

* It may be recollected, that in the French service there are two mode

This order is to be obeyed, as directed in the *discipline of the battalion.*)

21. When standing at ease is to terminate, the commander in chief will order the drums to beat a very short roll, to be repeated by the drums of the line, the instant they hear it.

22. The roll having ended, the lieutenant colonels will command, *battalion*, (*bataillon*;) on which the line will resume the steady position under arms.

23. The commander in chief will, then, order,

Shoulder = ARMS. (*Portez* = *vos armes.*)

This command having been repeated, the line will shoulder arms.

PART II.

Various modes of formation of column, from line.

Differentes manières de passer de l'ordre en bataille a l'ordre en colonne.

Article First.

To break to the right or left, into open column, by wheeling forward to the left, or right, from line.

Rompre à droite, ou à gauche.

24. To effect this, the commander in chief will order,

1. *By companies, to the right (or left) wheel.* (*Par peloton, à droite (ou à gauche.)*)

This

modes of *standing at ease*. In one case, the men are required to keep either heel steady in its place: and in the other, immobility (as they term it), or steadiness of the heel, is not required; and the men are permitted to move about in their places, without quitting them. Travellers ought to be well informed, before they communicate their observations to the public. I made an excursion into France and Holland in the end of the year 1802. In four letters, signed, "*A Looker-on*," and published in the "*Sun*," and "*True Briton*," in November of that year, I inserted some account of observations I had made. I adverted to the consular parades held twice each month, in front of the Tuilleries. I wrote, that the French soldiers, unlike the English, are not required to keep the left heel steady in its position, when *standing at ease*. Had I been, then, well acquainted with their system of Tactics, I would either not have made the remark, or would have mentioned that their system authorizes two modes of assuming this position, a thing, undoubtedly, very uncommon in any service.

This command having been repeated, the commander in chief will order,

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

25. Upon this word, loudly repeated, the line will break into open column, conformable to the principles prescribed in the *discipline of the battalion**.

26. It has been prescribed in the *discipline of the battalion*, that on the companies breaking into open column, no director is to stir after hearing the word (*eyes*) FRONT, (*fixe*), given by the captain of his company, though such director may not be in the line of those preceding him: this rule is to be observed from one battalion to another, in columns composed of several battalions; thus, the director of the company at the head of a battalion column, will not move, after hearing the word *eyes front*, given by his captain, even though he may not be covering the directors of the battalion, immediately, preceding his own: it must be, when the column is put in march, that the directors, who are not accurately on the line, are to cover insensibly, in such manner as that each may march in the track of the director before him.

27. If, however, the commander in chief saw it eligible to form the line, immediately, he would carefully rectify, previously, the position of the directors, by one of the modes to be explained, herein, afterwards, in No. 89, and the following ones, or in No. 94, and following.

Article Second.

To form open column, by filing into it from the right or left of companies, so as to stand in column on the line, with either the right or left in front.

Rompre en arriere, à droite (ou, à gauche.)

28. To form open column of companies in rear of the line, with the pivot flank on it, the commander in chief will order,

1. *The line will form a column of companies in rear of the line by filing from the right (or left) of companies. (Par Peloton, en arriere à droite (ou à gauche.)*

The

* See Rules, page 287, Open column of the line.

The lieutenant colonels having repeated this caution, will, immediately afterwards, order, 1st, *The battalion will face to the right (or left)*; (*Bataillon, par le flanc droit (ou gauche)*); 2dly, *To the right (or left)* = FACE, (*à droite, (ou à gauche.)*)

On this, the commander in chief will order,

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

29. Upon this word, loudly and lively repeated, each battalion files into column, from the flanks of companies, as directed in the *discipline of the battalion*.

Article Third.

To wheel forward to the right, into open column, in order to march towards the left.*

Rompres par la droite, pour marcher vers la gauche.

30. The commander in chief, to effect this, will order,

1. *The line will wheel, by companies, to the right, in order to prolong the column towards the left.* (*Rompres par la droite, pour marcher vers la gauche.*)

31. This command of caution, having been repeated, the lieutenant colonel of the battalion on the right, will cause the movement to be commenced, and executed, as has been directed in the *discipline of the battalion*.

32. The lieutenant colonels of the following battalions will, each in his turn, cause the movement to be commenced, and the company on the right of each will march forward twice the length of the extent of the front of it, while the others are wheeling forward to the right.

33. The lieutenant colonels will judge the moment when they ought to make their battalions wheel forward into column, and march: in such manner, as to leave between their leading company, and the rear one of the battalion preceding in the order of the column, the distance of one company, and eight toises more.

34. The commander in chief will cause the line to break into open column, with the left in front, in order to direct its march towards the other flank, on the same principles.

Article

* See Rules, Battalion, § 93, where the above mode of forming the open column, but by companies, successively, on the march from right to left, is introduced.

*Article Fourth.**To form close column of the line *.**Ployer la ligne en colonne serrée.*

(Plate XXVII.)

35. It is supposed that the close column of the line is to be formed, by grand divisions, with the right in front, on the second grand division of the fourth battalion; and this supposition includes all the cases.

35. The commander in chief, when proceeding towards the fourth battalion, will order,

1. *The line will form close column of grand divisions.*
(*Colonne serrée par division.*)

37. This command having been repeated, the commander in chief will send an order to the lieutenant colonel of the fifth battalion, to give the following caution, which is to be, loudly and lively, repeated by the lieutenant colonel of each of the battalions on his left.

*Form close column in rear of the fourth battalion.**Sur le quatrième bataillon, en arrière, en colonne.*

38. The commander in chief will, at the same time, send an order to the lieutenant colonel of the third battalion, to give the following caution, which is to be, loudly and lively, repeated by the lieutenant colonel of each of the battalions on his right.

*Form close column in front of the fourth battalion.**Sur le quatrième bataillon, en avant, en colonne.*

39. The order of the commander in chief having been communicated to the lieutenant colonels of the third and fifth battalions, he will direct the lieutenant colonel of the fourth to order,

Form

* See Rules, page 313, Close column of the line.—*The great object of the close column is to form line to the front in the quickest manner.*—See Dundas's Principles of Military Movements, published in 1788, page 109.

Form close column, with the right in front, on the second grand division.

Sur la seconde division, la droite en tête, en colonne.

40. The lieutenant colonel of the fourth battalion, having given this caution, will, immediately afterwards, give the following words: 1st, *The battalion will face inwards, (bataillon par le flanc gauche, et le flanc droit);* 2dly, *Inwards = FACE, (à gauche = et à droite.)*

41. The lieutenant colonels of the fifth, sixth, seventh and eighth battalions, having given the order prescribed in No. 37, will, immediately afterwards, each, give his battalion the following orders: 1st, *The battalion will face to the right, (bataillon, par le flanc droit);* 2dly, *To the right = FACE, (à droite.)* The three files on the right of each grand division will disengage to the rear.

42. The lieutenant colonels of the third, second, and first battalions, having given the word of command mentioned in No. 38, will, immediately afterwards, each, give the following orders: 1st, *The battalion will face to the left, (bataillon par le flanc gauche);* 2dly, *To the left = FACE, (à gauche.)* The three files on the left of each grand division, will disengage to the front.

43. The lieutenant colonels having given these different words of command to their respective battalions, the commander in chief will order,

MARCH (or *quick = MARCH.*) (*Marche*) ou *pas accéléré = marche *.*)

44. Upon this word, loudly and lively repeated, the fourth battalion will form close column, conforming to the rules laid down in the *discipline of the battalion.*

45. The fifth, sixth, seventh and eighth battalions will execute what follows: The first grand division of each of these battalions, conducted by the adjutant-major, will,

* In the French service, "stepping short," termed, *le pas d'un pied*, or, *raccourcir le pas*, means that each step is to be taken half the length of the ordinary step of two French feet, equal to about two feet one inch and something more than a half, English measure. The length of the sole of the foot is, in general, nearly ten inches, therefore, to step short in the French service, the heel must be carried $13\frac{1}{2}$ inches before the heel of the foot planted on the ground. In some cases stepping *half-short* is required, as appears from different parts of this work.

will, from the very commencement of the march, direct itself to the rear, by the shortest line, towards the place it is to occupy in the column: it will march with a step of one foot, till the other grand divisions of the same battalion come up even with it, after which it will resume the step of two feet; and each battalion formed, in this manner into close column, will march to the point where it is to enter the general column. Arrived at the distance of twelve or fifteen paces from this point, the first grand division of each battalion will conduct its march in such manner as to enter parallel, or square to the direction of the general column, and at the distance of six paces from the rear grand division of the preceding battalion; the other grand divisions will direct their march parallel to the first, and will enter, successively, at the distance of three paces from each other, in the column. The captains commanding grand divisions, having arrived as far as the line of the directors of the left of the column, will stop in their own persons, will see their respective grand divisions file past them, and will conform, in halting, fronting, and dressing them, to the directions laid down in the *discipline of the battalion*.

46. The third, second, and first battalions will execute what follows: The fourth grand division of each of these battalions, conducted by the adjutant-major, will direct its march, from the commencement, to the front, and by the shortest line, towards the point at which the column is to be entered; it will march, or step short, taking each step of one foot, till the other grand divisions of the same battalion come up even with it, after which it will resume the step of two feet, and each battalion, thus, formed in close column, will march towards the point where it is to enter the general column: having arrived at the distance of twelve or fifteen paces from this point, the fourth grand division will be so conducted, as to enter the column square, or in a parallel direction, and at the distance of six paces in front of the first grand division of the battalion which it is immediately to precede in the order of the column; the other grand divisions will direct their march parallel to the fourth, and will, successively, enter the column, at the distance of three paces in front of each other. The director of the left of each grand division, having arrived,

rived, nearly, as far as the line of directors of the left of the column, the captain commanding the grand division, will halt, front, and dress it, conforming to what has been prescribed in the *discipline of the battalion*: and the director of the left of each grand division, will face to the rear.

47. The lieutenant colonels, during the movement, will maintain the greatest order in their respective battalions, observing that the grand divisions march with their flanks well aligned, and at the distance of three paces from each other, regulating their march to a flank, by the grand division which is to enter the column first; and seeing that they enter square, and parallel to those which have, previously, taken their places in the column.

48. The adjutants-major will take care that the grand division of their battalion which is to enter the column first, will enter it at the distance of six paces to the rear, or front, of that battalion which has taken its place immediately previous to their own, in the order of the column; and they will, very accurately, dress the directors on each other, as each grand division comes into its parallel position in the general close column.

49. The general in chief, or he who is charged with the execution of his orders, will place himself in front of the director of the left of the grand directing division; in order to superintend the formation of the column, and to ascertain, that the directors of the left, correctly, cover on the pivot flank of the column.

50. As each of the battalions which are to take rank in front of the directing grand division, have taken post in the column, the lieutenant colonel will command,

Directors, to the right about = FACE. (*Guides, demi-tour* = à droite.)

51. Upon this word of command, the directors of the left of the grand divisions of the battalion, will face about to the front of the column.

52. A close column of the line with the left in front, is formed on the same principles, by applying to battalions on the left of that of which the grand division of direction forms a component part, all that has been detailed in this article, as necessary to be done by battalions on its right, and reciprocally.

53. On the same principles, a close column of the line may be formed on any other eligible grand division and battalion.

54. If, instead of taking as the *grand division of direction*, a grand division in the interior of the line, the general in chief deemed it eligible to form close column on the grand division on the right, or left flank of the line, the movement would be executed as follows :

55. Let it be supposed that the general in chief selects as the *directing grand division*, the grenadiers of the battalion on the right of the line ; he will proceed to that battalion, and order,

1. *The line will form close column of grand divisions.*
(*Colonne serrée par division.*)

56. This order having been repeated, he will send an order to the lieutenant colonel of the second battalion, to give the following word of command, to be repeated by each of the lieutenant colonels of battalions to the left,

Form close column in rear (or front) of the first battalion,
(*Sur le premier bataillon en arrière (ou en avant) en colonne.*)

57. The order of the general in chief having been communicated to the lieutenant colonel of the second battalion, he will direct the lieutenant colonel of the first battalion to order, *The battalion will form close column in rear (or in front) of the grenadiers,* (*Sur les grenadiers en arrière (ou en avant,) en colonne.*)

58. The lieutenant colonels having given the caution which they were directed to pass to the left, will, immediately afterwards, order, 1. *The battalion will face to the right ;* (*Bataillon par le flanc droit*) ; 2. *To the right =* FACE, (*à droite.*)

The general in chief will, then, command,

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

59. On this word, loudly and lively, repeated, the general movement will commence.

60. To conclude, were the general in chief to select the grand division on the left of the line, as the *directing grand division*, he would proceed to the battalion it belongs to, commanding,

1. *The*

1. *The line will form close column of grand divisions.*
(*Colonne serrée par division.*)

61. This command having been repeated, he will detach an aid-de-camp to direct the lieutenant colonel of the seventh battalion to give the following order, to be repeated by each of the lieutenant colonels who are on his right: *Form close column in rear (or in front) of the eighth battalion, (Sur le huitième bataillon en arrière (ou en avant) en colonne.)*

The general in chief would direct the lieutenant colonel of the eighth battalion to order, *The battalion will form close column in rear (or in front) of the fourth grand division, (Sur la quatrième division en arrière (ou en avant) en colonne.)*

62. The movement will be executed according to the principles prescribed above.

A Remark on forming close column from line.

Observation relative au mouvement de ployer une ligne en colonne serrée.

63. This method of forming close column from line, unites the two-fold advantage of maintaining the battalions in all their strength, and concentrated, during the execution of the movement, as each forms a separate close column; and of requiring the least time possible for effecting the change, as each battalion moves over the shortest line possible, in attaining its situation in the column.

PART III.

Article First.

To march in open column at full distance.*

Marcher en colonne avec distance entière.

64. When the general commanding is to put the column in march, he will indicate to the lieutenant colonel of the battalion at the head, the line on which the leading director is to march; and the lieutenant colonel will, immediately, point out to this director the means he is to make use of, for assuring the direction of the march, in

c c 2

conformity

* The Prussian company-officers march on the pivot flank to preserve distances, which M. de Guibert, in his General Treatise on Tactics, deems more easy than experience shews that it is.

conformity with the principles established in the *discipline of the battalion*, in Nos. 112, 113, and 114.

65. This arrangement being made, the general in chief commands,

1. *The column will advance. (Colonne en avant.)*

The lieutenant colonels of battalions having repeated this order, will, immediately afterwards, give the marching caution, *march by the left, (guide à gauche,)* if the column has the right in front; or, *march by the right, (guide à droite,)* if the left is in front.

The general in chief will, then, command,

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

66. At this word, to be repeated with the utmost rapidity, the column will step off.

67. The leading director will march on the given line, by the means prescribed in the *discipline of the battalion*, and the following directors will march in the track of the one immediately preceding, without occupying their attention with the general direction.

68. The adjutant-major of the battalion placed near the head of the column, will carefully observe that the leading director does not deviate from the line he ought to march on; and the adjutant-major of each of the following battalions will see that the director of the first company of his battalion preserves between himself, and the director of the rear company of the preceding battalion, a space equal to the extent of the front of his company, and eight toises more, constituting the interval between the battalions, when in line.

69. When a column is to prolong a given line, in order to form on it, by a wheel *to the left (à gauche)*, or *to the right (à droite en bataille)*, into line, the general in chief will, always, cause the line to be marked off, by camp-colour-men, by one of the modes prescribed in Nos. 143 and 144 of the *discipline of the battalion* *.

70. If, in this case, the column arrives before, or behind the line, the commander in chief will, previously, detach two aids-de-camp, or two mounted officers, to ascertain two intermediate points between the points of direction on the right and left which he has chosen; the intermediate points having been found, one of the above officers

* See Rules, Line —, § 180.

cers will take post at the point where the head of the column is to enter on the line ; and the column will conform to what has been prescribed in the *discipline of the battalion*, in Nos. 123, and following, or in No. 131, and following ones there, on this head.

71. The manner of finding two intermediate points, between two distant points of direction given, has been explained in the *discipline of the battalion*, No. 305, and following*.

Article Second.

Column of route †.

Colonne en route.

72. The column being supposed halted, if the general in chief intends that it shall *march at ease* (*au pas de route*) he will give the words of command prescribed for causing it to march with the cadenced step ; with this only difference, that the word MARCH, must be preceded by the words, *route-step*, or *march at ease* (*pas de route*), which the lieutenant colonels of battalions will repeat.

73. If, when the column is marching with the cadenced step, the general in chief should deem it necessary to assume the route-step, he will command,

1. *Route-step*, or, *March at ease*. (*Pas de route.*)

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

74. All the principles relative to a column of route, having been detailed in the *discipline of the battalion*, it remains only to add here, that when a column consisting of several battalions meets with a defile that requires a diminution of the front of companies, this movement is not to be executed, but as each battalion arrives on the same ground, on which the preceding battalion has gone through it, as columns of route are never to diminish their front till a want of space renders it necessary ; thus, for instance, a column of companies meeting with a defile which can only admit a subdivision, the lieutenant colonel of the battalion at the head of the column, will cause all the companies to

c c 3

form

* See Rules, Line, § 179, *taking up lines of march and formation*, in which the mode detailed in No. 305, of the *Discipline of the Battalion*, is very nearly described.

† See Rules, page 368, Line.

form subdivisions, at once, when the column is close to the defile; but the lieutenant colonel of the next battalion will not repeat the command given by the lieutenant colonel preceding him, until his own battalion shall have arrived on the same ground, and so on, to the rear of the column*.

Article Third.

Change of direction of an open column at full distance of companies.

Changemens de direction en colonne à distance entière.

75. To effect this, the general in chief will, previously, give an order to the lieutenant colonel of the head battalion of the column; and will point out to him where the movement is to commence, placing an aid-de-camp on the spot.

76. The change of direction will be executed according to the principles prescribed in the *discipline of the battalion*, in No. 191, and following.

77. These rules will be observed in columns of manœuvre, tho' marching at ease; but in columns of route the changes of direction will be executed on a caution, only, from the company officer, according as the windings of the road require it, and conformable to the rules laid down in the *discipline of the battalion*, No. 163.

Article Fourth.

Change of direction when the rear battalions turn on the march into file, and file into the new direction†.

Changemens de direction par la prompte manœuvre.

78. The column being supposed marching, with the right in front, and the commandant seeing it eligible to change direction to the left, *by the quick manœuvre*, will indicate to the lieutenant colonel of the leading battalion, the

* See Rules, Line, column of route, No. 8, and following.

† See Rules, Line, § 182, where the above movement is executed, partly, by filing of companies, and partly, by the rear battalions breaking off from the general column and entering where their rear is to rest on the line: or, by conducting the heads of the battalions that break off, on a cessation of march in front, to their respective head points in line, and filing the rear companies of these battalions into the general column.

the point where the first company of the column is to execute the movement ; as also the point of view in front, on which the director of the leading company is afterwards to conduct his march ; and when, at least, the two first companies of the column, have entered the new direction, the general commanding will order,

1. *The rear battalions will file into the new direction from the right of companies, on the march. (Prompte manœuvre par le flanc droit.)*

79. The lieutenant colonels having repeated this command, the lieutenant colonel of the leading battalion will immediately afterwards order : *the six rear companies will turn to the right, (six derniers pelotons par le flanc droit.)*

The lieutenant colonels of each of the following battalions will command, or give the word,

The battalion will turn to the right into file. (Bataillon par le flanc droit.)

The commander in chief will, then, order,

2. *Quick = MARCH. (Pas accéléré = marche.)*

80. Upon this word, repeated lively, the movement will be executed according to the principles prescribed in the *discipline of the battalion*, No. 203, and following.

81. The lieutenant colonels of battalions will direct the divisions of their battalions, respectively, to incline towards the point, at which the leading company of the column has changed its direction, in such manner, as that they may be at their proper distances, in taking their position in the column.

82. The leading company of each battalion must enter the column, at the distance of eight toises from the company in the rear of the preceding battalion ; in order, after taking rank in the column, that it may be distant from that company, eight toises, and a wheeling distance.

83. Were the general in chief to halt the column, before all the rear battalions had filed into it, into the new direction ; the lieutenant colonels of such battalions as had not entered the column, would not repeat the word of command, *Column*, HALT, (*Colonne, halte,*) given by the general in chief ; these battalions would continue marching, and their lieutenant colonels would cause the divisions to

incline to the rear, so as to enter the general column at the requisite distance from the preceding battalion *.

84. If, at the moment when the general in chief has halted the column, one or more companies of a battalion may not have, as yet, entered the new direction, these companies would continue marching, notwithstanding that the word, HALT, has been repeated by the lieutenant colonel, in order to halt those already in the general column; and these companies would incline, immediately, towards the rear, to resume their proper distances, as has been just explained †.

85. Finally, the general in chief, when he may judge it necessary to establish with more precision, the march of the column in the new direction, may order the general directors on the line, as the leading company, the company of the colours, and that of the rear of each battalion, have taken their position in the column. The general directors of the leading battalion must be carefully maintained on the line which the column is to follow.

Article Fifth.

To halt the column marching at full distance.

Arrêter la colonne à distance entière.

86. To effect this the general in chief commands,

1. *Column.* (*Colonne.*)

This command having been repeated, the general in chief orders,

2. HALT ‡. (*Halte.*)

87. This command must be repeated with the utmost rapidity, from the head to the rear of the column.

88. The

* See Rules, Battalion, § 123, where the battalion in column, files to a flank to gain a new direction. See Rules, Line, § 186, where what the French term "*la prompte manœuvre*," is executed on the same principle; but, instead of filing generally, by the application of the open and close columns to the change of direction.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, from page 371 to page 375, where this evolution calculated to take an enemy's flank, and to refuse a flank by a rapid file movement, is detailed, and reasoned on.

† See Rules, Battalion, § 124, where this movement of rear companies is executed, on a cessation of movement in front.

‡ See Rules, Line, end of § 201, and § 180, No. 5. It is a rule in the Prussian service, that commandants of battalions marching in the

88. The column being halted, if the general in chief intends that the line is to be formed, by *wheeling to the left* (or *right*) *à gauche* (ou *à droite*) *en bataille*), he will, previously, ascertain, as follows, the accuracy of position of the directors.

89. If the general directors are on the flank, the general in chief will, at first, place himself in rear of the bearer of the colours of the battalion at the head of the column, will examine whether or not the bearer of the colours and the general director before him, are placed on the prolongation of the two points in front, on which they had been directed to march, and will rectify their position if requisite ; he will, then, proceed to the front of the general director of the head of the column, and will face towards him, rectifying, if necessary, the position of the bearer of the colours of the following battalion. The adjutants-major will, quickly, dress the general directors of their respective battalions, on the preceding colours ; which being done, the general in chief commands,

3. *Directors on the line.* (*Guides sur la ligne.*)

90. At this word of command, repeated lively, the directors of the left, if the right is in front, and the directors of the right, if the left is in front, of all the companies of the column, will step, nimbly, on the line of the colours, facing towards the head of the column : the adjutant-major of each battalion, placed some paces in front of, and facing the director of the leading company of his battalion, will confirm the position of the directors of the leading wing ; and the adjutant, placed, likewise, in the rear, at some paces from, and facing the director of the rear company of his battalion, will correct, if necessary, the position of the directors of the rear wing of the battalion*.

91. The directors of companies, in taking their places on the line of direction of the colours of the column, will, all, align themselves correctly on the pikes of the colours in their front, and not on the directors who are before them ; they must, constantly, place themselves, with the utmost attention,

the alignment, are, when the column is to be halted, not to use superfluous words ; such as, *battalion*, *halt*, instead of *HALT*. When the column halts by the signal of a gun, the commandants are to give the word *HALT*, on *bearing* the sound, and not on *seeing* the flash.—The reasons are obvious. See Saldern's *Tactics*, page 202.

* See Rules, Line, § 180. See Rules, Battalion, § 118.

attention, exactly at the distance of their companies behind each other; and the bearers of the colours must, carefully, carry the pike of the colours, perpendicularly before the middle of the body.

92. The directors of companies being accurately established on the line, the general in chief commands,

4. *Left (or right)* = DRESS. (*à gauche (ou à droite)*) = *alignement*.

93. At this word, repeated loudly and lively, each of the companies of the column will incline laterally bearing its pivot flank gently against its director, and will be quickly aligned by the captain. If the companies had several steps to march to bring them on the line, their respective captains would, in that case, face them, and march them up to the director*.

94. If the general directors are not stationed on the flank of the column, the general in chief would proceed fifteen or twenty paces in front of the pivot flank of the column; would place himself, facing to the rear, in the direction to be given to the directors; and would, in the rear of the column, fix on a second point that would determine that direction.

95. The general in chief would, then, command,

1. *Colours, and general directors, on the line.* (*Drapeaux et guides généraux sur la ligne.*)

96. At this word, the bearer of the colours, and the general directors of each of the battalions of the column, will step, nimbly, to the flank; those of the leading battalion will fix their eyes upon the general in chief, who will establish them, quickly, by a signal of his sword, on the straight line passing from himself to the point he has chosen in the rear; those of the following battalion will align themselves on the general directors of the battalion of

* The French have not the side-step in their system of Tactics, of any defined length. Their troops close, as above, a few paces, sideways, to a flank, but without any regular measure of step, and the files dress, successively, to the point of appui. Their officers are of opinion, that a body of men loses its dressing if moved laterally; that openings between the files arise from inequality of steps taken by the different files, especially after as many steps have been taken as there are files moving laterally; and that these openings will be more or less, according as the front rank man on the flank moved to, marches with more or less uniformity.

of the head, and those of all the other battalions of the column, will align themselves on the pikes of the colours which precede them ; and the adjutant-major, and adjutants will, quickly, establish the positions of the general directors of their respective battalions.

97. The general in chief seeing all the colours of the column correctly established on the line of direction, will immediately command, 1. *Directors to the line, (Guides sur la ligne.)*

98. This command having been repeated, and executed as has been directed in Nos. 90 and 91, in this article, the general in chief will command, *Left (or right) DRESS, (à gauche (ou à droite) = alignement.)*

Remarks on this movement.

Observations relatives à ce mouvement.

99. When the general direction of the column is such as nearly corresponds with the views of the general in chief, he can dispense with ordering the general directors to align themselves on the flank ; and may confine himself to, simply, rectifying the position of the directors of the companies which are too much to either hand of the line, by giving the word, *Directors, cover each other in line, (Guides à vos chefs de files.)*

On this word, the adjutants-major and adjutants will, quickly, cause those directors who are out of the line, to incline, to either hand, on it.

Article Sixth.

To close to half distance, or to move up into close column.*

Serrer la colonne à distance de section, ou en masse.

100. In order to close the open column, marching at full wheeling distances, to half, or subdivision distance, or to form close column, the commander in chief orders,

1. *Close to half-distance (or, form close column.) (A distance de section (ou en masse) serrez la colonne.)*

This command having been repeated, the general in chief will order,

2. MARCH,

* See Rules, Line, § 187. See Rules, Battalion, § 138, paragraph three. See Rules, Battalion, § 136.

2. MARCH, (or, *Quick = March.*) (*Marche* (ou, *pas accéléré = Marche.*)

101. The captain at the head of the column will halt his company on hearing this cautionary command given by the general in chief; the other companies, all along towards the rear of the column, will continue to march in ordinary time, or will assume quick time, in order to close to half distance, or to form close column, each on the preceding company; and they will be halted and dressed by their respective captains, as has been prescribed in the *discipline of the battalion*.

102. Were the column, instead of being on the march, halted, the general in chief, to accomplish the above formations, would give the same words of command, as if the column were marching; the company at the head of the column would stand fast, and all the other companies would step off at the word MARCH (or *Quick = March,*) *Marche* (ou *pas accéléré*) = *Marche*); in order to close up to half distance, or to form close column, each in regard to the company preceding, conforming to what has been prescribed in the *discipline of the battalion*.

103. When the open column is to close to half distance, the leading company of each battalion is to be halted at the distance of a company, from the rear of the preceding battalion: and if close column is to be formed, the interval is to be six paces only*. The adjutant-major of the battalion that leads, will place himself in front of, and facing the director on the pivot flank of the leading company, in order to align the directors accurately, as they, respectively, halt, either at half distance, or in close column; and the adjutant-major of each of the following battalions will place himself in rear of the directors on the pivot flank of his battalion, as each closes, or forms up, in order to correct a faulty position of any of his directors, on the line.

Article Seventh.

To march in column at half-distance, or in close column.

Marcher en colonne à distance de section, ou en masse.

104. To a close column, or to a column at half distance,

* See Rules, Line close column, paragraph 5, and § 187.

tance, the general in chief, when such column is from a halt, to be put in march, will give the same words of command, detailed for a column at full distance*.

105. The modes of preserving the flank line of direction pointed out in the case of a column marching at full distance, will be the same for a close column, or for a column at half distance; with this only difference, that the general directors are not to march on the flank, excepting when the column is at full distance.

106. The column at full distance, or the close column, will be halted by the same words of command, as if it were a column marching at full distance.

107. The close column, or the column at half distance being halted, if the general in chief wishes to place the directors on a general line, he will simply establish the two directors at the head of the column on the assumed line, afterwards commanding †,

1. *Directors, cover from the front, on your line.* (*Guides à vos chefs de file.*)

Left (or right) = DRESS. (*à gauche (ou à droite) = alignement.*)

108. At the first word of command, all the directors of the column will, nimbly, cover each other from front to rear of the column; and the adjutant-major and adjutant of each battalion, will, quickly, establish them on the line of directors.

109. The second word of command is to be executed as has been directed to be done in No. 93.

Article Eighth.

Change of direction of a column at half distance.

Changement de direction en colonne à distance de section.

110. A column marching at half distance which is to change its direction, will execute the movement in the same manner as has been prescribed for a column at full distance, with the difference only that has been pointed out in No. 243 of the *discipline of the battalion*, relative to the length of step of the pivots, when the change of direction is effected, by wheeling on a moveable pivot, to and on, the reverse flank.

* See Rules, Battalion, close column, § 140.

† See Rules, Line, § 180.

Article Ninth.

*Change of direction of a close column.**Changement de direction en colonne serrée en masse.*

111. Changes of direction of a close column of the line, are executed by filing from the flank of the column, according to the principles laid down in the *discipline of the battalion*.

112. A close column, with the right in front, is supposed about to change direction to the left: when the head of the column has arrived at the wheeling point, where the change of direction is to take place, the general commanding will halt the column, and will, quickly, establish two markers on the new direction on which the leading grand division, or the leading company of the column, is to move in file, by the mode of procedure indicated in No. 245 of the *discipline of the battalion*; when this is effected, he will order *,

1. *The column will change direction, by filing from the right flank. (Changement de direction sur le flanc droit.)*

This command having been repeated, each lieutenant colonel of a battalion will, immediately afterwards, order, *Battalion, to the right* = FACE. (*Bataillon = à droite.*)

The commander in chief, then orders,

2. MARCH, (*or quick* = MARCH.) (*Marche, (ou pas accéléré = marche.)*)

113. At the word, *march*, the column will file from the right flank into the new direction, conforming to the principles prescribed in the *discipline of the battalion*.

114. The lieutenant colonels of battalions will observe, during the execution of the movement, that the files do not open out; that the grand divisions, or other portions of the battalion filing, enter square on the new direction; and that the interval of six paces, separating the battalions from each other, is preserved †.

115. The adjutant-major of the leading battalion will post himself some paces in front of, and facing the director of the left of the leading grand division, or other portion of the column, in order to confirm the position of the directors

* See Rules, Battalion, § 141.

† See Rules, Line, close column, paragraph 5.

rectors of his own battalion; and the adjutant-major of each of the following battalions, will place himself in rear of the directors of the left of his battalion, as they arrive on the new direction, correcting, if necessary, their positions in the line of preceding directors.

116. To change direction to the right, when the line is in close column, the opposite mode of procedure takes place; and the column will file from its left flank into the new direction.

117. When the column has changed direction, the general in chief may march it off again in the new direction.

Article Tenth.

Countermarch of the open and close columns.*

Contre-marche.

118. The column being at full or half distance, with the right in front, to execute the countermarch, the general in chief orders,

1. *The column will countermarch. (Contre-marche.)*

The lieutenant colonels having repeated this order, will, immediately afterwards, command, 1st, *the battalion will face to the right, (bataillon par le flanc droit:)* 2dly, *to the right = FACE, (à droite:)* 3dly, *by files, to the left about wheel, or, to the left countermarch, (par file, à gauche.)*

The general in chief then commands,

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

119. At this word, repeated loudly and rapidly, all the companies of the column will countermarch, as has been described in the *discipline of the battalion*.

120. When a close column, with the right in front, is to countermarch, the general in chief will order, as in the last instance,

1. *The column will countermarch. (Contre-marche.)*

The lieutenant colonels having repeated this command, will, immediately afterwards, order, 1st, *The battalion will face to the right, (Bataillon par le flanc droit:)* 2dly, *to the right = FACE, (à droite;)* even, or left hand
D d 2
grand

* See Rules, Battalion, § 100.

grand divisions, (or, it may be, even, or, left companies,) forward; (divisions paires (ou bien, pelotons pairs) en avant.)

The general in chief will then order,

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

121. At this word repeated lively, the even, or every other grand division, reckoning from the head, will lead out, to clear the column, and when their rear has quitted the column, the lieutenant colonels will command, 1st, *the whole will countermarch to the left; (divisions paires, et impaires, par files à gauche;)* 2^{dly}, MARCH, (*marche.*) The countermarch is, then, executed as prescribed in the *discipline of the battalion*; and the grenadiers regulate themselves by the rules laid down in No. 274 *.

Article Eleventh.

When the close column of companies, halted, forms column of two companies, or grand divisions.

Etant en colonne par pelotons de pied ferme, former les divisions †.

122. To effect this, in a column with the right in front, the general in chief orders,

1. *Alternate companies will form column of grand divisions.*

The lieutenant colonels, after repeating this, will, immediately, command, 1st, *the even, or left companies, will face to the left, (pelotons pairs par le flanc gauche;)* 2^{dly}, *to the left* = FACE, (*à gauche.*)

The general in chief will, then, order,

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

123. At this word of command, loudly and lively repeated, the movement is executed, as prescribed in the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

124. Each

* See Rules, Battalion, § 143, and Line, § 192, and 181, paragraph 12.—In the above paragraph the French expression is, “*par files de gauche.*” The sign of the genitive *de*, is evidently a typographical error, the phrase implied by the sense being “*par files à gauche,*” where the preposition *à* conveys the intention of countermarching to the left. The edition of 1793, which I have recently received, has it, “*par files à gauche.*”

† See Rules, Battalion, § 147.—See Rules, Line, § 187, and also paragraph 5th of this §.

124. Each lieutenant colonel will command, when the column of grand divisions is formed; *Directors = to your PLACES; (Guides = à vos places.)*

PART IV.

Article First.

Taking up lines of formation or march.*

Manière de déterminer la ligne de bataille.

125. The different modes of determining the line have been explained in the *Discipline of the Battalion.*

Article Second.

Different modes of forming line, from open, close, and columns at half-distance.

Differentes manières de passer de l'ordre en colonne, à l'ordre en bataille.

- | | | |
|--|-------------|-------|
| 1st, By wheeling to the left, or right, into, | } } } } } } | Line. |
| (<i>A gauche (ou à droite en bataille.)</i>) | | |
| 2dly, By forming to the right, or left flank, | | |
| not the pivot, into, | | |
| (<i>Sur la droite (ou sur la gauche) en bataille.</i>) | | |
| 3dly, By forming forward, or to the front, | } } | |
| into, | | |
| (<i>En avant, en bataille.</i>) | } } | |
| 4thly, By forming fronting to the rear of the | | |
| march, into, | | |
| (<i>Face en arrière, en bataille.</i>) | } } | |
| 5thly, By deploying into, | | |
| (<i>Déploiement en bataille.</i>) | | |

126. These various formations having been explained in the *Discipline of the Battalion*, it only remains to apply the principles which have been elucidated, to a column consisting of several battalions, in columns at full, or half-wheeling distance; and, afterwards, to explain what relates to deployments.

1st, *When the open column, at full distance of wheel-*
D d 3
ing,

* See Rules, Line, § 179, 180, 181.

ing, halts, wheels up into line, and dresses *. (*Colonne avec distance entière, à gauche, (ou à droite) en bataille.*)

127. The column being supposed having the right in front, the general in chief, previous to wheeling it to the left, into line, will examine the position of the directing serjeants on the pivot flank, by the means explained in Nos. 89, 94, and 99, of *evolutions of the line*.

128. The accuracy of covering of the directors having been ascertained, the general in chief commands,

1. *Left wheel into line.* (*à gauche en bataille.*)

129. The lieutenant colonels having repeated this word of command, the director of the right of the leading company of each of the battalions of the column, runs up, and places himself on the line of the directors of the left, of the column, conforming to the directions regarding him, in No. 315, of the *discipline of the battalion*.

The general in chief then commands,

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

130. Upon this word, loudly and lively repeated, the line is formed by a wheel to the left.

The line being formed, the commander orders,

3. *Directors, (or, colours and directors) = to your PLACES.* (*Guides, (ou, drapeaux et guides,) = à vos places.*)

131. On this order, the directors resume their places in line, as also, the bearer of the colours, if in front.

132. If the column has the left in front, it would *wheel to the right, into line, (à droite en bataille,)* on the same principles.

Inversion †. (*Inversion.*)

133. Should circumstances require that a column, with the right in front, should, readily and immediately, form
by

* See Rules, Line, § 181, paragraph 5; § 180, paragraph 5.—See Rules, Battalion, § 118, paragraph 3d.

† See Rules, Line movements, paragraph 14, page 286.—See Rules, Battalion, § 136 —See Rules, Line, page 290, where the line is inverted, but not battalions within themselves.—Inversion in the Prussian service is made use of; but to preserve the natural order of the battalion, they countermarch the open column, by the modes detailed in our rules and regulations, so as to bring either wing to the front.

by wheeling to the reverse flank, (the right,) into line, (*à droite en bataille*;) the commander, without occupying his attention with aligning the directors of the right, on the reverse flank, will order,

1. *In inverted order, right wheel into line. (Par inversion, à droite en bataille.)*

134. Upon this word of command, the adjutant-major, and adjutant, as also the director of the left of the leading company of each battalion, will conform to what has been prescribed in No. 325 of the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

The lieutenant colonels of battalions having passed the above word, will, immediately afterwards, give the caution, *Battalion, march by*, or, *take the light touch of the elbow from, the right*; (*guides à droite*;) the adjutants-major, and adjutants, will rectify, as speedily as possible, the position of the directors of the right of their respective battalions; and without paying attention to the general direction of the column.

The commander, then, orders,

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

135. At this word, repeated briskly, the line will be formed by a wheel to the right, conforming to what has been prescribed in the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

The line being formed, the commander orders,

3. *Directors = to your places. (Guides = à vos places.)*

136. If the column has the left in front, and that it becomes necessary to form, readily, *to the left into line*, (*à gauche en bataille*;) the movement will be executed on the same principles.

General rules for successive formations.

Règles générales pour les formations successives.

137. Under this description are included all the formations where the different companies of a column, in successive battalions, arrive, one after the other, in line; such as, forming *to the right, or left flank* (*sur la droite, ou sur la gauche*;) *forward*, or, *to the front of the march*, (*en avant*;) and, *fronting to the rear of the march*, (*face en arrière en bataille*;) and likewise deployments of close columns into line. In these various formations, the following general rules are to be observed.

138. The

138. The adjutant-major of each battalion must, always precede his battalion in coming on the line, placing himself where the right or left of his battalion is to rest, as a point of appui, and recollecting to leave an interval of eight toises, between himself and the flank of the next battalion.

139. As soon as the part, or division * of the column to which the guard of the colours belongs, comes on the line, the bearer of the colours will quit his rank, and place himself, opposite to his file, on the alignment of the directors already established on the line, facing them, and taking care to carry the pike, or staff of his colours before the perpendicular centre line of his body.

140. When two of the colours are stationed on the line, the lieutenant colonels of battalions, will order the directors of their respective battalions, to resume their places in line, by giving the word, *Directors = to your PLACES*, (*Guides = à vos places*,) after the last division of their battalion shall have been dressed on the line; but the bearers of the colours will remain before the front, till the line is entirely formed, when the commander will cause them to retire to their situations, by giving the word,

Colours = to your places, (*Drapeaux = à vos places†.*)

141. The adjutants-major will, carefully, place the two leading directors of their battalion, on the line, taking the colours as a base of alignment, after two have been established on the line; and they will, afterwards, with the same precision, establish the accuracy of the following directors, and of the bearer of the colours, as they, respectively, come on the line.

2dly. *When a column, at full wheeling-distance, is to form to the right (or left) flank, into line‡. (Colonne avec*

* The French word, "*subdivision*," frequently occurs in the course of this work. It does not mean, as in the British service, a half-company, but generally, any inferior division, or equal part of a column, open or close, such as a *grand division*, a *company*, or half-company. The word *division* in this translation, conveys the same idea as the French word *subdivision*, that is, a component part of a column, such as a *grand division*, *company*, or half-company, when describing, generally, movements in column.

† See Rules, Line, § 180, paragraph 11.

‡ See Rules, Battalion, § 128, and § 136, second paragraph.

avec distance entière, sur la droite (ou sur la gauche) en bataille.)

142. The column being supposed with the right in front, and the commander deeming it necessary to form to the right flank, into line, will, previously, indicate to an aid-de-camp, or to the adjutant of the leading battalion, the point of appui where the right of the line is to rest, and, also, the point of direction on the left; the aid-de-camp, or adjutant, will immediately proceed nimbly to the point of appui, with two markers, whom he will station as has been prescribed in No. 330 of the *discipline of the battalion* *.

143. If the direction of the line is not to be parallel, or nearly so, to that of the column, the commander would take care, a little previously, to direct the march of the leading division, nearly parallel, to the line to be formed on, by the means prescribed in the *discipline of the battalion*, No. 351; and in such manner, that the leading one may have, at least, four steps to take, to carry it on the line, after having wheeled to the right.

144. The leading division having taken a direction, nearly parallel, to the line on which the column is to form, the general in chief, to cause the movement to commence, will order:

The line will form to the right flank.

Sur la droite en bataille.

145. The lieutenant colonels having repeated this caution, the lieutenant colonel of the leading battalion will immediately order, *battalion, march by the right, (bataillon, guides à droite.)*

146. The leading division of the column having arrived opposite to the first marker, placed at the point of appui, will wheel to the right, and the formation in line will be executed as has been prescribed in the *discipline of the battalion*.

147. When the head of the second battalion column shall have arrived behind the right of the line, the lieutenant

* See Rules, Line, § 179, paragraph 2, § 181, paragraph 2.—
See Rules, Battalion, § 83, § 4, and § 85, paragraph 3.

tenant colonel of that battalion will order, *Battalion, march by the right*, (*Bataillon, guides à droite*;) and the lieutenant colonel of each of the succeeding battalions, will, in his turn, give the same order, when the head of his battalion has arrived on the same ground.

148. When the adjutant-major of the second battalion has seen the rear division of the first wheeled to the right, in order to march up to the line, he will step forward, briskly, in order to place himself on the line, at the distance of eight toises from * the left flank of the first battalion; and he will cover, or dress on the directors of that battalion.

149. The division at the head of the second battalion, having arrived opposite to its adjutant-major stationed on the line, will wheel to the right, and be halted by its captain, at the distance of two paces from the line; the directors of the right and left of the division, will immediately on that, move up on the line, pacing themselves facing to, and correctly covering on the line of directors of the first battalion, their positions being regulated by the adjutant-major; and when this is done, the captain will give the order,

Right = DRESS, (*à droite* = *alignement* †.)

150. The leading division of each of the following battalions, will be established on the line in the same manner as that of the second battalion.

151. The line being formed, correctly, on the given direction, the commander will order,

Colours = *to your* PLACES. (*Drapeaux* = *à vos places*.)

152. Upon this word, the bearers of the colours will resume their places in line.

153. The general in chief, placed at the point of appui ‡, will observe, that the bearers of the colours of the two battalions on the right, station themselves, correctly,
on

* See Rules, Line, § 181, formation on a line marked off by detached adjutants.

† See Rules, Battalion, § 104, No. 7.

‡ “The *point of appui*, is that point to which the wing of a battalion, or corps of an army, is fixed. From which fixed wing, as soon as the line has wheeled in, it is then to begin to make the alignment with the opposite *point de vue*.” — See Saldern's Tactics, page 88.

on the line of direction which he has determined to give to the line.

154. The lieutenant colonels, during the formation of their respective battalions in line, will conform to what has been prescribed relative to them, in No. 346 of the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

155. The adjutants-major will, also, follow the instructions regulating their duty in their case, laid down in No. 347 of the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

156. If the column had the left in front, it would form *to the left flank into line, (sur la gauche en bataille,)* on the same principles.

3dly, *When the column, at full wheeling distance, forms forward, or to the front of the march*.* (*Colonne avec distance entière, en avant en bataille.*)

(Plate XXVIII. Fig. 1.)

157. A column at full wheeling distance, with the right in front, being supposed to arrive behind the line on which the commander intends to form it up, he will indicate, previously, to an aid-de-camp, or to the adjutant of the leading battalion, the point where the right flank is to rest, and the distant point of direction and correction, on the left; the aid-de-camp, or adjutant, will, immediately, proceed with two markers, whom he will establish on the line of direction pointed out, as has been explained in No. 330 of the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

158. The head of the column being arrived at about the distance of the front of a company, from the two markers stationed on the line, the commander will halt the column, ordering, immediately, the captain of the leading division to march it up to the markers, which being executed, the commander in chief orders,

1. *Form line to the front.* (*En avant en bataille.*)

This command having been repeated, the lieutenant colonel of the leading battalion will, immediately afterwards,

* This movement is compounded of a march in open column, and formation in echelon.—See Rules, Line, page 291, where the movement is effected by both of these modes, § 181, No. 12, § 182.—See Rules, Battalion, § 104, No. 7, where the movement is in column, and the formation in echelon, as above, § 127.

wards, order, 1st, *Battalion, march by the right, (bataillon, guides, à droite ;)* 2dly, *By companies, left half wheel, (par peloton, demi à gauche.)*

The lieutenant colonel of each of the other battalions of the column will order: *The head of the battalion-column will change direction to the left ; (bataillon, tête de colonne à gauche.)*

The general in chief will, then, order,

2. MARCH (or, *Quick* = MARCH). (*Marche (ou, pas accéléré) marche*).

159. At this word, briskly repeated, the battalion at the head of the column, will form line to the front of the march, by the mode explained in No. 355, and following, in the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

160. The following battalions will march, diagonally, in separate battalion-columns, towards the line ; and to effect this, each of them will break off from the general column, by wheeling its head to the left, marching, afterwards, diagonally, to the front.

161. The head of each of these battalions being arrived within about the distance of a company from its adjutant-major, who has advanced, previously on the line, as will be afterwards explained, the lieutenant colonel will halt his battalion ; the two directors of the leading division will, at the same instant, move up on the line ; the adjutant-major will establish them, correctly, on it, and the leading division, by word of command given by its captain, moves up to the two markers on the line, which being effected,

162. The lieutenant colonel commands: 1st, *Form forward in line (en avant en bataille)* ; 2dly, *March by the right, (guides, à droite)* ; 3dly, *By companies, left half-wheel, (par pelotons, demi à gauche)* ; 4thly, MARCH, (*marche*) ; and afterwards, *forward, (en avant)*, = MARCH, (*marche*).

163. The line being formed, the general in chief will command: *Colours = to your PLACES. (Drapeaux = à vos places.)*

164. The precision of the execution of this movement depends on the march of the battalions in a diagonal direction towards the line ; and in order to ensure the march in this direction, the general in chief, the lieutenant colonels,

lonels, and the adjutants-major, will observe the following rules :

(Plate XXVIII. Fig. 1.)

165. Previous to commencing the movement, the general in chief will direct two aids-de-camp, or two mounted officers, (*a* and *b*,) to determine the points at which the flanks of the different battalions are to rest in line : and this duty is to be discharged as follows :

166. The officer (*a*) will gallop a battalion-distance, and eight toises, from the position of the commander, at the point of appui, and will, there, face towards him ; the commander, by a signal made with his sword, will align him on the distant point on the left ; the officer (*b*) proceeds, at the same time, to place himself at the same distance, behind (*a*), and will, there, face about to the right, aligning himself on (*a*), and the general in chief.

167. These two mounted officers being, thus, established on the line, the commander will order the movement to commence ; the second battalion directs its march on the officer (*a*), and the third on (*b*) : when the adjutant-major has arrived on the line, the officer (*a*) gallops off, in order to place himself at a distance equal to the length of a battalion, and eight toises more, behind the officer (*b*), and will align himself on him, and the colours on the right ; the lieutenant colonel of the fourth battalion will, immediately, conduct the march of his battalion-column on the officer (*a*) ; the officer (*b*) will set off at speed, in his turn, when the adjutant-major of the third battalion has arrived on the line, placing himself at the distance of a battalion, and eight toises, behind (*a*), and aligning himself on (*a*), and the colours on the right ; the lieutenant colonel of the fifth battalion will, on this, direct his march on the officer (*b*) ; the two aids-de-camp will, thus, gallop off, each, in his turn, in order to station themselves at the distance of a battalion and eight toises from each other, as soon as the adjutant-major of the battalion which is marching on each of them, shall have arrived at their place on the line : these officers must, accurately, mark off their distances, and place themselves, correctly, on the line *.

* See Rules, Line, § 181.

168. The commander in chief, or the officer charged with the execution of his orders, will station himself, from the beginning of the formation, at the point of appui, as in the case of a formation *in line to the right flank*; (*sur la droite en bataille*;) and will there superintend the execution of the movement.

169. The lieutenant colonels will be on the pivot-flank, as far advanced as the leading division, while their battalion is marching up to the line; and when, afterwards, it commences forming on the line, they will act as required in No. 346 of the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

170. The adjutants-major will quit their battalions, and proceed, actively, to the line, where the aid-de-camp is posted; this they will do, when the head of their battalion shall have arrived within the distance of one hundred paces from the line; and they will, afterwards, during the formation in line, discharge the duty prescribed for them in No. 347 of the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

171. A column with the left in front, arriving behind the left of the line to be formed on, would *form line to the front of the march*, (*en avant en bataille*;) according to the same principles, and by the contrary mode of procedure; that is, by breaking off from the general column, to the right, and forming line with the point of appui on the left.

4thly, *When the column at wheeling distance, with the right in front, forms line fronting to the rear of the march* *. (*Colonne avec distance entière, la droite en tête, face en arrière en bataille*.)

172. A column at wheeling distance, with the right in front, being supposed to arrive in front of, or before the right of the line on which the commander intends to form the line, he will indicate, a little previously, to an aid-de-camp, or to the adjutant of the leading battalion, the point at which he has determined to rest the right of the line, as also the point of direction on the left; this aid-de-camp, or adjutant, will, immediately, proceed forward with two markers, whom he will establish on the line pointed out,
as

* See Rules, Line, § 182, 183, where the movements are in a great degree analogous, though the mode of execution differs.—See Rules, Battalion, § 104, Fig. 57, C.

as has been explained in No. 330 of the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

173. The head of the column having arrived at about the distance of a company from the markers established on the line, the commander will halt the column, and will, immediately, direct the captain of the leading company to form it on the line, in rear of, or behind, and close to the two markers, by countermarching it in file into that situation, which is to be executed as has been prescribed in No. 372 of the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

(Plate XXVIII. Fig. 2.)

174. This arrangement having been made, the general in chief will order,

1. *The line will form, fronting to the rear of the march.*
(*Face en arrière en bataille.*)

The lieutenant colonels having repeated this order, the lieutenant colonel of the first battalion of the column will, immediately afterwards, order, 1st, *The battalion will face to the right, (bataillon, par le flanc droit :)* 2dly, *To the right = FACE, (à droite.)*

The lieutenant colonel of each of the following battalions will order, *The battalion will wheel its head, in column, to the right, (bataillon, tête de colonne à droite.)*

2. MARCH (or *Quick = MARCH.*) (*Marche (ou pas accéléré) = Marche.*)

175. Upon this word, briskly repeated, the first battalion of the column will form line, fronting to the rear, on the leading company, as has been prescribed in No. 375, and following ones, of the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

176. The following battalions will move, diagonally, in separate battalion-columns, towards the line; for this purpose, the division at the head of each of them, will disengage, or break off, from the general column, by a wheeling movement to the right, and will, afterwards, direct its march, diagonally, towards the line, as in the case of *forming to the front into line, (en avant en bataille.)*

177. The head of each battalion-column being arrived at about the distance of a company from its adjutant-

major, who will have proceeded, previously, to place himself on the line, as has been prescribed in forming to the front, in line, the lieutenant colonel will halt his battalion; the two directors of the leading division, will move up, at the same instant, on the line, on which the adjutant-major will establish them, accurately, and the leading division will, immediately on that, by word of command from its captain, form fronting to the rear, close to its directors on the line; and when this has been effected, the lieutenant colonel of the battalion will give the words of command prescribed in No. 373 of the *Discipline of the Battalion*; in order to form in line, fronting to the rear of the march.

178. The line being formed, the commander orders, *Colours, to your places. (Drapeaux, à vos places.)*

179. The general in chief will direct two aids-de-camp, or two mounted officers, to ascertain, in this formation, the points at which the different battalions begin to file towards the line from battalion-columns arrived in front of it, at these points; as has been explained in No. 166, and following ones.

180. The general in chief, or officer charged with the execution of his orders, will take post, during the execution of the movement, at the point of appui of the line, as in the case of a *formation, into line, to the right flank, (sur la droite en bataille;)* and he will there superintend the general formation.

181. The lieutenant colonels will be on the pivot-flank of the leading division, during the march in column towards the line, in order to regulate its direction; and when, afterwards, the battalion begins to form on the line, they will act as directed in *forming forward to the front, into line, (en avant en bataille.)*

182. The adjutants-major, in this formation, will discharge the duties prescribed for them in the case of *forming forward to the front, into line, (en avant en bataille.)*

183. A column, with the left in front, arriving before the line to be formed on, would form line fronting to the rear of the march, on the same principles, and by the contrary means of procedure; that is, by breaking off from the
the

the general column, to the left, and by filing into line, from the left of companies *.

Article Third.

When a line of several battalions thrown into open column, changes position on a fixed central division of any one battalion.

Formation qui s'exécute par la réunion des deux mouvemens †.

184. A combination of two movements is sometimes necessary, in order to form in a required line, as will be now explained.

185. When, for instance, a column at wheeling distance, is to form in line, on a division of the interior of the column, if the line is to face to the front, all that part of the column which precedes, or is before the named division forming the basis of the alignment, must counter-march, and will, afterwards, form line on that division, *fronting to the rear, (face en arrière en bataille,)* after having countermarched; and all that part of the column which is behind the named division will, on the contrary, *form line forward, or to the front, (en avant en bataille,)* on that division.

E C 3

186. The

* See Rules, Line, § 183.—See Rules, Battalion, § 160.—The effect above, is ultimately the same; that of throwing back, or forward, the whole of a line, to a right angular position to the original position, either by an echelon, or open column movement of entry on the line, where either the head or rear is to rest.—French Tactics avoid moving over ground unnecessarily. The shortest possible lines are gone over in formations. The head of the column seldom enters where the rear is to rest. Battalions are conducted to the points where their heads are to be in line, and the rear companies move in echelon, or file into line. By this means, time is saved, and a more ready formation is obtained. If the line to be formed on, is at right angles to the front of the march, it is evident, that the battalions go over the hypotenuse only, instead of moving over the base and perpendicular of a right angled-triangle. In cases of arriving obliquely on the line, the battalions march to their positions on one, instead of two sides of an oblique angled triangle. The projection of a figure, or a reference to the plates, will shew this.—See Rules, Line, § 181, Nos. 6, 7, and 8.

† See Rules, Line, § 184, § 180, No. 21.—See Rules, Line, page 289, General Changes of Position of a Line.—See Rules, Battalion, § 161, § 132, § 104.

186. The commander must, always, in this case, choose as the division of alignment, the rear one of a battalion-column.

(Plate XXIX. Fig. 1.)

187. Thus, the column being of companies at wheeling distance, with the right in front, and the commander intending to form it in line on the third * battalion, will halt the column, if in march, and proceed, in his own person, to the eighth company of this battalion, stationing two markers in front of the right and left files of that company, which is to be considered as the base of the alignment.

188. The commander in chief will order the lieutenant colonel of the third battalion to cause his battalion to countermarch, and, at the same time, he will send an order to the lieutenant colonels of the two battalions preceding the third, to countermarch also; and the eighth company of this battalion stands fast, and will not countermarch.

189. During the execution of this movement, the commander will cause the first company of the fourth battalion to be dressed on the line, in the prolongation of the front of the eighth company of the third battalion, and at the distance of eight toises from its left flank.

190. The three battalions of the head of the column, with the exception of the eighth company of the third, having countermarched, the commander will send an order to the lieutenant colonel of the second battalion, to give the following words of command, which are to be repeated by the lieutenant colonel of the first battalion, 1st, *Form line fronting to your rear, (face en arrière en bataille;)* 2dly, *The head of the column will change direction, or break off to the left, (bataillon, tête de colonne à gauche.)*

191. The

* There is discordance in the text, between the volume of plates in this instance, and the detail of the movement. "*En bataille sur la quatrième bataillon,*" is the expression in the text. In the volume of plates, the central change is effected on the *eighth company of the third battalion*, and *not* on the *eighth of the fourth*. We have, to avoid the trouble of altering the plate, and figure, adapted the translation to the plate as it stands, substituting *third battalion*, for *fourth*; *fourth*, for *fifth*; *second*, instead of *third*; and so on. This adaptation of the text to the plate, in no degree, affects the principle of the movement.

191. The general in chief must, at the same time, send an order to the lieutenant colonel of the fifth battalion, to give the following words of command, which are to be repeated by the lieutenant colonels of the sixth, seventh, and eighth battalions, 1st, *Form to the front of the march, (en avant en bataille;)* 2dly, *The head of the column will change direction, or break off to the left; (bataillon, tête de colonne à gauche.)*

192. The commander will, himself, order the lieutenant colonel of the third battalion to give the words of command, 1st, *Form line fronting to your rear, (face en arrière en bataille);* 2dly, *The battalion will face to the left, (bataillon par le flanc gauche); to the left = FACE, (à gauche.)*

He will direct the lieutenant colonel of the fourth battalion to order, 1st, *Form to the front, in line, (en avant en bataille);* 2dly, *Battalion, march by the right, (bataillon, guides à droite);* 3dly, *By companies, left, half-wheel, (par pelotons, demi à gauche.)*

The commander in chief will, then, order,

MARCH. (*Marche.*)

193. Upon this word of command, loudly and briskly repeated, the general movement commences, and is executed on the principles of *forming line to the front of the march, (en avant en bataille);* and, *forming line fronting to the rear, (face en arrière en bataille.)*

194. The eighth company of the third battalion, and the first company of the fourth, having been, previously, formed on the line, will stand steady, as they constitute the basis of alignment for the rest of the line.

195. If, on the same supposition of a central movement, the line, instead of facing to the front, were to form fronting to the rear of the march, the commander would assume as the basis of alignment, the first company of the fifth * battalion; he would cause this company to countermarch; and would place two camp-colour-men in front of the right and left file of it.

196. He

* If the fourth battalion had been taken as that on which this central formation fronting to the rear is effected, instead of the fifth, the movement would be more analogous to the delineation of the plate; but in either case, the principle of execution remains the same. See note, page 318.

196. He would send an order to the lieutenant colonels of the three first battalions of the column, to counter-march their respective battalions; he himself giving the same order to the lieutenant colonel of the fourth.

197. The four battalions of the head having counter-marched, the commander in chief would cause the eighth company of the fourth battalion to be dressed on the line, in the prolongation of the front of the first company of the fifth, at the distance of eight toises from this last; and these two companies would constitute the basis of the general alignment.

198. This arrangement made, the commander will send an order to the lieutenant colonel of the third battalion, to give the following orders, which must be repeated by the lieutenant colonels of the second and first battalions; 1st, *form to the front in line, (en avant en bataille)*; 2dly, *the head of the battalion column will change direction, or break off to the right, (bataillon, tête de colonne à droite.)*

199. The commander must, at the same time, transmit an order to the lieutenant colonel of the sixth battalion, to give the following words of command, which are to be repeated by the lieutenant colonels of the seventh and eighth battalions: 1st, *form line fronting to your rear, (face en arrière en bataille)*; battalion, *change the direction of the head of the column, or break off to the right, (bataillon, tête de colonne à droite.)*

The commander will, himself, give an order to the lieutenant colonel of the fourth battalion, to give the words of command: 1st, *form line to your front, (en avant en bataille)*; 2dly, *march by your left, (guides à gauche), by companies, wheel the half of a right angle, to your right, (par pelotons, demi à droite.)*

He will command the lieutenant colonel of the fifth battalion to order, 1st, *form line fronting to your rear, (face en arrière en bataille)*; 2dly, *the battalion will face to the right, (bataillon par le flanc droit)*; 3dly, *to the right = FACE, (à droite.)*

The commander in chief will, afterwards, order,

MARCH. (*Marche.*)

200. Upon this word, briskly repeated, the general movement will commence, and be executed conformable to

to the principles of, *forming forward to the front, (en avant en bataille ;)* and *forming line fronting to the rear of the march, (face en arrière en bataille.)*

201. The first company of the fifth battalion, and the eighth company of the fourth, having been established on the line, stand fast, as forming the basis of the general alignment.

202. When a column, with the right in front, arrives behind an alignment, enters, prolongs it, and wheels up into line, before the whole of the column has entered into the new direction, the formation is to be executed in the following manner :

(Plate XXIX. Fig. 2.)

203. The commander having halted the column, at the instant when the fourth company, for example, of the fourth battalion shall have wheeled its pivot flank into the new direction ; having, afterwards, if necessary, corrected the position of the general directors, who, according to the principles already established, ought to be on the flank of the part of the column on the line ; and having established the pivot flank of the column on the line, by the means prescribed in No. 89, and the following ones, of article fifth, will, quickly, detach an aid-de-camp to caution the lieutenant colonel of the battalion of the column nearest to the new direction (the fifth battalion in this instance), that that battalion is to break off to the left, in order to form to the front, in line ; and when the commander judges that the order has been delivered, he will give the word,

1. *Left wheel into line. (à gauche en bataille *.)*

204. The lieutenant colonels of the four first battalions, will repeat this order, and the lieutenant colonel of the fourth, the half of which, only, has wheeled into the direction of the line, will, immediately afterwards, order, *four rear companies will form forward in line, (quatre derniers pelotons en avant en bataille †.)*

The

* See Rules, Line, § 180.

See Rules, Line, § 182, where this movement is executed.

See Rules, Battalion, § 126.

† “Avant” is added from the page of errata subjoined to the quarto edition procured from Paris, before the second volume of this

The lieutenant colonel of the fifth battalion, having been cautioned respecting the movement which his battalion is to execute, will give the following orders, which are to be repeated by each of the three lieutenant colonels of the three rear battalions.

1. *Form line to the front. (En avant en bataille.)*
2. *Battalion, change the direction of the column to the left (Bataillon, tête de colonne à gauche.)*

The commander will, then, order,

3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

205. At this word of command, which is to be, briskly, repeated, the formation in line will take place.

206. If the column, instead of arriving behind the line to be formed on, should arrive, in front of, or before the line, the formation would be executed in the following manner :

(Pl. XXIX. Fig. 3.)

207. The commander having halted the column, and having rectified the position of the directors who have entered on the new direction, will cause the lieutenant colonel of the fifth battalion to be cautioned that his battalion is to break off from the column, to the right, in order to form in line, fronting to the rear of the march; and he will, then, command,

Left wheel into line. (à gauche en bataille.)

This order having been repeated by the lieutenant colonel of each of the four battalions of the head of the column, the lieutenant colonel of the fourth will, immediately afterwards, command, *four rear companies, form line fronting to the rear of the march, (quatre derniers pelotons, face en arrière en bataille.)*

The lieutenant colonel of the fifth battalion, having been cautioned respecting the movement which his battalion is to execute, will give the following orders, which are to be repeated by the lieutenant colonels of each of the three rear battalions of the column *.

1. *Form*

this translation of the duodecimo French edition was ready for the press.

The duodecimo edition had in it few of the errata of the quarto edition. These few have been rectified.

* When Prussian troops enter an alignment at a central point, the

1. *Form line facing to the rear of the march. (Face en arrière en bataille.)*
2. *Battalion, change the direction of the head of the column to the right. (Bataillon, tête de la colonne à droite.)*

The general in chief will, then, order,

3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

Upon this word, briskly repeated, the formation is to be executed.

208. All these various movements will be executed by a column with the left in front, according to the same principles, and by the opposite mode of proceeding, or by inversion of procedure.

*A Remark on this Movement *.*

Observation relative à ce mouvement.

209. Should the head of the fifth battalion be nearer to the line than, at least, fifty paces, at the instant when the commander halts the column arriving behind the line, this battalion would form to the front, by a wheel of forty-five degrees, and movement in echelon, instead of breaking off from the battalion, diagonally, as has been prescribed for the following battalions. If, on the contrary, the column arrived in front of the line, the fifth battalion, in the same case, would file up to the line from the right flank of companies, instead of breaking off, in a diagonal direction, from the column.

Article

the battalion open columns, previously, arrange themselves, at the distance of a company (being their battalion-interval in line), from each other. They then diverge; march towards the line, which they enter respectively, where their rear is to rest, and wheel up into line. The battalions go over more ground in, thus, forming, than in the French service; take more time, and are more exposed to the view of the enemy, than they are by the accurate and quick modes of successive formation by separate battalions, detailed in this system.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, pages 334, 335, 336.

* See Rules, Line, § 182, where the above movement is executed, but by the battalions entering where their rear is to rest previous to wheeling up into line.

See Rules, Battalion, § 124 and 126.

Article Fourth.

Different manners of forming a Column at half-distance in line, with either the right, or left in front.

Différentes manières de former une colonne à demi-distance, en bataille, la droite, ou la gauche en tête.

Columns at half-distance, may be formed in line, in the same manner, as when at full distance.

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| 1st, By wheeling to the left (or right), into
(à gauche (ou à droite), en bataille), | } line *. |
| 2dly, By forming, successively, to the right,
(or left flank), into
(Sur la droite, (ou sur la gauche), en bataille), | |
| 3dly, By forming forward, to the front, into
(En avant en bataille), | |
| 4thly, By forming fronting to the rear, into
(Face en arrière en bataille), | |

210. 1st, In order to form into line a column at half-distance of companies, by wheeling to the left (or right) into line, it is indispensably necessary that the divisions should take wheeling distances by opening out to open column at full distance, successively, from the head of the column, put in march, as follows.

211. A column at half distance, with the right in front, being supposed to prolong a line on which the commander judges it eligible to form by a wheel to the left into line, he will halt the column when the rear division has arrived at the point where it is to rest in line, and, afterwards order,

Take wheeling distances, successively, from the head of the column. (Prénez les distances par la tête de la colonne.)

This order having been repeated, the captain of the leading division at the head of the column will command, on a caution to that purpose given by the general in chief, 1st, *the company will advance, (peloton en avant);* 2dly, *march by the left, (guide à gauche);* 3dly, MARCH, *(marche.)*

212. The following companies will step off, successively,

* See Rules, Battalion, § 153.

fively, conforming to what has been prescribed in the *discipline of the battalion*.

213. The lieutenant colonels of battalions will take care that the leading company of their respective battalions, does not step off, till the rear company of the battalion immediately preceding, has left a space between them equal to the extent of the front of a company, and eight toises more of interval which is to be between the battalions respectively, in line.

214. If the commander means to wheel the column into line, by a wheel to the left, he will halt it at the instant he judges that the rear company is at a wheeling distance from the preceding company; he will ascertain the accuracy of position of the directors on the pivot flank, as formerly described; and then, wheel the column to the left, into line, (*à gauche en bataille*.)

215. Previous to the commencement of the movement of opening out the column, the commander will indicate to the adjutant-major of the leading battalion, the point of direction in front, and the adjutant-major will diligently observe that the director of the leading company, conducts his march, without variation, on the object pointed out to him.

216. Were the column close, instead of being at half distance, and should the commander deem it necessary to make it take wheeling distances, preparatory to wheeling to the left into line; he would give the same words of command as in the case of taking wheeling distances from half-distance; and the movement would be executed on the same principles.

2dly, *When a column at half-distance forms line, by the successive wheel of companies, to the right (or left) flank.*

Colonne à demi-distance sur la droite (ou sur la gauche) en bataille.

217. Columns at half-distance form line to the right (or left) flank, (*sur la droite (ou sur la gauche) en bataille*,) by the same words of command, and by the same mode of procedure, as when at full wheeling distance*.

VOL. I.

F f

3dly,

* See Rules, Battalion, § 128.

See Rules, Platoon, § 62.

See Rules, Battalion, § 104, No. 7.

3dly, *When a column, at half wheeling distance, forms forward, or forms line on the head company*.*

Colonne à demi-distance en avant en bataille.

218. A column at half distance being halted, if the commander deems it necessary to *form line on the head company (en avant en bataille)*, he will previously cause the leading battalion to take wheeling distances, and will, immediately on that, halt it; this being effected, he will give the words of command directed to be used for *forming line to the front, or on the head division, (en avant en bataille.)*

219. Each battalion will execute what has been prescribed for a column at full distance; the lieutenant colonels of battalions that break off, diagonally, from the column, will take care to cause the leading division to wheel more than when at full distance in breaking off diagonally from the general column; and to take wheeling distances, in marching towards the line, in order that, on arriving near the line, there may be between the divisions the requisite space for wheeling forty-five degrees (*demi quart de conversion*) into echelon.

The commander in chief, instead of ordering the leading battalion to take wheeling distances, may direct it to move up into close column: and, then, to deploy into line on the head company, during the time that the following battalions are breaking off from the general column, and marching, diagonally, towards the line.

4thly, *When a column at half distance forms line fronting to the rear.*

Colonne à demi-distance face en arrière en bataille†.

220. A column at half distance will *form line on the head division, fronting to the rear (face en arrière en bataille,)* by the same words of command, and means that have been prescribed respecting a column at full distance.

221. To execute this movement, it will not be necessary to open out to wheeling distance.

Article

* See Rules, Battalion, § 158, 103, 104, No. 8, and last paragraph.

† See Rules, Line, General Changes of Position.

Article Fifth.

Close columns.

Colonnes en masse.

222. A close column, consisting of any number of battalions, may be formed in line by deploying—1st. fronting as the column is then situated—2d, by deploying into line fronting to the rear—3d, by deploying obliquely to the right—4th, and by deploying obliquely to the left, as will be immediately explained.

1. *When a column of march (by companies) of several battalions, forms close column, and then extends into line*.*

Face en avant.

223. On the supposition of a column of eight battalions marching by companies, at wheeling distance, with the right in front, the commander in chief, intending to deploy it into line to its then front, will, previously, call near him two aids-de-camp, or two mounted officers, and will shew them the point of direction of the right and left of the line, on which the column is to be deployed: and he will, then, cause the column to close up to half distance.

224. The two aids-de-camp will, immediately, set out in order to ascertain two intermediate points, between the distant points of correction and direction given; and these points having been found, one of them will remain in his place, while the other goes to station himself, on the line, at the point where the head of the column will be applied on it†.

F f 2

When

* See Rules, Line, § 187, where the above movement is executed.

† See Rules, Line, § 179. Formerly several battalion close columns marched out of the general column, and commenced deploying when arrived opposite to the right, or left, of their respective ground; having, previously, formed grand divisions. The rear columns, independent of meeting with obstacles in their march to a flank (always liable to inaccuracy) are too far removed from the ultimate line of formation, to commence their individual deployment, exactly, opposite to the right or left of their ground. On this account, openings might take place in the line, and the second line would be retarded in coming up to its ground. The present mode of deploying the several battalion-close-columns into line of contiguous close-columns; of forming grand divisions when on that line; and of deploying then, into line, on the actual line to be formed on, is

When no striking objects present themselves to serve as points of direction on the right and left, the commander in chief will post, on the line he chooses, two aids-de-camp, at the distance of the length of the front of a battalion from each other; these two aids-de-camp will constitute the basis of alignment; one of them is to be posted at the point where the head of the column is to arrive, and they will face towards each other.

225. When the head of the column approaches the line to be formed on, the commander in chief will order close column to be formed; and he will halt the leading company at the distance of two paces from the aid-de-camp stationed on the line.

226. The close column being formed, the commander will order grand divisions to be formed from a halt, and distance to be closed to the front, unless particular circumstances

is determined, accurate, and compact. It enables the second line to advance to its situation, as soon as the battalion-columns of the first have been put in motion, to arrange themselves in contiguous line, previous to the general deployment. The rear battalion precedes the others, as an indispensable rule in this species of formation. Battalion forms after battalion, from the point of commencement, to the completion of the movement, so that the part formed is ready to act, while the other wing is continuing the deployment. By marking the points on the line opposite to which front or rear grand divisions are halted, and fronted, so many sure directing points are furnished for the accurate alignment of the general deployment. The ground gone over by either mode of deployment is equal. The new method requires more time, on account of the additional facings required, and of the arranging of the contiguous close columns in line. In this situation, it is urged, that they are much exposed to the enemy's artillery. An accuracy excluding all subsequent movements or dressing, amply compensates for an inconsiderable loss of time, and deployments are made, generally, covered by ground, out of the reach of artillery; or covered and protected by artillery or cavalry. Few movements of importance can be made unexposed, in some degree, to the fire of artillery.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, from page 318 to page 326.

From the following sentence, the Prussians do not seem to be in the habit of countermarching a close column, in order to form line fronting to the rear. They deploy in this case, with the rear rank in front.

“ Mais si la colonne étoit entièrement serrée, cette évolution seroit impossible, et la reprise des distances, ou même de demi-distances en arrière, deviendrait l'opération la plus pénible, et la plus inéxecutable du monde. Il n'y auroit d'autre parti à prendre que celui de faire demi-tour à droite, à toute la colonne, et de deployer et se former à front renversé.” See *Tactique Prussienne*, page 326.

stances induce him to order the deployment into line, to be made, by companies.

227. Deployments should be, always, made square, or perpendicular to the head of the column; the commander must, therefore, place the column perpendicular to the line to be formed on, if not already so, by following the mode prescribed for changing the direction of a close column*.

Plate XXX. Fig 1. and 2.

228. The commander will, then, direct two markers to be placed on the line, opposite to the right and left file of the grand division at the head of the column, and will establish them there, correctly.

229. These arrangements being made, the commander in chief can cause the battalion close columns to deploy on any battalion-column he may select, in the following manner:

230. Let it be supposed that the deployment is to be made on the fourth battalion; and this supposition will embrace the various cases of deployment.

231. When the commander in chief deems it proper to commence the movement, he will order,

1. *Battalion-columns will deploy on the fourth battalion, (Par bataillons en masse, sur le quatrième bataillon, deployez la colonne.)*

232. This word of command having been repeated, the lieutenant colonel of the named battalion, will caution it to stand fast; the lieutenant colonels of each of the battalions which precede it will order, 1st. *The battalion will march in file to the right flank, (Bataillon, par le flanc droit);* 2dly, *To the right = FACE, (à droite).*

233. The lieutenant colonels of each of the battalions in rear of the named one, will each move across the column, passing along the interval separating their respective battalions from that which precedes, in order to take post on the right flank of their battalions, commanding, immediately, when there, 1st. *The battalion will face, in order to march in file, to the left, (Bataillon, par le flanc gauche;)* 2dly, *To the left = FACE, (à gauche.)*

234. At the instant when the commander in chief shall have named the battalion, on which the deployment is to

F f S

be

* See Rules, Line, § 188, § 187. See Rules, Oblique deployments, page 193 and 194.

be made, an aid-de-camp will gallop to the right, posting himself a little beyond the point where the battalion on the right will arrive ; this aid-de-camp will face towards the point of direction on the left, dressing himself, accurately, on the two markers posted before the head of the column.

The commander in chief will, then, order,

MARCH. (*Marche.*)

235. At this word, briskly repeated, the movement commences ; the battalions march in file to the flank, uncovering each other, each regulating itself on the battalion immediately preceding it in the order of the column, and preserving an interval of six paces between each other, respectively.

236. The captain commanding the grand division at the head of the column, placed by the side of his director of the right, will direct his march a little in the rear of the aid-de-camp stationed on the line, beyond the point at which this battalion will arrive in deploying.

237. At the moment when the movement commences, the adjutants-major of the third and fifth battalions will step, nimbly, forward, each placing himself at the point where his battalion is to halt ; and they will take, or measure off, in addition to the extent of the front of a grand division, the space of six paces *, which is to be the distance that will intervene between the battalions standing in mass, before they deploy into line.

238. As soon as the leading file of these battalions shall have arrived as far as the position of the adjutant-major, the lieutenant colonel commands, 1st, *Third* (or *Fifth*) *Battalion* ; 2dly, HALT, FRONT.

239. If any opening has taken place between the files in marching to the flank, they are to close up to proper distance at the word *halt* ; and the lieutenant colonel will not give the word *front*, until he sees all the files at their proper distances.

240. Upon the word, *halt*, being given to the above named battalions, the adjutants-major of the second and sixth battalions will step forward, in their respective turns, in order to mark off, or give the ground of their battalions ;

* See Rules, Line, § 187, See Rules, Line, Close column of the line, page 314, No. 7.

lions; and the adjutants-major of the first and seventh battalions will act similarly, on hearing the word, *halt*, given to the second and sixth battalions: and so on, in proportion to the depth of the column.

241. The lieutenant colonel of the fourth battalion, seeing it nearly uncovered, will command, 1st, *The battalion will advance, (bataillon en avant)*; 2dly, *march by the left, (guides à gauche)*; 3dly, MARCH, (*marche.*)

242. Upon the word, *march*, which is to be given by the lieutenant colonel of the fourth battalion, at the instant when he sees his battalion uncovered, this battalion marches forward towards its place in line; and when its leading grand division shall have arrived close to the two markers posted on the line, the lieutenant colonel will halt the battalion; the adjutant-major, will, immediately, place on the line, opposite to his file, the covering serjeant who is in the centre of the leading grand division, aligning him, correctly, on the two markers, previously, posted; and when this is effected, the lieutenant-colonel commands, *Left = DRESS, (à gauche = alignement.)*

243. At this word, the leading grand division of the fourth battalion will dress; the director of the left, of each of the other grand divisions of this battalion, will place himself at his proper distance from the preceding director, covering, accurately, in file, the directors before him, and the grand divisions will dress by the left; and also the captains commanding grand divisions will move to the distance of two paces on the outside of their director of the left, in order to verify, and rectify, if necessary, the alignment of their grand divisions.

244. The lieutenant colonel of the third battalion, seeing it uncovered, will order,

1st, *The battalion will advance, (bataillon en avant)*; 2dly, *march by the left, (guides à gauche)*; 3dly, MARCH, (*marche.*)

245. Upon the word, *march*, being given to the third battalion, it will march towards the line, and will be halted by the lieutenant colonel, at the distance of two paces from the line, marked off by the adjutant-major, who will place himself, previously, on the line, at the distance of six paces from the right flank of the fourth battalion; the director of the right, the director of the left, and the cover-

ing serjeant in the centre of the grand division at the head of the battalion, will, immediately, post themselves on the line, facing towards the markers placed before the fourth battalion ; and the adjutant-major will confirm the accuracy of their positions on the line, which being effected, the lieutenant colonel is to order, *Left = DRESS, (à gauche = alignement.)*

246. Upon this word of command, the grand division at the head of the battalion-column, will move up to the directors on the line ; the directors of the left of each of the following grand divisions will place themselves at their respective proper distances of grand divisions, and covering each other in the file of directors ; and the grand divisions will, quickly, dress by the left.

247. The second and first battalions, will, each in its turn, execute what has been prescribed for the third battalion.

248. The deployment by the battalions that march to the left flank is executed on the same principles ; at the moment when the fifth battalion shall have fronted, the lieutenant colonel of it will order : 1st, *The battalion will advance ; (bataillon en avant ;)* 2dly, *March by the right, (guides à droite ;)* 3dly, *MARCH, (marche.)*

249. At the word, *march*, given to the fifth battalion, it will move towards the line, and will be halted by the lieutenant colonel at the distance of two paces from the line marked off by the adjutant-major who places himself on it, a little previously, at the distance of six paces from the left flank of the fourth battalion ; the director of the right, the director of the left, and the covering serjeant of the centre of the grand division of the head of the battalion, will, immediately, move up on the line, facing towards the markers placed before the fourth battalion ; and the adjutant-major will confirm their accuracy of position on the line, which being effected, the lieutenant colonel of the battalion is to order, *Right = DRESS, (à droite = alignement.)*

250. The sixth, seventh and eighth battalions, will, each, in its turn, execute what has been directed to be done by the fifth.

251. The deployment being finished, the commander in chief will order, *Directors to your places, (guides à vos places.)*

252. At this word of command, the directors placed before each battalion in mafs; as alfo, the two markers pofted in front of the fourth battalion, refume their places.

(Plate XXX. Fig. 3 and 4.)

253. The commander in chief, will, afterwards, determine on which grand divifion of which battalion the line is to deploy, according as he may deem it neceffary to extend the line, more or lefs, to the right, or left.

254. Let it be fupposed here that the deployment will take place on the fecond grand divifion of the fourth battalion.

255. The commander in chief will move to that battalion, will direct two markers to be placed, one before the right, and one before the left file of the firft grand divifion, and will, then, command,

1ft, *The line will be formed on the fecond grand divifion of the fourth battalion, from battalions, on the line, in mafs*.* (*Sur la feconde divifion du quatrième bataillon, deployez les maffes.*)

256. This order having been repeated, the lieutenant colonel of the fourth battalion will caution the named grand divifion to ftand faft, commanding immediately afterwards,

1ft, *The grand divifions will face outwards, in order to march to the flanks,* (*Bataillon par le flanc droit, et le flanc gauche*); 2dly, *Outwards* = FACE, (*à droite = et à gauche* †.)

257. The lieutenant colonels of the battalions that are on the right of the fourth, will command,

1ft, *The battalion will face to the right,* (*Bataillon par le flanc droite*; 2dly, *To the right* = FACE, (*à droite.*)

258. The lieutenant colonels of battalions that are on the left of the fourth will command,

1ft, *The battalion will face to the left,* (*Bataillon par le flanc gauche*; 2dly, *To the left* = FACE, (*à gauche.*)

259. The battalions being, thus, faced into file to the flanks, the lieutenant colonels of battalions are to place themfelves on the right flank of their refpective battalions, at the diftance of about eight or ten paces; and for this purpose,

* See Rules, Line, § 187, page 316.

† See Rules, Battalion, § 150, Deployment on a Central Grand Divifion.

purpose, the lieutenant colonels of battalions that have faced to the left, will move through the intervals of the battalions, in order to place themselves on the flank, on the outside of the line.

260. At the moment when the commander in chief shall have named the battalion on which the deployment is to be executed, an aid-de-camp, or mounted officer, will gallop to the right, and another to the left, in order to post themselves, respectively, beyond the point where they will estimate that the flanks of the line will terminate; and when arrived there, they will face towards each other, establishing themselves, accurately, on the line, between the points of direction of the right and left, by the means of proceeding prescribed in No. 311, and following ones, of the *Discipline of the Battalion**.

261. When the commander in chief perceives the aids-de-camp, steadily, stationed on the right and left, he will command,

MARCH (or *Quick* = MARCH.) (*Marche (ou pas accéléré* = *Marche.*)

262. At this word, repeated with vivacity, the deployment commences; the captain commanding the grand division

* See Rules, Line, § 179, Nos. 1, 2, and 3. "A commandant with a corps of well-instructed officers who understand the service, will execute a manœuvre with more order than with another corps whose knowledge is not equal to those above."—See Saldern's Tactics, page 177.

Though it is indispensably necessary that engineer and artillery officers should possess a knowledge of the higher powers of mathematics, it is not equally requisite that infantry officers ought to understand these abstruse branches of science. A thorough knowledge of the doctrine of lines and angles combined with common curves, is that which they must be conversant in. This supposition includes a thorough knowledge of arithmetic in all its branches—of the first six books of Euclid—of plain trigonometry—practical geometry, and of the use of mathematical instruments, or the application of the above branches to practice. There have been instances, where men of peculiar genius, devoid of such knowledge, have made a distinguished figure; but a few exceptions will not do away a general truth, that officers, particularly after attaining to rank, will, when uninstructed in the above branches, at least, labour under disadvantages distressing to their own feelings, and detrimental to the service. A great majority, however, of our officers are, previously, well instructed in science, languages, and polite literature; and a recently established institution will render our officers as skilful in military science, as they have ever been enterprising and gallant in the field.

vision at the head of the battalion that will be on the right in line, placed by the side of his director of the right, will conduct his march a little in rear of the aid-de-camp placed on the right, in order to avoid intersecting the line; and the grand divisions at the head of each of the other battalions which deploy marching to the right flank, will march in the path or track traced out by the leading battalion of the right.

263. The captain commanding the first grand division of the battalion of the left of the line, placed at the side of his director of the left, of his grand division, will, in the same manner, direct his march a little in the rear of the aid-de-camp, stationed on the left of the line.

264. The fourth battalion deploys first, in conformity with the directions laid down in the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

265. The lieutenant colonel of the third battalion, on perceiving the first grand division of the fourth halted, will, after his battalion has taken an interval of eight toises from the fourth, order: 1st, *Fourth grand division, (quatrième division)*; 2d, HALT; and the captain commanding the grand division will order, FRONT*.

266. The third, second, and first grand divisions, as also the grenadiers, continue marching on; and will be halted, each in its turn, by its respective captain commanding it, as has been prescribed in the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

267. The lieutenant colonel of the second battalion seeing the first grand division of the third halted, will, after his battalion has taken an interval of eight toises, order, *Fourth grand division, (quatrième division)*; 2d, HALT; and the captain commanding it will give the word, FRONT.

268. The lieutenant colonel of the first battalion, will, in his turn, give the same words of command.

269. As soon as the fourth grand division of each of these battalions shall have been uncovered, the captain commanding that grand division will order: 1st, *The grand division will advance, (division en avant)*; *March by the left, (guides à gauche)*; 3d, MARCH, (*Marche.*)

270. At the word *march*, the fourth grand division will

* See Rules, Battalion, § 149, Deployment on a Rear Grand Division.

will march towards the line ; and it will be halted by its captain at the distance of two paces from the adjutant-major who will have preceded it, an instant, previously, in order to place himself on the line.

271. As soon as the fourth grand division is halted, the director of the right, the director of the left, and the covering serjeant of the centre of that grand division will move forward on the line, facing towards the directors of the battalion that is on their left ; their position will be accurately adjusted by the adjutant-major ; and when this is effected, the captain commanding the grand division, will order, *Left = DRESS, (à gauche = alignement.)*

The third, second, and first grand divisions of each battalion, as also the grenadiers, will march forward, successively, to the line, conforming to what has been directed in the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

272. The battalions marching to the left flank will deploy on the same principles.

273. The lieutenant colonel of the fifth battalion, on perceiving the fourth grand division of the fourth halted, will order, after his battalion has taken an interval of eight toises : 1st, *First grand division, (premiere division,)* HALT ; and the captain commanding it will give the word, FRONT.

274. The first grand division having *fronted*, the director of the right, the director of the left, and the covering serjeant in the centre of that grand division, will post themselves on the line, facing towards the directors of the battalion which is on their right ; they will be, accurately, placed in their position by the adjutant-major of their battalion ; and when this is effected, the captain commanding the grand division will order : *Right = DRESS, (à droite = alignement.)*

275. The second, third, and fourth grand divisions of the fifth battalion will deploy according to the principles laid down in the *Discipline of the Battalion* *.

276. The lieutenant colonels of the sixth, seventh, and eighth battalions will, each, in his turn, halt the first grand division of their battalions, respectively, as has above been directed to be done by the lieutenant colonel of the fifth ;
and

* See Rules, Battalion, § 148, Deployment on a Front Grand Division.

and the other grand divisions of these battalions will conform to the directions laid down for deploying, in the *discipline of the battalion* *.

277. The line having deployed, the commander in chief will order, *colours, to your places, (drapeaux, à vos places.)*

278. The commander in chief will carefully observe, that the directors and bearers of the colours of the fourth battalion, and of the battalion immediately on its right and left, post themselves, accurately, on the line.

279. The lieutenant colonels of battalions having halted the front, or rear grand division of their respective battalions, as has been here detailed, will follow the progress of the deployment of the other grand divisions; and in case a captain commanding a grand division might commit an error in halting it either too soon, or too late, they, the lieutenant colonels, would repair such error, by judiciously halting the following grand division; preventing, thus, the extension of the effect of the fault committed.

280. The adjutants-major of the battalions which deploy on their rear grand division, will precede such grand division, by some few paces; arriving on the line, and, thus, indicating to the captain commanding the grand division, the moment at which he ought to halt it.

281. If the column consisted of two battalions only, or even of four, the commander could dispense with deploying the battalions in mass, as a previous measure; and, in such case, the deployment would be executed according to the principles pointed out in the *discipline of the battalion*; observing the following directions †.

282. Let a column of four battalions, with the right in front, be supposed; and that this column is to deploy

VOL. I.

G g

into

* In deployments and successive formations, non-commissioned officers, termed "*directors of the right, and left,*" are, always, advantageously employed in marking off the part of the line on which their companies, or grand divisions, are to form. From the ready multiplicity of precautions used, in this respect, liable to the constant superintendence of the lieutenant colonel, adjutant-major, and adjutant, it appears next to a moral impossibility, that the line formed on, should be otherwise, than perfectly straight.

† See Rules, Close Column of the Line, No. 8.

into line, on the fourth grand division of the second battalion.

283. The commander in chief will place two markers close in front of the grand division at the head of the column, commanding afterwards,

1. *The column will deploy into line on the fourth grand division of the second battalion. (Sur la quatrième division du second bataillon, déployez la colonne.)*

284. This order having been repeated, the lieutenant colonel of the second battalion will caution the named grand division to stand fast; and will command, 1st, *The battalion will face to the right, (bataillon, par le flanc droit;)* 2dly, *to the right* = FACE, (*à droite.*)

285. The lieutenant colonel of the first battalion will give the same words of command, as those given by the lieutenant colonel of the second.

286. The lieutenant colonels of the third and fourth battalions will shift to the right flank of their respective battalions, and when on the right flank, they will order, 1st, *The battalion will face to the left, (bataillon, par le flanc gauche;)* 2dly, *to the left* = FACE, (*à gauche.*)

287. At the instant when the commander has named the grand division that is to give the ground, he will detach an aid-de-camp to the right, who will post himself beyond the point to which the right of the line will extend; and he will align him on the markers stationed before the head of the column*.

288. This aid-de-camp being, thus, stationed, the commander will order,
MARCH, (or *quick* = MARCH.) (*Marche, (ou pas accéléré = marche.)*)

289. On this word being lively and rapidly repeated, the deployment will commence; the second battalion will deploy according to the principles prescribed in the
discipline

* “Deploying from close column, though in many situations, a most accurate method of taking up a given and fixed position in line, is not on all occasions to be preferred to the marches of the open column; for if once the operation is begun, the line must be completely formed before any other movement can commence, and which a change of circumstances may sometimes require.”

See Dundas's Principles of Military Movements, published in 1788, page 110.

discipline of the battalion; and the lieutenant colonel of the first battalion will halt his fourth grand division, when he has left between it, and the first grand division of the second battalion, the interval of eight toises.

290. The lieutenant colonels of the third and fourth battalions will halt their first grand division, according to the same principle.

291. The grand division of each column, that deploys first, will be established on the line, as has been explained in this article; and the other grand divisions will conform to the principles prescribed in the *discipline of the battalion*.

292. The commander will discharge the same duties that have been assigned him in this article.

293. The lieutenant colonels of battalions will, each, in his own battalion, conform, during the deployment, to the rules contained in No. 279 of this article.

294. The adjutants-major discharge the duties that have been pointed out for them in this article; and, when the deployment is accomplished, the commander in chief will order, *colours to your places, (drapeaux à vos places.)*

295. These various deployments are executed in a column with the left in front, on the same principles, and by the contrary and opposite mode of procedure.

2dly, *When the close column deploys into line fronting to its then rear.*

Face en arrière.

296. When the commander in chief sees it necessary to deploy the column into line fronting to the rear, he will commence by causing the column to countermarch, after which he will cause it to deploy into line, by the words of command and means that have been just explained for deploying parallel to the front of the march*.

3dly, *When the column is to deploy, obliquely, or at right angles, fronting to the left†.*

Face à gauche.

297. A column in mass, may equally deploy into line fronting to its left flank; for this purpose, the commander

G g 2

der

* See Rules, Line, § 181, No. 13.

† See Rules, Line, § 188, Oblique deployments.

der will, first, change the direction of the column to the left, by filing it from its right flank into the new direction; and the deployment into line will, then, take place, by the words of command, and means, directed to be used in this article.

4thly, *When the column is to deploy, obliquely, or at right angles, fronting to the right.*

Face à droite.

298. A column standing in mass may deploy into line, obliquely to the left, or facing to its right flank; for this purpose the commander in chief will first cause the close column to change its direction to the right, by filing from the left flank into the new direction; and the deployment into line, will, then, take place, by the words of command, and mode of procedure, directed to be followed in this article*.

299. If, after the battalion close columns have deployed, so as to stand in close battalion columns, contiguously, on one line, the commander deemed it necessary that the whole should advance in this order, he would, previously, name the battalion close column of direction, afterwards giving the word †,

1. *The battalion will advance. (Bataillon en avant.)*

The lieutenant colonels of battalions having repeated the order, will, on that, immediately command, *march by the regulating battalion, and the centre. (Bataillon, guide au centre.)*

The adjutant of each battalion will step forward, posting himself six paces in front of the company-officer stationed in the centre of the leading grand division of his battalion. The captains commanding grand divisions, resume their places in line.

The commander in chief will, then, order,

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

300. On this word, loudly and briskly repeated, the battalion close columns step off to the front; the grand divisions will take the touch of the elbows from the side of

* See Rules, Line, § 188, and § 186, where the ultimate formation exhibits the same result, as changing the direction of a general close column, previous to deploying into line.

† See Rules, Line, § 187, No. 5.

of the captain of the company placed in the centre of each of them; the leading grand division of each battalion, marches in the track of its adjutant; and the others will march, exactly, in the traces of the first.

301. The adjutants direct their march, perpendicularly, to the front, taking the utmost pains to maintain the just length and cadence of the step, without occupying their attention in marching on each other.

302. The lieutenant colonels of battalions, placed in rear of the centre of their respective close column battalions, direct their march, perpendicularly, to the front.

303. The adjutants-major placed on the outer flank (*du côté opposé à la direction*) of the leading grand division of their respective battalions, will direct the march of the battalions so that they may be all, nearly, on one line, or equally advanced.

PART V.

Article First.

*March in Line *.*

Marche en Bataille.

304. Let it be supposed that eight battalions are drawn up, correctly, in line; when this line is to advance, the commander in chief will order,

G g 3

1. *The*

* See Rules, Line, March in Line, § 201.

See Rules, Battalion, § 166.

Under the article of the march of the battalion in line, some remarks have been inserted on this most important part of Tactics. General Saldern's works, so much followed in the British system, is strongly recommended on this head, by the Prussian tacticians. He is reckoned their ablest and clearest writer on the subject. In the leading work to which so many references have been made, Saldern's works are, thus, noticed, when treating of the march in line.

“ On trouvera la-dessus d'excellentes instructions dans l'ouvrage du Général Saldern, mais nous comptons en développer les principes les plus généraux, et par-là faciliter l'intelligence des bonnes choses que cet excellent tacticien a dites dans son livre.”

A Prussian regulating battalion is, generally, a central one. The line, previous to marching off, is dressed with the most minute attention.

1. *The fourth (or fifth) battalion, is to be the regulating battalion. (Quatrième bataillon (ou cinquième bataillon) de direction.)*

(Plate XXXI. Fig. 1.)

305. This order having been repeated, the lieutenant colonel, and the adjutant-major of each battalion of the line, will post themselves, the former in the rear, and the latter in the front of his respective battalion, in the direction of the file of the colours, as has been prescribed in Nos. 446 and 447 of the *discipline of the battalion*.

306. The lieutenant colonel of the regulating battalion, having posted his adjutant-major, accurately, on the perpendicular, will, quickly, establish two markers in the rear of the battalion, as has been prescribed in No. 448 of the *discipline of the battalion*.

307. The commander in chief will verify the accuracy of direction of these markers; and will direct an aid-de-camp, during the march in line, to superintend the successive relieving, or replacing of these camp-colourmen; and this aid-de-camp will, immediately, post himself in their rear.

308. The commander in chief having ascertained the accuracy of direction of these camp-colourmen, and having rectified the same, if necessary, will proceed to the front of the *regulating battalion*, ordering,

2. *The battalion will advance. (Bataillon en avant.)*

309. This order having been repeated, the rank of the bearer of the colours of each battalion will advance six ordinary paces, and the two general directors will move forward aligning on this rank; the adjutant of the battalion will confirm them in that position, and will post himself,

tention. The under-officers are long, laboriously, and carefully instructed in marching with the most precise accuracy; and this is proved by trying their march over considerable known spaces compared with time. *The men are deemed recruits for three years*, during which they are assiduously and unremittingly practised in all the branches of discipline. They are particularly habituated to march in open ranks, with loose files, in order to inculcate marching in the alignment without leaning, pressing, or bearing to either hand. The result is that wonderful accuracy of march in line, which has been, justly, the admiration of Europe.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, from page 353 to page 362.

himself, afterwards, at the distance of six or eight paces on the flank of the rank of the bearer of the colours, that is farthest removed from the regulating battalion.

310. In this position, the attention is not to be directed to aligning the colours, and the general directors of the different battalions, on each other; it will be sufficient that, in each battalion, they conform to the directions given.

311. These arrangements having been made, the commander in chief will order,

3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

312. At this word, which must be repeated with the utmost rapidity, the line is put in motion at the same instant; and each battalion will scrupulously attend to the directions given for marching in line, in the *discipline of the battalion*.

313. The lieutenant colonel and adjutant-major of each battalion, will conform, in maintaining the direction and alignment of their battalion, to the principles laid down in the *discipline of the battalion*.

314. The *regulating battalion* being regarded as infallible * by all the others, and having, thus, the greatest influence over the rest of the line, its march is to be watched over with the greatest care; consequently, the commander in chief placed in front of this battalion (or the officer directed by him to supply his place) will, unremittingly, exert himself in maintaining, constantly, the centre of the battalion on the perpendicular; for this purpose, he must, frequently, proceed thirty or forty paces in front of the bearer of the colours, facing to the rear, and aligning himself, correctly, on the camp-colourmen placed behind the battalion; and in this situation, he is to adjust, if requisite, the direction of the non-commissioned officer situated in the centre of the battalion, as also that of the bearer of the colours.

315. If the line of direction of this battalion has been, originally, inaccurately marked off, which may easily arise from the difficulty of judging with precision of the perpendicular, the commander in chief, and the lieutenant colonel of the battalion, will perceive this, after the line
has

* See Rules, Line, § 201, No. 2. and 5.

has marched some paces ; because the battalion would slant bulgingly on the line, throwing up a flank, and diminishing its interval on one side, and increasing it on the other.

316. If, for example, the line of direction, instead of being perpendicular to the original line, had been taken to the left of the perpendicular, the regulating battalion would slant on the line, gliding to the left, and bulging out, so as to contract its interval on the left, in the same proportion that it enlarged it on the right, a thing that would necessarily force all the other battalions to oblique to the left, in order to regain their interval ; and the commander in chief, by placing himself, for a moment, in the line, to the right of the regulating battalion, will see that the battalions on the left are too far advanced, while those on the right are, relatively, too far behind, in regard only to the false direction of this battalion.

317. In order to repair, readily, this fault, the commander in chief would direct an aid-de-camp, or the adjutant of the regulating * battalion, to step, nimbly, thirty or forty paces in front of the centre of this battalion, and to face to the rear ; he will, at the same time, retire to a similar distance in rear of the centre of the battalion, placing, by a signal made with his sword, the aid-de-camp, or adjutant, on the new direction which he deems it necessary to give the battalion ; the lieutenant colonel will, immediately, caution the non-commissioned officer placed in the centre of the battalion, as also the bearer of the colours, to conform to the new direction, and the officer charged with the duty of the successive replacing of the markers, to conform their situations, likewise, to the altered direction.

318. If, after marching some paces, the commander has perceived that the new direction is not exact, he is quickly to give another ; but if he possesses a ready aptitude of judging by the eye, (*coup-d'œil*,) and is in the habit

* “ The commandants of all the battalions, must look on the dressing battalion as being infallible, (but not so the general,) therefore, they must not lose sight of it ; and with regard to the dressing, proceed the same manner as with any other battalion.”—See Saldern's Tactics, page 237.

habit of conducting a line, he will seldom have occasion to change the direction more than once *.

319. All the other battalions of the line must carefully maintain their proper interval, on the flank nearest to the *regulating battalion*.

320. The preservation of the interval being the most essential point in the march in line, is particularly that to which the lieutenant colonels are to direct their chief attention †.

321. The loss of the interval may proceed from different causes, as will be explained.

322. 1st, It may arise from the bearer of the colours, and from the battalion having taken a false direction; in this case, the lieutenant colonel will readily perceive the defect after marching a few paces, by the signs detailed in No. 475, and the following ones of the *discipline of the battalion*; he will readily apply the remedy to this, by pursuing the means prescribed in No. 465, and the following ones: and after doing this, he will cause the proper interval to be resumed, as has been explained in No. 483 of the *discipline of the battalion*.

323. 2dly, The loss of the interval may take place, though the battalion may not have flanted, bulged out, opened out, or crowded on the line; it may have proceeded from the bearer of the colours having obliques without being sensible of so doing, and without having retired a shoulder; or it may arise from an error committed by a contiguous battalion: in the first instance, the battalion must be directed to oblique, to resume the interval; and in the second case, the neighbouring battalion must remedy the fault.

324. 3dly, The interval may be contracted, gradually, by too great an opening of the files; and in this case, it may prove sufficient, to direct them to ease off, insensibly, towards the centre of their battalion.

325. Co-

* The above but imperfectly expresses the meaning of the expression, "*coup-d'œil*." There are words in the English language, which the French cannot express without a periphrasis, such as our adjective, "*comfortable*."

† See Rules, Line, § 201, No. 5.

325. Colonels of regiments acting as brigadiers *, situated more in rear of the line, and being able to see several battalions at once, are thereby enabled to judge with facility of the causes of loss of interval ; and they will, accordingly, caution the lieutenant colonels.

326. When the loss of interval is inconsiderable, and that the battalion does not throw up a flank, flant or bulge out on the line, the lieutenant colonel may confine himself to cautioning the bearer of the colours to ease off, insensibly, to the right, or left, instead of giving a word of command to oblique ; and, by this means, the interval will be gradually regained.

As to the general alignment, the following directions are to be attended to.

(Plate XXXI. Fig. 2.)

327. It is unnecessary to bestow a scrupulous attention in preserving the colours of the different battalions in the same alignment ; consequently, the adjutant of each battalion, placed on the flank of the rank of the bearer of the colours of his battalion, on the side farthest from the *regulating battalion*, is not to cause that rank to step short, or step out, excepting there may appear an evident necessity for

* “ *Les Chefs de Brigade et de Regiment.*” In page 275, the “ *Chef de Brigade,*” and the “ *Colonel,*” have distinct posts assigned to them. It has been explained in a note, page 274, that the “ *Chef de Regiment,*” or colonel, if the senior colonel of the brigade, or half brigade, in the absence of a general of brigade, discharges the duties of that rank, and is to be called “ *Chef de Brigade.*”—“ *Le général de brigade commande une brigade qui est composée de deux demi-brigades, ou de deux régimens; et chaque demi-brigade est composée de trois bataillons de mille hommes chacun, ce qui en statuant sur le complet, fait que chaque division devrait être de douze mille hommes en infanterie seulement.*”—*Les généraux, les chefs de brigades, et même ceux de bataillons doivent être bien montés sur des chevaux lestes, dressés au feu, et assez élevés pour découvrir derrière le front de la troupe et ses mouvements, pour pouvoir arriver avec célérité ou leur présence et nécessaire.*”

See, *Le Militaire Experimenté du Général de Division Wempflen*, pages 97 and 131.

It is necessary to give clear and defined ideas of the ranks and duties of French general, and field-officers; and therefore, in different parts of the notes attached to this translation, (for there are no notes in the original,) extracts have been given bearing on the subject, from works of repute.

for maintaining a certain degree of connection with, and attachment to the general line.

328. The two general directors of each battalion, must, always, conform to the direction of the rank of the bearer of the colours of their battalion; and, during the march, keep as far advanced as this rank, without attending, in any respect, to the marching of the other colours, and general directors of the line.

329. Nothing contributes more to fatigue the soldiers, and to disturb the interior order of the battalion, than frequent variations of the step; the three non-commissioned officers situated in the centre of the battalion must, invariably, maintain the length and cadence of the step, without a studious endeavour to keep up the exact distance of six paces from the rank of the bearer of the colours; and, consequently, they are neither to step out, nor step short, unless cautioned so to do, by the lieutenant colonel or adjutant-major of their battalion.

330. As a necessary consequence deduced from this principle, the lieutenant colonels of battalions are not required to bestow a minute and studied attention in maintaining their battalions accurately aligned on each other, during the march: therefore, they are not to cause their battalions to step out, or step short, to mark time, or quicken the step; excepting when it may be evidently necessary so to act, in order to maintain the general connection of the line: and should it happen that one battalion may be only a few paces either too far advanced, or too far behind the contiguous battalions, this slight imperfection will, for the most part, remedy itself, without any particular exertion being used to obviate it.

331. The lieutenant colonels of battalions will watch with the greatest care, that the direction and interior order of the battalion are attended to; and the adjutants-major are to regulate the alignment.

332. Colonels of regiments, or brigadiers, will superintend the march of their regiment or brigade, endeavouring, principally, to preserve the intervals.

333. The attention of the commander in chief is to be, principally, directed to the march of the *regulating battalion*; but his superintending care is, generally, to extend over, and embrace the whole extent of the line.

General

*General remarks on the march in line.**Observations générales relatives à la marche en bataille.*

334. The march in line will not be effected with the necessary order, firmness and connected regularity, unless the different battalions of the line have been, previously, and separately, thoroughly exercised in the practice of the same principles.

335. Although the uniformity of the step may be the principal means of perfection of the march in line, it is still essential that the bearer of the colours should have acquired the habit of prolonging a given line of direction, without varying from it, or deviating to right or left; and the lieutenant colonels of battalions ought to be able to conduct them with skill and intelligence.

336. It is by means of the uniformity of the step, that the different battalions are enabled to keep, nearly, in a regular alignment, without effort, during the march.

337. It is by exercising the bearers of the colours, previously, in correctly prolonging a certain given line, that the loss of interval, in marching in line, is most easily, and best prevented.

338. Finally, it is by acquiring an accurate aptitude of judging by the eye (*coup-d'œil*) arising from continued practice, that the lieutenant colonels acquire the faculty of ascertaining, readily, the line of direction; and of conducting their battalions over every description of ground, with a skill and intelligence requisite for preventing faults, and for remedying them, quickly, if committed *.

339. The commander in chief can, always, assume, as the

* "*Coup-d'œil Militaire.*" Art de connoître la nature et les diverses situations d'un pays où l'on porte la guerre, par lequel on distingue les avantages et désavantages des postes que l'on veut occuper, ou que l'on croit être utiles ou inutiles à l'ennemi. Le juste *coup-d'œil* est quelquefois un présent de la nature, mais il est aussi le fruit de l'étude, de l'application, et d'une extrême passion de bien faire. C'est ce qu'on peut appeler après cela, *jugement secret*. La chasse est un grand maître pour l'acquisition d'un *coup-d'œil* juste. Plusieurs grands capitaines du seizième et dix-septième siècles possédèrent la justesse du *coup-d'œil*; et Louis XV. l'avoit, peut être, plus parfaitement encore que Philopœmen, l'un des plus grands capitaines grecs."——Nouveau Dictionnaire Militaire.

the battalion of regulation, that which he judges, according to the views he may have, the best calculated for directing the line; but when particular reasons do not operate in favour of selecting a battalion on, or near the flank, a central battalion may have the preference.

Article Second.

Change of direction, when marching in line.*

Changement de direction en marchant en bataille.

340. If when the line is marching to the front, the commander in chief deems it necessary to alter its direction, by throwing forward the whole line, by a wheel on either flank, the movement is to be executed in the following manner.

(Plate XXXII. Fig. 2.)

341. Let it be supposed that the commander in chief intends the left flank to be the wheeling flank of the line, he will proceed to the front of the battalion on the right, and will place two aids-de-camp, or two markers, at the distance of forty or fifty paces from each other, on the new direction to be given to the line; these markers are to be stationed in front of, or before the battalion on the right, and the first (*a*) is to be placed at the point where the right of the line is to rest.

342. These arrangements having been made, the commander will direct the lieutenant colonel of the battalion on the right to be informed that he is to establish his battalion on the alignment of the markers, after which he will command,

1. *Change the direction to the right (by wheeling the battalions on the right flank, into echelon). (Changement de direction à droite.)*

This order having been repeated briskly, the commander in chief will give the word,

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

343. On this word, smartly repeated, each of the bat-

VOL. I.

H h

talions

* See Rules, Line, § 203, No. 4.—See Rules, Chequered Retreat of the Line, No. 10.—See Rules, Battalion, § 169, Changes of the battalion, when in movement.

talions of the line will commence its wheel, or change of direction, according to the principles prescribed in the *Discipline of the Battalion*, No. 506, and following ones; and as soon as each battalion has disengaged, or thrown up its left flank, its lieutenant colonel will command,

3. *Forward* = MARCH. (*En avant* = *Marche*.)

344. At this word, each battalion will resume the march direct to the front.

345. The battalion on the right will continue to wheel till the direction of it becomes parallel to that of the two markers; the lieutenant colonel of this battalion will, then, order, *forward*, (*en avant*,) MARCH, halting it four paces on this side, or short of the markers, and ordering, immediately afterwards, *Colours and general directors on the line*, (*Drapeaux, et guides généraux sur la ligne* *.)

346. The bearer of the colours, and the two general directors, will face to the commander in chief placed on the right, who will establish them, correctly, on the new direction; which being done, the lieutenant colonel will order, 1st, *Directors on the line*, (*Guides sur la ligne*;) 2dly, *By the centre* = DRESS, (*sur le centre* = *alignement*.)

(Plate XXXII. Fig. 2. and 3.)

347. The lieutenant colonel of the second battalion will direct its march in such a manner as that it may arrive square behind, or parallel to the new direction; and to effect this, he will, repeatedly, cause his battalion to change direction, in proportion as he approaches the line.

348. The adjutant-major (*m*) will, previously, move up on the new line, and will post himself at the distance of eight toises from the left flank of the first battalion, in order,

* See Rules, Line § 199, where the echelon position into which the several battalions are thrown, yields the same result as the above movement.

“Indépendamment des grands objets d'utilité militaire, lever (*des plans topographiques*) est le meilleur moyen que l'homme de guerre ait pour se former un coup-d'œil.”—“Un jeune homme doué d'une tête saine, en s'appliquant à cette partie, et l'exerçant beaucoup, acquerra insensiblement un œil actif et juste, qui le rendra un officier très précieux.”—See note, page 348.

See *Tactique Prussienne*, page 181.

order, thus, to indicate to the lieutenant colonel of the second battalion the point at which he is to rest the right flank of his battalion.

349. The lieutenant colonel of the second battalion will halt it at the distance of four paces in rear of the new line, immediately afterwards commanding, *Colours, and general directors on the line, (Drapeaux, et guides généraux sur la ligne.)*

350. At this word, the bearer of the colours, and the two general directors of the second battalion, will face to the right, placing themselves, quickly, on the line.

351. The adjutant, placing himself behind the general director of the left, will align them, correctly, on the general directors of the first battalion; and when this is effected, the lieutenant colonel of the battalion commands, 1st, *Directors on the line, (Guides sur la ligne;)* by the centre = DRESS, (*sur le centre = alignement.*)

352. Each of the following battalions will conform to the directions detailed for the second battalion.

353. The adjutant-major of each battalion will precede his battalion about one hundred paces, placing himself on the line in the same manner as the adjutant-major of the second battalion has been directed to post himself.

354. The commander in chief placed on the right of the line, will watch with care, seeing that the two first colours of the two first battalions, are, exactly, placed on the new direction; and when the last battalion becomes established on the line, he will order,

Colours to your places. (Drapeaux à vos places.)

355. Changes of direction of the line made on the left, are executed by the contrary mode of procedure; or by throwing up the right flanks of the battalions into echelon.

Article Third.

*When the line is to halt and dress *.*

Arrêter la ligne, et l'aligner.

856. To halt the line, the commander in chief will order,

1. *Battalion.* (*Bataillon.*)

This word having been repeated, the commander in chief will order,

2. HALT. (*Halte †.*)

357. Upon

* See Rules, Line, § 201, No. II, § 202.

See *General Saldern's Tactics*—Advancing and retreating in Line. Here four flag serjeants step out to lead the battalion. In *Tactique Prussienne*, only three are assigned for this duty. These serjeants are trained to this duty in front of a body of non-commissioned officers representing a line. The flag-serjeants in the centre and rear ranks, replace those who step out of the front rank, to lead the battalion. The old mode of advancing in line, in the Prussian service, was founded on the supposition that the centre serjeants moved on perpendiculars parallel to each other, and at right angles to the general line as originally placed. These serjeants, called flag-serjeants, were supposed to have taken two objects in front lying in a line perpendicular to the front of their respective battalions. It was, in process of time, found, that false perpendiculars were assumed and marched on. The battalions, thereby misled, formed angles with each other, and lost their intervals. This inconvenience was remedied by causing those serjeants to advance six paces, accurately, on a marked line; and in order to establish them in one straight line perfectly parallel to the line of battalions, they are all dressed on each other, commencing the dressing generally from a wing. The commandants of battalions march four paces in front of their advanced serjeants, and these commandants, when the line is advancing, maintain their dressing on each other. The generals of brigade ride along the front, and observe that the advanced serjeants keep in the general line, without deviating to right or left. The line of battalions, has, thus, two parallel lines marching in front to insure the accuracy of advancing. The majors and adjutants follow close in the rear of their respective battalions, warning them steadily, and with coolness, when they are deviating from being parallel to the lines of serjeants, and commandants. A Prussian line, from such arrangements, can hardly fail to advance accurately.

See *Saldern's Tactics*, Advancing in Line.

The reader must perceive, that a French line will, necessarily, advance well, from the variety of precautions used, and aids given, particularly respecting the *regulating battalion*, which must be *infalible*, by means of the markers.

† See Rules, Line, § 202.

357. Upon this word, which must be repeated with the utmost rapidity, the line will halt; the rank of the bearer of the colours, and the general directors of each battalion, will halt, at the same time, and remain before the front.

(Plate XXXI. Fig. 3.)

358. The line being halted, if the commander in chief judges it necessary to dress it, he will move to the distance of some paces on the right of the colours of the *regulating battalion*, in order to be the better enabled to command a general view of the line, and in consequence of this, to determine on the new direction to be given to the colours; and this direction is to pass in front of all the battalions, unless particular reasons induce the commander in chief to choose a direction forming an angle with the old line.

359. The commander in chief, afterwards, orders the bearer of the colours, and the general director of the left of this battalion, to face towards him, stationing them on the line of direction he has chosen, by a signal made with his sword; the bearer of the colours will lower his colours, and the general director of the right, faces to the left, dressing on the bearer of the colours, and on the other general director of his battalion; and the adjutant-major is to correct his position on the line, if necessary; on which the two non-commissioned officers belonging to the rank of the bearer of the colours, resume their places in line.

360. These three points having been, thus, laid off, the commander in chief places himself at the distance of some paces, in rear of the bearer of the colours, in order to ascertain the direction of the line passing through the bearer of the colours, and the general director of the right, in respect to the right flank of the old line; and to make such rectification, or alteration, as may correspond with his views.

361. The commander in chief having, thus, established the basis of the general alignment, will order the bearer of the colours to raise his colours, commanding, immediately afterwards,

1. *Colours step on the line.* (*Drapeaux sur la ligne.*)

362. This command having been repeated, the bearers of the colours, and the general directors of all the other bat-

talions of the line, will face to the colours of the *regulating battalion*; those of the battalion on the right and left of the regulating one, will align themselves, correctly, on the bearer of the colours, and general directors of the regulating battalion; the bearers of the colours and general directors of all the other battalions, will dress on the colours already aligned; the adjutant-major, and adjutant will, quickly, establish the accuracy of the position of the bearer of the colours, and general directors of their respective battalions, on the new direction; all the bearers of the colours will carry their colours, perpendicularly, between the two eyes, and the two non-commissioned officers belonging to the rank of the bearer of the colours, of each battalion, will resume their places in line.

363. The commander in chief seeing all the colours of the line established, correctly, on the new direction, orders,

2. *Directors place yourselves on the line. (Guides sur la ligne.)*

364. This command having been repeated, the directors of the right of the companies of the right wing, and the directors of the left of the companies of the left wing of each battalion, take post on the line, facing to the colours of their respective battalions, dressing on them and on the next colours in the direction to which they stand faced; the directors are to be, accurately, placed on the line, those of the right wing, by the adjutant-major, and those of the left wing, by the adjutant; and when this is accomplished, each lieutenant colonel of a battalion, without waiting for, or regulating themselves on each other, will, immediately, order, *on the centre, or by the centre = DRESS, (sur le centre = alignement.)*

365. Upon this word of command, each battalion is to move up to its directors, and is to be aligned as has been directed in the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

366. The commander in chief seeing all the battalions dressed on the line, will order,

3. *Colours, and directors, to your places, in line. (Drapeaux et guides, à vos places.)*

367. This order having been repeated, the bearers of the colours, the general directors, and the directors of companies,

panies, as also the captains of companies of the right wing of each battalion, resume their places in line.

368. Should the new direction occasion the throwing back of one, or more, battalions of either of the wings of the line, the lieutenant colonel of each of such battalions, will perceive this, from the direction of the colours; and in this case, he will put his battalion to the right about, march it to the rear, and front it, immediately, on passing beyond the new direction.

Article Fourth.

Firing advancing. (Feu en avançant.)

369. Firing advancing is to be executed by the odd and even, or right and left battalions, alternately; and to effect this, the commander in chief orders,

1. *The battalions will fire advancing, by battalions*;* (*Feu de bataillon en avançant.*)

This order having been repeated, the commander in chief directs,

2. *The odd battalions will commence the fire.* (*Bataillons impairs, commencez le feu.*)

370. This order having been repeated, the lieutenant colonels of the right-hand battalions, only, will order, 1st, *Battalion, advance in quick time,* (*Bataillon, pas accéléré;*) 2dly, *MARCH,* (*Marche.*)

371. Upon the word, *march*, the right hand, or odd battalions, or alternate battalions, assume quick time on the march, and will be halted by their respective lieutenant colonels, when they have marched thirty paces at this rate; each battalion will, immediately, on its ground, by word of command given by its lieutenant colonel, fire by battalion; and when loaded he will cause it to step off, immediately, in quick time, making it resume ordinary time, on effecting a junction with the even, or left battalions.

372. The even battalions will continue, during this time, to march straight forward, in ordinary time; the lieutenant colonel of each of these battalions will not order

* See Rules, Line, § 205, 206.—See Rules, Battalion, § 177.

der his battalion to take quick time, till the odd battalion placed in the order of the line, immediately, on the right, shall have come up with it; each even, or left battalion, will march in its turn, thirty or forty paces to the front, in quick time, halt, and execute the fire by battalion, by word of command from the lieutenant colonel, who will cause it to step off in quick time, when reloaded; and the lieutenant colonel will cause his battalion to resume the ordinary step at the instant of rejoining the odd, or right-hand battalions, which, during this time, have continued marching forward in ordinary time.

373. Each of the odd battalions will execute in its turn of advancing and firing, what has been prescribed for the even battalions, when the battalion belonging to these last, which is placed in the order of the line immediately on its left, has come up with it; and so on, alternately.

374. At the word HALT, which is to be given to each battalion in order to halt it previous to firing, the rank of the bearer of the colours will resume its place in line; the two general directors will place themselves, he of the right, by the side of the captain of the company on the right, and he of the left, by the side of the non-commissioned officer who is on the left of the front rank of the battalion: as soon as the battalion has fired, the rank of the bearer of the colours, and the two general directors will, of their own accords, and without any word of command, resume their places in front of the battalion; the captains of companies, the covering serjeants, and the centre and rear ranks of the guard of the colours, will also resume their places in line; and the lieutenant colonel is not to order a roll, or ruffle of the drum to be beat, after firing.

375. When the commander in chief deems it necessary to cease firing, he will order a short roll of the drum to be beat, which is to be, instantly, repeated by the drummers of all the battalions of the line; and on this signal, all the battalions, whether odd, or even, will dress on the march, on the regulating battalion which is to march in ordinary time; and for this purpose, the lieutenant colonels of the different battalions will cause them, if behind, to march in quick time, and if too far advanced, to mark time. The
battalions

battalions which have fired, will finish loading before they march into the general line.

Remarks on executing firing advancing.

Observations relatives à l'exécution du feu en avançant.

376. It is of the utmost importance, that during the execution of this firing, the bearers of the colours should direct their march, without deviation, to the front, perpendicularly, without which the battalions would get on each other's ground, from which disorder in the line would necessarily result; on this account, the lieutenant colonels will use every exertion to prevent this effect.

377. To preserve the utmost possible connection and regularity in the line, during the firing, it is necessary that the odd battalions should regulate themselves on each other; consequently, the lieutenant colonel of each of these battalions, will take care not to give the word, *quick* = MARCH, (*pas accéléré* = *marche*;) but at the same time that the lieutenant colonel of the odd battalion next to him on the side of the *regulating battalion* has given this command; and this first mentioned lieutenant colonel will halt his battalion by the same rule, as far advanced as the one he regulates himself on, though the observation of this principle should occasion his marching more or less than thirty paces in quick time; and the even battalions in their turn of acting, similarly, will follow the same regulating principle.

Article Fifth.

When the line retires.*

Marcher en retraite.

378. The line being halted, the commander in chief will, when he deems it necessary for the line to retire, order,

1. *Battalion, to the right about* = FACE. (*Bataillon, demi-tour à droite.*)

379. This command having been repeated, the line faces to the right about; the lieutenant colonel, the adjutant-

* See Rules, Line, § 203.

jutant-major, and the adjutant, as also the rank of the bearer of the colours, and the general directors of each battalion, will conform to what has been prescribed in the *discipline of the battalion*. The camp-colourmen placed behind the *regulating battalion*, will face towards that battalion, on a caution given by the officer charged with their successive replacing of each other, during the march.

The commander in chief will, then, order,

2. *The line will retire* *. (*Bataillons en avant.*)

380. This order having been repeated, the rank of the bearer of the colours, also the general directors of each battalion, the captains commanding companies, the covering serjeants, and the supernumerary rank, will conform to what has been prescribed in the *discipline of the battalion*.

The commander in chief, then, orders,

3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

381. The line will retire on the same principles of marching, as if it advanced with the proper front rank leading.

Article Sixth.

When a line changes direction in retiring †.

Changement de direction en retraite.

382. When the line is retreating, if the commander in chief deems it necessary to cause it to change direction, so
as

* “*Bataillons en avant* ;” this cautionary command has been translated as above, as English military idiom does not admit of directing a line to advance, when it is, actually, to retire. The French expression means that the line is to advance in the direction of the rear rank leading, without carrying in the mind any retrospective idea of what had been the former front. “*En avant*,” in the French system of Tactics, means the front of the line according as it may be, *then*, facing. The proper rear of an English line becomes the front, after the line has countermarched on its ground. The proper rear of a French line becomes its front, by facing to the right about.

† See Rules, Line, Chequered Retreat, No. 10, § 203, No. 4.

as to refuse either wing, the movement is to be executed in the following manner*.

383. Let it be supposed that the commander in chief wishes to refuse the left wing become the right by facing about, he will proceed in front of the battalion on the proper right become the battalion on the left as the line faces; and he will station two markers, forty or fifty paces from each other, on the new direction which he means to give to the line, as has been explained in the case of changing direction when marching in line, with the proper front rank leading.

384. These arrangements having been made, the commander in chief will cause the lieutenant colonel of the battalion on the proper right, become (as the line faces) the battalion on the left, to be cautioned that he is to establish his battalion in the direction given to the markers; and the commander in chief will, then, order,

1. *The line will change direction to the left. (Changement de direction à gauche.)*

This command having been repeated, smartly, the general in chief will order,

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

385. At this word, repeated with vivacity, each of the battalions of the line will commence its change of direction, according to the principles laid down in the Discipline of the Battalion, No. 506, and following ones; and as soon as each battalion has disengaged, or thrown up its flank into an echelon direction, the lieutenant colonel of it will command,

3. *Forward* = MARCH. (*En avant = marche.*)

386. At this word, each battalion will, from wheeling on a flank, resume the direct march†.

387. The battalion on the proper right become that on the left, will alone continue to wheel till the direction of
it

* See Rules, Line, Passage of Lines, when a wing is refused.—See Rules, Line, § 200, No. 4.

† See Rules, Line, Echelon Movements, No. 5.—Changes of direction of a line on the march, either to the front or rear, according as the line may be advancing or retiring, give a similar result to a change of front made from a halt, when the line is thrown forward, or back, on a halted flank.

it becomes parallel to that of the two markers; on that, the lieutenant colonel of this battalion will order, *forward, MARCH, (en avant = marche:)* at this word, the battalion moves straight forward, passes over and beyond the new line, four paces, and will be halted by the lieutenant colonel. He will put the battalion to the right about (*demi-tour à droite*), establishing it on the direction of the two markers, by the words of command, and means, directed to be used in Nos. 345, and 346.

388. The lieutenant colonel of the second battalion will direct his march so as to arrive square, or parallel to the new direction, conforming to what has been prescribed in No. 347.

389. The second battalion will pass beyond the new direction, four paces, and will be, then, halted by its lieutenant colonel, who will put it to the right about; he will order the bearer of the colours, and the two general directors to the front, causing them to cover, or dress on those of the battalion on the right; and when this is effected, the lieutenant colonel of the battalion will command, 1st, *Directors advance on the line, (Guides sur la ligne;)* 2dly, *By the centre = DRESS, (Sur le centre = alignement.)*

390. The adjutant-major of the second battalion must precede his battalion on the new line, and place himself at the distance of eight toises from the left flank of the battalion on the right, in order, thus, to indicate the point at which the right flank of his battalion is to rest in line.

391. Each of the following battalions is to conform to the directions laid down for the movements of the second: and the adjutant-major of each of them, must precede his battalion about one hundred paces, placing himself on the line, in the manner in which the adjutant-major of the second battalion has been directed so to do.

392. The commander in chief, placed on the right of the line, will direct the two first colours coming on the line, to take post between him and the distant point he has chosen on the left; and when the last battalion becomes established on the line, he will order, *Colours to your places in line, (Drapeaux à vos places.)*

393. Changes of direction to the right, in order to refuse the right wing become left (by facing about), are executed

ected by the contrary mode of procedure, or by inversion of means.

Remarks on changes of direction, when marching in line.

Observations relatives aux changemens de direction en marchant en bataille.

394. The method adopted for effecting a change of direction of one of the lines, marching in line, either by throwing forward, or by refusing one of the wings, offers the following advantages.

395. It affords a facility in re-forming the line parallel to that of the enemy, without breaking off into separate columns; the battalions marching in echelon, mutually protect each other, and they can, if necessary, form in complete line, very readily, by means of a change of direction made by each battalion, contrary to that which they would have, otherwise, accomplished *; finally, battalions deployed into line, and whose flanks are, thus, thrown up into echelon, are less exposed to the enemy's artillery, than battalions in column.

396. If previous to finishing the movement, it should become necessary to front towards the enemy, such battalions as might not have as yet arrived on the new direction, could form in full line, *en potence*, (or forming an angle,) on the flank of the battalions already established on the new direction.

Article Seventh.

Firing retiring in line.

Feu en retraite.

397. When a line is to fire retiring, the commander in chief will order,

VOL. I.

I i

1. *The*

* The movement meant, is similar to that of wheeling back an echelon into line, to oppose a threatened attack. In the above case, the battalions in echelon, would be put to the right about, in order to wheel into line on the directing flank; after which the formed line would face about again, if necessary, according to the situation of the enemy.

1. *The line will fire, by battalions, retiring*.* (*Feu de bataillon en retraite.*)

This order being repeated, the commander in chief will give the word,

2. *The right hand, or odd battalions, will commence firing.* (*Bataillons impairs, commencez le feu.*)

398. This order having been repeated, the lieutenant colonels of the odd battalions only, will immediately halt their respective battalions, and front them, by putting them to the right about; each of these battalions will then fire, by battalions, on receiving the word of command from the lieutenant colonel; as soon as the battalion has loaded, after firing, the lieutenant colonel of each will face it again to the right about, and cause it to retire, in quick time, in order to rejoin the even, or left-hand battalions; and when the battalions have effected this, the lieutenant colonel of each will order his battalion to march in ordinary time.

399. The even, or left-hand battalions, continue, during all this time, to march retiring, in ordinary time; the lieutenant colonel of each of these battalions will halt his battalion, and put it to the right about, after the odd battalion placed in the order of the line, on its proper right become its left (by retiring) shall have rejoined it; the left hand, or even battalions, will, then, in their turn, fire, by battalions, by word of command given by their respective lieutenant colonels; when they have loaded, after firing, their respective lieutenant colonels will face them again to the right about, and march them, retiring, in quick time, in order to rejoin the odd, or right-hand battalions; and when this is accomplished, the respective lieutenant colonels will order their battalions to take up the ordinary time.

400. The odd, or right-hand battalions, in their turn, will halt, front, fire, load and retire, as has been directed to be done by the even battalions; and so on, as long as it may be requisite to continue retiring, and firing.

401. In

* See Rules, Line, § 206.

See Rules, Battalion, § 176 and 177, where the above species of firing is practised by alternate companies, and wings, but by a different rule of retiring.

401. In firing, by battalions, retiring, the rank of the bearer of the colours, and the general directors, are not to resume their places in line, when the word, HALT, is given to their battalion, in order to stop its retreat, previous to firing; and they are not to face to the right about with their battalion, when it fronts.

402. The principle directed to be attended to in No. 376, in order to preserve the general connection and regularity of intervals between the battalions when firing advancing, must also, in the same manner, be followed in firing, generally, by battalions, retiring by alternate battalions in line.

403. The commander in chief will, by a roll of the drum, cause the firing to cease; and on this signal, the battalions will conform to the directions given in No. 375, in the case of firing advancing.

Article Eighth.

When a considerable line has to pass a defile in front.*

Passage du défilé en avant.

404. When the line is marching to the front, and meets with a defile which is to be passed through, the movement is to be executed in the following manner: the commander in chief seeing the line arrived near the defile, will halt it, and give the following orders, which are to be repeated by all the lieutenant colonels of battalions,

1. *The line will pass the defile to the front. (Passage du défilé en avant.)*

(Plate XXXIII. Fig. 1.)

405. The commander in chief will, immediately, proceed to the place of the battalion which is opposite to the defile, and will send an order to the lieutenant colonel of the battalion immediately on the right, and left, of that opposite to the defile, to cause their respective battalions to wheel forward, inwards, by subdivisions, that is, the battalion on the right, by subdivisions to the left, and the battalion on the left, by subdivisions to the right; and all the battalions towards the flanks of the line, will wheel, relatively, by subdivisions, in the same manner.

1 1 2

406. The

* See Rules, Line, § 204.—See Rules, Battalion, § 91.

406. The battalion situated opposite to the defile, will break inwards, by wheeling the subdivisions of the right wing, to the left forward, and those of the left wing, to the right into open column; the two subdivisions immediately opposite to the passage of the defile, will move forward twice the extent of the front of a subdivision, during the time that the others are wheeling forward to the left and right, and will be halted by their respective officers; the officer of the right subdivision will, immediately afterwards, order, *director to the left, (guide à gauche,)* on which the director of that subdivision will move to the left of the front rank of his subdivision; and the officer of the left subdivision will, at the same time, order, *director to the right, (guide à droite,)* on which the director of this subdivision will move to the right of the front rank of his subdivision.

407. These arrangements having been made, the commander in chief orders *,

2. *Column forward. (Colonne en avant.)*

This command having been repeated, the lieutenant colonels of battalions which have wheeled forward by subdivisions to the left, will order, *march by the right, (guides à droite;)* those of the battalions which have wheeled forward, by subdivisions to the right into open column, will order, *march by the left, (guides à gauche;)* and the commander in chief will, then, order,

3. *MARCH. (Marche.)*

408. Upon this word of command, briskly repeated, the two subdivisions situated opposite to the defile will step off in order to enter it, and will march abreast, regulating themselves by the two directors placed elbow to elbow, between the two subdivisions; the two columns will march towards each other; the corresponding, or meeting subdivisions of each column, will wheel, the one to the right, and the other to the left, in order to unite in rear of those already in the defile; and afterwards, by word of command, *director to the left, or, director to the right, (guide à gauche, ou, guide à droite,)* given by their respective officers, these directors will proceed to the left, and right of their subdivisions, which, then, march by their common centre.

409. The

* See Rules, Line, § 200, No. 6.

409. The subdivisions, thus, united into companies, will pass the defile with the regular cadenced step, regulating their dressing on the march, on the two directors placed in the centre, who are to march, side by side, or abreast, exactly in the track, and at subdivision-distance from the preceding directors.

410. The officers commanding subdivisions will march in front of the centre of their respective subdivisions.

411. If the defile becomes narrower, the subdivision officers will break off files, from the right flank, in the column of the right, and from the left, in that of the left; they themselves will occupy the places of their directors, who fall back to the centre rank; and the fourth rank man of each subdivision will, at the same time, post himself in the rear rank, behind the subdivision-officer and director. The subdivision-officers will, as soon as the ground admits of it, order the files in the rear, to the front, so as, always, to occupy the full breadth of the defile; and the subdivision-officers and fourth rank, or supernumerary rank-men, will resume their places, when all the files have moved up to the front *.

412. In proportion as the column clears the defile, the captains of companies will, in the right column, order their first subdivision to move up, and form company on the second; and in the left column, they will order their second subdivision to move up, and form company on the first: and the companies, thus, formed, and united, two and two, into a grand division, will continue to march by, having the directors in, the centre of the grand division.

413. Should the commander in chief deem it necessary to deploy, immediately, on clearing the defile, he will halt the head of the column when he sees a sufficient space intervening between it and the nearest entrance of the defile, for containing the whole of each column when formed in close column. He will cause the lieutenant colonels of battalions to be cautioned that they are to move up into
1.1.3: close.

* It may be proper to remark, that this disposition of the officers and non-commissioned officers of companies, supposes them to consist of five in the supernumerary rank. The captain makes the sixth, and these six constitute the above two files in the centre, led, each by an officer.

close column. The succeeding companies of each column will continue marching, and will be halted by the captains, respectively, commanding them, at the distance of three paces in rear of each other, two companies forming up into a grand division dressing by its centre. When the rear company of each column shall have taken post in the close column, the commander in chief directs the whole to deploy into line.

414. If the commander in chief sees it necessary to form the line fronting to the right, or left flank, and in such manner that one of the wings of the line rests at, or joins the defile, if it is the right, he will halt the two columns at the instant when the rear subdivision of the right column has cleared the defile; the right column will, then, *wheel to the right into line, (à droite en bataille,)* and the left column, will *form line to the right flank, (sur la droite en bataille,)* by marching on in rear of the right wing, and wheeling and dressing up into line by successive divisions*.

415. In order to form line fronting to the left flank of the march, the left wing wheels to the left into line, and the right wing will form line to the left flank, by the successive wheeling and dressing up of divisions.

416. If the defile should be opposite to the interval between two battalions, the whole of the battalion on the right, would wheel forward, by subdivisions, to the left, and the whole of the battalion on the left, would wheel forward, by subdivisions, to the right: the two columns, after thus breaking forward, inwards, would march towards each other, and when the leading subdivision of each would arrive at the distance of a company from the other, these two subdivisions would wheel, the one to the right, and the other to the left, in order to unite and enter the defile, abreast, as has been explained in this article.

417. If the defile should be opposite to the battalion on the right, or to that on the left of the line, the commander in chief would cause the whole line to wheel forward, by † companies, to the right, or to the left, if necessary, and put the whole in march, in order to pass the defile

* See Rules, Battalion, § 128.

† See Rules, Battalion, § 106.

defile in one column, with the right or left in front : and the leading company would march by the shortest line, towards the entrance of the defile.

Remarks on passing a defile.

Observations relatives au passage du défilé.

418. If the defile is passed in double column, and if it should be nearer to the right wing than to the left, or the contrary, it will follow that one of the two columns will be longer, or deeper than the other ; from this it will result, that the nearer the defile is to the centre of the line, the less time will be requisite for crossing the defile, and, afterwards, forming in line.

419. By the method pointed out in this article, each subdivision can (by breaking off files) be reduced to three in front, including the file formed by the subdivision-officer, the director and fourth rank man ; and, thus, the double column will be reduced to six in front.

420. Should the defile happen to become so narrow as not to afford a passage to six men in front, and if the passage is by double column, one of them must be halted, and follow immediately, in rear of the other, as soon as that rear has come up ; and if this circumstance can be foreseen, it will be more eligible to pass the defile in a single column, having the right, or left, in front.

421. When a single column passes a defile, with the right, or left, in front, immediately after passing, even in file, the direction may be prolonged to the right or left, and the line may be formed by files fronting, or forming successively ; or, companies can be formed, previous to forming line to the *right* or *left*, or to the *front of the march* ; or previous to forming the line, at right angles to the defile, either on the right or left of it ; or forming fronting the defile, by the previous application of the countermarch.

Article Ninth.

When a considerable line has to pass a defile in its rear.

Passage du défilé en arrière.

(Plate XXXIII. Fig. 2.)

422. When a line retiring meets with a defile which it must pass through, the commander in chief will halt it,

when near such defile, and cause it to face to the right about, or front, which being effected, he will order,

1. *The line will pass the defile in the rear, by filing to the rear, from the outer flanks of battalions, successively. (En arrière par les deux ailes, passez le défilé.)*

This order having been repeated, the lieutenant colonel of the battalion on the right will order, *The battalion will pass the defile, by wheeling to the right about, or countermarching to the right, from the right flank, (en arrière par l'aile droite, passez le défilé.)*

The lieutenant colonel of the battalion on the left will order, *The battalion will pass the defile, by wheeling to the left about, or countermarching to the left, from the left flank, (en arrière par l'aile gauche, passez le défilé.)*

423. The two battalions on the flanks, immediately, commence the movement, conforming to what has been prescribed in the *discipline of the battalion*; and when the leading flank of each of them has arrived opposite to the defile, they will enter together, and abreast of each other; the battalion from the right of the line will wheel by files to the left, and the battalion from the left of the line, will wheel, by files, to the right, in order to enter the defile; and if one of the corresponding battalions arrives at the entrance sooner than the other, it must wait till the other comes up, that both may enter together.

424. The following battalions towards the centre of the line will, successively, execute the same movement, that has been gone through by the battalion next to them towards the flanks; the lieutenant colonel of each of them will give the above order, according as his battalion is to countermarch from its right, or left flank, and so calculated, that the leading file of each battalion shall follow, at the distance of six paces, the rear file of the preceding battalion. The corresponding battalions of the two wings of the line, will enter the defile abreast, or side by side, as has been directed to be done by the two leading battalions*.

425. If the defile is sufficiently broad to admit of the march of a company marching abreast, subdivisions will be formed from file, in each column, on entering the defile; and these subdivisions united, will march abreast, conforming

* See Rules, Line, § 204,—See Rules, Battalion, § 92.

conforming to the directions laid down in No. 408, and following, of the preceding article, for passing a defile in front.

426. This movement will commence at the head of the double column, on a caution given by the commander in chief, or by the officer he appoints to conduct the column; and it will take place, successively, in proportion as the divisions of the columns marching in file, enter the defile.

427. The head of each column having cleared the defile, the subdivisions of each column will form companies, successively, by the directions laid down in No. 412 of the preceding article; and if the commander in chief deems it necessary to form the line fronting to the defile, he will order the left column to wheel to the left, and the right column to wheel to the right, halting each, at the instant when its rear division has entered on the direction of that of the head; the left column will *wheel to the left into line, (à gauche en bataille,)* and the right column *to the right into line, (à droite en bataille;)* or, one of them will countermarch, and the directors will, quickly, cover each other in their general file, after which the whole will wheel to the left, or right, into line.

Remarks on passing a defile in the rear.

Observations relatives au passage du défilé en arrière.

428. In this example, the defile is supposed situated in rear of the centre of the line; but if it should be otherwise, so that, for instance, there might be two battalions more to the right, than to the left of the defile, these two battalions would pass the defile first, in a single column; the head of the column formed from the left wing, would halt, when as far advanced as the entrance of the defile, and would step off again along with the head of the third battalion of the right wing, in order to enter the defile abreast of each other, in double column; and if, when in this order, the defile should become so narrow as not to admit of six files in front, one of the two columns must halt, in order to march off again, immediately in rear of the other*.

429. When

* When a line passes a defile in front, the right wing is, in the text, the *column* (for the word is applied to a line countermarching in file) of the right in all subsequent formations; but when a line passes

429. When the defile is situated in rear of the battalion on the right or left of the line, the commander in chief will cause the line to defile from one flank, only; and to effect this, he will direct the line to file *from the right flank, (par l'aile droite,)* or, *from the left flank, (par l'aile gauche,)* instead of ordering it to file along the rear *from both flanks, (par les deux ailes,)* towards the defile. This movement is to be commenced from the flank most remote from the defile, the battalion immediately before the passage being, always, the last to enter it.

Article Tenth.

Changes of front. (Changemens de front.)

430. Changes of front are executed by the mode of procedure prescribed for *formations to the front, on the leading division, (en avant en bataille;)* and for *formations fronting to the rear of the march, (face en arrière en bataille;)* as will be explained fully.

431. Let it be supposed, that the commander in chief deems it requisite to change front, perpendicularly, on the centre of the line, by throwing forward the left wing; he will place the company on the right of the fifth battalion perpendicular to the line, in the new direction to be given to the line, by the mode of proceeding pointed out in the *discipline of the battalion*, ordering afterwards,

1. *The line will change position on the fifth battalion, by throwing forward the left wing. (Changement de front sur le cinquième bataillon, l'aile gauche en avant †.)*

432. This

passes a defile in its rear, by filing from both flanks, as above, the left wing is the *column of the left*, till it enters the defile; when, being on the right of the column formed from the right wing, it changes its appellation of *column of the left*, or *column on the left*, to that of, *column on*, or *of the right*; and this is obviously proper, on account of the new direction in which it marches in respect to the other column. It is called *column of the left*, above, because it has not, in the description, entered the defile; and when the *column of the left* enters the defile, it is, relatively, termed, *column on the right*.

† See Rules, Line, General Changes of Position of a Line, No. 3. See Rules, Line, § 184—No evolution in Tactics is of more importance, excepting marching in line, than changes of front executed

432. This caution having been repeated, the commander in chief will send an order to the lieutenant colonel of the sixth battalion to form column, by wheeling forward, by companies, to the right; and this order is to be executed, equally, by the other two battalions to the left.

433. The commander in chief will, at the same time, order the lieutenant colonel of the fourth battalion to cause it to form column, by wheeling forward, by companies, to the left; and this is also to be done by the three battalions placed on the right of the fourth battalion.

434. The fifth battalion stands fast.

435. The commander in chief, on perceiving that the battalions on the right and left, have broke inwards, into open column, will send an order to the lieutenant colonel of the sixth battalion, to give the word, 1st, *Form line to the front, on the leading company when in the new direction, (en avant en bataille;)* 2dly, *The head of the battalion-column will break off to the left, (bataillon, tête de colonne à gauche).* He will direct the lieutenant colonel of the third battalion to order, 1st, *Form line in the new direction, fronting to your rear, (face en arrière en bataille;)* 2dly, *The head of the column will break off to the left, from the general column, (bataillon, tête de colonne à gauche.)* He will direct the lieutenant colonel of the fourth battalion to order, 1st, *The battalion will face to the left, (bataillon, par le flanc gauche;)* 2dly, *To the left* = FACE, *(à gauche;)* and he will direct the lieutenant colonel of the fifth battalion to order, 1st, *The battalion will change position to the front on the fixed right flank company †, (changement de front en avant sur le premier peloton;)* 2dly, *By companies, right half wheel, (par peloton, demi A DROITE.)*

436. During

cuted with rapidity and accuracy. Battles of the most decisive consequences have been lost, or gained, from either an omission, or skilful execution of this manœuvre. Had the Austrians, at the battle of Luthen, in the seven years' war, changed position, skilfully, on their centre, on perceiving the King of Prussia's attack directed against their left, the well-conceived designs of that sagacious monarch would not have been attended with the brilliant success which crowned the day. The evolutions of that day, drew the attention of Europe to Prussian Tactics.

† See Rules, Line, § 195, No. 1. § 184.

436. During these preparatory steps, the commander in chief will cause the eighth company of the fourth battalion to be placed in line on the new direction, at the distance of eight toises from the right flank of the fifth battalion, by the mode explained in No. 372 of the *discipline of the battalion*; commanding afterwards,

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

437. Upon this word, repeated with vivacity, the general movement commences.

438. The fifth battalion will execute the change of front as has been explained in the *discipline of the battalion* *.

439. The fourth battalion will also follow the directions laid down there, for *forming fronting to the rear*, (*face en arrière en bataille*), on its eighth company.

440. The battalions on the left will disengage, or break off, diagonally, to the front, from the general column, and will march towards the new line, and form on it, by the words of command stated above for *forming to the front on the leading company marched up to, and dressed on the line*, (*en avant en bataille* †.)

441. The battalions on the right will disengage their heads, or break off from the general column, to the rear; and will march to their respective positions in the new line, forming on it, by the words of command directed to be used above for *forming line fronting to the rear of their march*, (*face en arrière en bataille* ‡.)

442. If, on the supposition of a change of front on the centre of the line, the commander in chief sees it necessary to throw forward the right, and backward, the left wing, he would take, as the base of alignment, the eighth company

* See Rules, Battalion, § 124, 127, 159, 161, 162.

† Les bataillons de gauche déboiteront diagonalement en avant, et se porteront sur la nouvelle ligne de bataille par les moyens prescrits ci-dessus pour la formation *en avant en bataille*.—This paragraph refers, by the word *ci-dessus*, to No. 435.

‡ Les bataillons de droite déboiteront diagonalement en arrière, et se porteront sur la nouvelle ligne de bataille par les moyens prescrits ci-dessus pour la formation *face en arrière en bataille*. The word *ci-dessus* refers to No. 435.

pany of the fourth battalion ; and after placing that company in the new direction, he would order *,

The line will change position on the fourth battalion, by throwing forward the right wing, or flank. (Changement de front sur le quatrième bataillon, l'aile droite en avant.

443. The fourth battalion would change front to the left, on its eighth company, as has been explained in the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

444. The fifth battalion would break inwards by wheeling forward, by companies, to the right, and would form line fronting to its rear, on its right company, which the commander in chief, previous to the commencement of the movement, would take care to have filed into, and, accurately, placed in the new direction, at the distance of eight toises from the left flank of the fourth battalion.

445. The three battalions on the right, would break inwards, by wheeling forward by companies to the left from line into open column ; they would disengage their heads, or break off diagonally from the general column, to the front ; and would form, afterwards, to the front in line, on the leading company marched up and dressed on the new direction.

446. The three battalions on the left, would break inwards, by wheeling forward, by companies to the right into open column, they would break off, diagonally, from the general column ; and they would march to their respective situations in line, forming on the new direction, fronting to the rear of their march.

447. Changes of front on either flank of the line, are executed according to the same principles †.

448. If the change of position is to be effected on the extremity, or flank of the right wing, all the battalions, excepting that on the right, will break towards that battalion by wheeling forward, by companies, to the right, conforming, afterwards, to what has been prescribed in No. 440 of this article ; when the position is to be changed *to the rear*, on a fixed flank division, the directions given in No. 441 of this article are to be conformed to ; and when

VOL. I.

K K

the

* The references to the Rules and Regulations on the opposite page are equally applicable to the subject-matter in this page.

† See Rules, Line, § 183, General Changes of Position of a Line, No. 3. See Rules, Battalion, § 160, 159, 120, 121.

the front is to be changed to the rear by throwing back the whole line on a fixed flank division, the battalion on the right will execute the movement (by the echelon march of companies) as has been directed to be done in the *Discipline of the Battalion* *.

449. If the line is to change position on its left flank, by throwing forward, or throwing back, the whole of the line, on the fixed left flank division, all the battalions, excepting that on the left flank, will break inwards, by wheeling forward, by companies to the left, into open column, conforming to the directions given in the last number, for changing position, either to the front, or rear; and the battalion on the left will change front, in either case, (by the echelon march of companies), conformable to the directions given in the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

Remarks

“ * Si c'est sur l'extrémité de l'aile droite, tous les bataillons, hors celui de droite, rompront par peloton à droite, et se conformeront ensuite à ce qui a été prescrit ci-dessus No. 440; si l'on doit changer de front *en avant*, à ce qui a été prescrit No. 441; si l'on doit changer de front en arrière, le bataillon de droite exécutera son mouvement, comme il a été prescrit dans l'école de bataillon.”

The edition of 1791 of the French Tactics has in it several typographical errors, which are rectified in the edition of 1793. Both editions, however, have the expression, *en avant*, in number 448, the French of which is given under this note, in order to enable the intelligent military reader to perceive that *en avant* is an error of the press, and that it ought to be *en arrière*. The first clause of paragraph 448 directs what movements are to be gone through in order to change front to the right; and a change of front forward on a right or left halted division, is expressed in the French language of Tactics by, *en avant*. The reference to No. 440 (the French of which is given at the bottom of the page) clearly indicates this, which is fully explained in No. 619, and following ones, of the *Discipline of the Battalion*. The second clause of paragraph 448, by referring to paragraph 441 (the French of which is given at the bottom of the page) evidently shews, that a change of front to the rear is meant, being the opposite movement to that mentioned in the first clause.—*En avant*, therefore, in the second clause, is an error. It ought to be *en arrière*, otherwise the rule of formation in No. 441, will not apply to a change of front forward, on the right, or left. The concluding clause of No. 448 ascertains that the preceding clause means a change of front to the rear. The conclusion of the first clause of No. 449 shews also that *en avant*, in the preceding number, ought to have been *en arrière*, which is the expression translated. By an intimate consideration of the nature of this movement in French Tactics, the reader will be readily convinced of the justness of these remarks, accounting, it is hoped, sufficiently, for translating an expression directly the reverse of that in the original.

*Remarks on changes of front on a fixed division, flank, or central.**Observations relatives aux changemens de front.*

450. In changes of position to be made by several battalions, the company on the right or left flank of a battalion is to be taken as the basis of the alignment.

When the new direction is not perpendicular, or nearly so, to the original direction of the line, the battalion situated next to that on which the change of position is to be effected, is not to break off, diagonally, from the general column, to the front or rear ; thus, if the line is to change position on the fifth battalion, for example, by throwing forward the left wing, the sixth battalion is not to break inwards, by wheeling forward, by companies to the right, but it will execute its change of front, by the same words of command, and by the same mode of procedure, as the fifth. The fourth battalion will execute what has been prescribed in No. 435 of this article.

Supposing the two directions, as before mentioned, to form an angle less than a right one with each other, if the new direction passes through the extremity of the right, or left flank, the battalion situated immediately next to that on the flank, will conform to the directions given, according as the line changes position to the front or rear.

As soon as two battalions shall have been formed on the new line, the commander in chief can order the firing to commence by wings, companies, or independent files ; the lieutenant colonels will order the firing to commence in their respective battalions, as they, successively, form in line ; and the bearers of the colours will remain, during the firing, in front of the centre of their respective battalions, but the general directors are to resume their places in line.

*Change of position of two lines, on a flank, or central point of the first line.**Changement de front sur deux lignes.*

451. When two lines drawn up, one behind the other, are to change position to the front, or rear, perpendicularly, or obliquely, on the extremity of the right, or left wing, or on any other battalion whatever of the first line, this

movement is to be executed in the first, and second line, in the following manner :

When two lines change position, perpendicularly, forward on the right flank of the first line.*

Changement de front perpendiculaire en avant sur l'extrémité de l'aile droite de la première ligne.

(Plate XXXIV. Fig. 1.)

452. The commander in chief will direct the commandant of the second line to be cautioned, that the first line is to change front, perpendicularly forward, on the extremity of its right.

Movement of the First Line.

Mouvement de la première ligne.

453. The commander in chief, or officer appointed by him to command the first line, will wheel forward to the right, the company on the right of that line ; and he will then cause that line to change position *to the front (en avant)* on this fixed flank company, by the words of command, and modes of proceeding, prescribed in this article.

Movement of the Second Line.

Mouvement de la seconde ligne.

(Plate XXXIV. Fig. 1.)

454. The commandant of the second line, being made acquainted with the movement to be executed by the first, will go to the company on the right of his second battalion, wheeling it forward to the right, so as to stand at right angles to its original direction ; and he will, then, cause the line to execute a central change on this company, by throwing forward all to the left of it, in the original line, by the mode of proceeding prescribed in this article.

When two lines change position backward, perpendicularly, on the right flank of the first line.

Changement de front perpendiculaire en arrière, sur l'extrémité de l'aile droite de la première ligne.

455. The commander in chief will, quickly, cause the commandant of the second line to be informed that the first line

* See Rules, Line, § 209.

line is going to change front to the rear, at right angles, on the extremity of its right*.

Movement of the First Line.

Mouvement de la première ligne.

(Plate XXXIV. Fig. 2.)

456. The commander of the first line will establish the company on the right of that line in a perpendicular direction to that in which it is standing. This company will, then, stand at right angles to the rear of the line, and fronting to the left of it. He will, then, cause the line to change front to the rear, on this flank fixed company, by the words of command and mode of proceeding already detailed.

Movement of the Second Line.

Mouvement de la seconde ligne.

(Plate XXXIV. Fig. 2.)

457. The commander of the second line having been informed of the nature of the movement which the first is to execute, will, immediately, detach an aid-de-camp, who is to take post at the distance of the length of a battalion, and an interval, from the right flank of the second line, and in the direction of its alignment, in order to mark off the point where the right of the second line is to rest in line; when this point is, thus, ascertained, the commander will order the whole of this line to wheel forward, by companies, to the right, into open column; he will, afterwards, direct it to form in line, parallel to the first, by the words of command and mode of proceeding prescribed for *forming a column*, with the right in front, *in line fronting to the rear of its march*, (*face en arrière en bataille*,) with this only difference, that at the word, MARCH, which puts the line in motion, the leading battalion is to move

k k 3

in

* See Rules, Line, § 210. This is the evolution which General Saldern terms "*throwing one's self on the enemy's flank*." The line is wheeled into open column. The companies in file wheel, on a moveable pivot, on arcs of concentric circles. The companies file flower and flower, in proportion as they are nearer to the lesser arc in the quadrant. When the general wheel is, thus, effected by all the column in file, the whole *front* into open column, and march on the flank of the enemy. See Saldern's Tactics, page 268 to page 274.

in column straight to the front, marching towards the aid-de-camp, and will be halted at the distance of a company from his situation : this battalion will, then, *form in line fronting to the rear of its march (face en arrière en bataille)* by the means prescribed in the *Discipline of the Battalion*; and all the other battalions will diverge, or break off from the general column, diagonally, towards the rear, marching in column, towards their respective places in the new direction, and *forming in line, fronting to the rear of their march, (face en arrière en bataille.)*

458. Changes of position to the front, or rear, on the extremity of the left fixed flank, are executed on the same principles.

When two lines change position, perpendicularly, on a fixed central point of the first line, by throwing forward the left wing.

*Changement de front perpendiculaire l'aile gauche en avant, sur le centre de la première ligne *.*

459. Each line is supposed to consist of eight battalions.
(Plate XXXV. Fig. 1.)

460. The commander in chief having directed the commandant of the second line to be informed of the nature of the movement to be executed by the first, will, himself, proceed to the right company of the fourth battalion †.

Movement of the First Line.

Mouvement de la première Ligne.

461. The commander in chief will order the company on the right of the fourth battalion, to be wheeled to the right, so as to stand perpendicular to the front of the line ; and will, then, order a central change of front to be executed

* See Rules, Line, § 208.

† It is "*cinquième bataillon*" in the text, but as in the volume of plates and corresponding description, the movement is made on the right company of the fourth battalion, we have taken above, the fourth, instead of the fifth battalion, in order that the plate description of it, and detail in this page, may correspond. This prevents the necessity that there would, otherwise, have been for altering the plate, and making the change on the right flank of the fifth battalion. In No. 462, *sixth* has been altered to *fifth* battalion, as a corresponding adaptation of the point on which the change is effected in that line.

cuted on this company, by throwing forward the left wing and backward the right, by the words of command and detail of movement already explained.

Movement of the Second Line.

Mouvement de la Seconde Ligne.

462. The commandant of the second line having had the nature of the movement to be executed by the first, communicated to him, will proceed to his fifth battalion, and direct the company on its right to be wheeled forward to the right, perpendicular to the direction of the line as it then stands; and he will, then, cause a central change of front to be executed on this company, by throwing forward the left wing, by the words of command and directions already detailed.

463. The same principles regulate a change of front on the centre of the first line, when the right wing is thrown forward, and the left back; the commander of the first line will take, as the base of alignment, the company on the left of the fourth battalion of that line; and the commander of the second line will take the company on the left flank of the third battalion of the second line, as the basis of the alignment.

464. Acting on the same principles, changes of front can be accomplished on any other battalion of the first line, that may correspond with the views of the commander; and either the right, or left wing, may be thrown back, or forward, according to circumstances.

When two lines change position forward, obliquely, or less than a right angle, on the right flank of the first line.

Changement de front oblique, en avant, sur l'extrémité de l'aile droite de la première ligne.

465. The commander in chief proceeds to the right flank of the first line, and will determine, or choose a point in front of the left, which will be the point of direction on the left of the new position that the line is to form on.

(Plate XXXVI. Fig. 1.)

466. The adjutant-major of the first battalion, will, at the same time, place himself, on an intimation given by the commander in chief, in front of, and close to the right hand file of this battalion, facing to the left; he will
march

march fifty paces along the front rank, halt, and face to the front ; he will, then, counting the paces he takes, march straight to the front, in ordinary time, perpendicular to the front of his * battalion, and the commander in chief will halt him, at the instant when he covers in, or is between him and the point of direction on the left of the new position ; when this is effected, the adjutant-major remains steady in his place, and the commander in chief having been informed of the number of paces which the adjutant-major has marched to the front of his battalion, in order to arrive on the new direction, will, immediately, direct the commandant of the second line to be informed of the nature of the movement which the first is to execute ; and also, of the number of paces which the adjutant-major of the battalion on the right has taken to the front.

467. Let it be supposed that this number may be sixty paces †.

Movement

* See Rules, Battalion, echelon, page 195, Nos. 7 and 8, where this rule for wheeling bodies parallel to each other is adopted, with the exception that the measure here is taken on the perpendicular of a right angled triangle, and there, on an arc of a circle, making the extent of eight files, radius.

† Plate XXXVI. Fig. R.

When two lines change position obliquely on a fixed flank, or central division, the distance between them, after the change is effected, will be less than the original distance ; and the difference between these distances will increase in proportion as the angle formed by the new and old directions, increases, till the distance intirely vanishes, on wheeling both lines into co-incidence. The distance between the lines prior, and subsequent to a change of front within a right angle, will be in the constant proportion between the hypotenuse and perpendicular of a right angled triangle. The hypotenuse will be always represented by the original distance separating the lines, and the perpendicular, by the distance after the change of front. To exemplify this, let the case of changing position on the right flank, to the front, be taken. To save the trouble of projecting an explanatory figure, the two *heavy drawn lines* ($a a$) and ($a c$) have been added to figure R, Plate XXXVI. ($a a$) the hypotenuse of the right angled triangle ($a c a$), is the original distance between the lines ; and ($a c$) the perpendicular of the triangle, represents the distance after the oblique change of position. This perpendicular is let fall from the right flank of the first line, on the second line ; and the base of the triangle is the line intercepted between the extremity of the perpendicular, and the right flank of the second line. The line ($a c$) may be readily found by the Pythagorean proposition :

The

Movement of the First Line.

Mouvement de la première ligne.

468. The commander in chief will direct the company on the right flank of the first line to be wheeled to the right, into the new direction, having, previously, placed two camp-colour-men in that direction; and he will, then, cause the whole of the line to change position forward, on the placed flank company, by the words of command and process already detailed.

Movement of the Second Line.

Mouvement de la seconde ligne.

469. Intimation having been made to the commandant of the second line, of the species of movement to be gone through by the first, and also of the number of paces which the adjutant-major of the battalion on the right of the first line has marched forward at right angles to the front of that battalion, he, the commandant, will proceed to the right

The square of $(ab) = - - - 50 = 2500$
 Twice this will = squares $(ab)(bc) = 5000$ Logarm. $\frac{1}{2}$) 3.6989700
 Square root of 5000 $(ac) = 70.71$ 1.8494850
 From the square of (aa) , which is always known, subtract the square of (ac) and the square-root of the remainder will give the distance (ac) between the lines. A trigonometrical statement will also bring it out. Subtract the angle (bac) , formed by the new and old lines, from the right angle (aab) , and the $\angle(aac)$ will remain.— In the right angled triangle (aca) , we have all the angles, and the constant side, or hypotenuse, (aa) , in order to find the perpendicular (ac) , or distance between the two lines, after changing position: therefore, as radius: $(aa) :: \text{SINE}, a$ (at the right flank of the second line), to ac , the distance of the lines.

As Radius = 90°	-	-	-	= Logarm.	10.0000000
Is to (aa) here = 100	-	-	-	= ditto.	2.0000000
So is $S \angle a$ = here 45°	-	-	-	= ditto.	9.8494850

N. B. The angle of 45° was taken because the figure gave that angle.		11.8494850
		10.

To $(ac) = 70.71$ paces	= Logarm.	1.8494850
-------------------------	-----------	-----------

After the oblique change of position is accomplished, the second line must march to the rear, to be truly placed, the difference between (aa) and (ac) . In the field, however, this must be done by *coup d'œil*.

From having the angle $c a b$ given, there is another mode of finding ac , by calculation; but the above mode is the most obvious and ready.

right flank of the second line, directing the adjutant-major of the first battalion of the second line, to place himself close to, and in front of the right hand file of his battalion, to march fifty paces along the front rank, and to march, afterwards, sixty paces, at right angles to the front of the battalion, in order to ascertain the parallel direction of the second line.

470. The adjutant-major of the battalion on the right of the second line, having accomplished what has been just explained, the commander of the second line will, quickly, direct the company on the right of the line to be wheeled forward into the new direction, as in the case of the first line; and he will, afterwards, cause the whole of this line to change position, forward, on the fixed right flank company.

When two lines change position backward, obliquely, or in less than a right angle, on the right flank of the first line.

Changement de front oblique en arrière, sur l'extrémité de l'aile droite de la première ligne.

(Plate XXXVI. Fig. 2.)

471. The commander in chief will proceed to the right of the first line, will choose, in rear of the left, the point of direction on the left of the new position into which the line is to be thrown back; the adjutant-major of the first battalion will, at the same time, place himself, on a caution given by the commander, behind, and close to the rear rank man of the right hand file of his battalion, marching fifty paces along that rank, and halting, fronting to the rear; he will, then, march in ordinary time, perpendicularly to the rear, counting his paces; and the commander in chief, placed on the right, will halt him at the instant when he intercepts, or covers in the distant point of direction and correction, on the left of the new position which he has chosen.

472. The commander in chief will, then, cause the nature of the movement about to be gone through by the first line, to be communicated to the commander of the second line, and also the number of paces which the adjutant-major of the battalion on the right of the first line has taken perpendicularly, to the rear of that battalion; in order that
the

the adjutant-major of the battalion on the right of the second line may act similarly.

Movement of the first Line.

Mouvement de la première ligne.

473. The commander in chief will establish the company on the right of the first line, in the new direction; he will, at the same time, place two markers in front of this company; and will, then, cause the whole line to execute a change of position to the rear, on this placed flank company.

Movement of the second Line.

Mouvement de la seconde ligne.

474. The second line is to act, in all respects, similarly to the first.

When two lines change position backwards, or forward, obliquely, or in less than a right angle, on the fixed left flank of the first line.

Changemens de front obliques, en avant, et en arrière, sur l'extrémité de l'aile gauche de la première ligne.*

475. Oblique changes of front on the left flank of the line, are executed on the same principles that have been laid down as applicable to changes of position, in an oblique direction, on the right flank of the line.

When two lines change position, obliquely, or in less than a right angle, on a fixed central point of the first line, by throwing forward the left wing.

Changement de front oblique, l'aile gauche en avant, sur le centre de la première ligne.

(Pl. XXXV. Fig. 2.)

476. It is supposed that the commander in chief has determined that this oblique change of front, by throwing forward the left wing, and the right backward, is to be

* See Rules, Second Lines, page 361, Nos. 13 and 14. § 195, No. 1.

be effected on the company on the right of the * fourth battalion, placed in the new direction.

477. The commander in chief will proceed to the right of the fourth battalion of the first line, ascertaining the point of direction on the left of the new position, and in front of it, which is to regulate the direction to be given to the line; and the adjutant-major of the fourth battalion will, on being so ordered by the commander in chief, lay off the angle formed by the old and new lines, according to the method explained in No. 466.

478. The commander in chief will, then, cause the commander of the second line to be informed of the nature of the movement to be executed by the first line; and, likewise, of the number of paces which the adjutant-major of the fourth battalion of the second line ought to mark off, at right angles to the front of his battalion, in order to ascertain the parallelism of the second line.

Movement of the first Line.

Mouvement de la première ligne.

479. The commander of this line, will order the company on the right of the fourth battalion, to be wheeled forward to the right, into the new direction, as has been explained in No. 468; and he will, afterwards, cause the whole of this line to execute a central change of position on this fixed company, by throwing forward the left wing.

Movement of the second Line.

Mouvement de la seconde ligne.

480. The commander of the second line having been informed of the species of movement to be executed by the first ;

* It is, "*cinquième bataillon*," in the original of both editions, whereas in the volume of plates, and annexed description of the figure, the change is laid down on the first company of the *fourth battalion*. In order, therefore, to establish a correspondence between the plate, the description of it, and the above detail of the movement, we have substituted "*fourth*" in lieu of "*fifth*" *battalion*. This expedient was easier and more simple than altering, or drawing a plate, corresponding with a change of position made on the *fifth battalion*, and right flank of that battalion.

first; and of the number of paces for establishing the parallelism of the two lines, will cause the direction of the second line to be laid off by the rules detailed in No. 466.

481. The adjutant-major of the fourth battalion of the second line, being established on the new direction, the commander of that line will order the company on the right of this battalion to be wheeled forward to the right, the requisite number of degrees for forming it in the new direction, as in the similar case of the first line; and he will, afterwards, cause the whole of the second line, to execute a central change of position, on this fixed company, by throwing forward the left wing*.

When two lines change position, obliquely, or in less than a right angle, on a fixed central point of the first line, by throwing forward the right wing.

Changement de front oblique, l'aile droite en avant, sur le centre de la première ligne.

482. The commander in chief will proceed to the left of the fourth battalion of the first line, choosing in front of the right wing, the point of direction on the right of the new position which he is to give to the line: and he will establish the adjutant of the fourth battalion, on the new direction, by the following mode of procedure.

483. The adjutant of the fourth battalion will, on being directed so to do by the commander in chief, move to the front of, and close to the non-commissioned officer who is on the left of the front rank of the battalion; he will, there, face to the right, march fifty paces along the front rank, halting then, and facing to the front; he will, afterwards, march, in ordinary time, at right angles to the front, counting his paces; and the commander in chief will halt him at the instant when he is between him and the point of direction on the right of the new position.

484. The commander in chief will direct the commander of the second line to be informed of the nature of

* In No. 481, the "*fourth*" battalion is translated instead of the "*fifth*," for the reason stated in the note at the bottom of the last page.

the movement about to be executed by the first ; and of the number of paces which the adjutant of the fourth battalion has marched, perpendicularly, to the front, in order to arrive on the new direction.

Movement of the first Line.

Mouvement de la première ligne.

485. The commander in chief will order the company on the left of the fourth battalion to be wheeled forward to the left, into the new direction ; and he will, afterwards, cause the whole of the first line, to change position on the wheeled-forward left company, by throwing the right wing forward, and the left backward.

Movement of the second Line.

Mouvement de la seconde ligne.

486. The commander of the second line having been made acquainted with the movement that the first line is to execute, and, also, with the number of paces measured to the front in order to determine the direction of the lines ; will, according to the directions laid down in No. 483, direct the adjutant of the fourth battalion to lay off the angle which the new and old directions of the second line are to form with each other.

487. The adjutant of the fourth battalion being placed on the new line of direction, the commander of the second line, will cause the company on the left of that battalion to be wheeled up to the left into the new direction ; and he will, afterwards, direct the whole of the second line to change position on this placed company, by throwing the right wing forward, and the left wing backward.

Remarks on the Changes of Front of two Lines.

*Observations relatives aux changemens de front sur deux lignes *.*

488. The commander of the first line must take care not to give the word MARCH to that line, in order to
put

* “ Un jour de bataille, on peut suppléer à son infériorité par le choix du terrain, et par une bonne disposition, par l'ordre de bataille

put the first line in general movement, until he perceives that the second line is ready to commence the corresponding change of front; and the commander of the second line will put that line in general movement at the same time that he observes that the first line is in motion for effecting the change of position.

489. In right angular changes of front, the base of alignment of the second line ought to be taken at the distance of a battalion, and a battalion-interval, more to the right, or more to the left, than that of the first line.

490. In oblique changes of front, being changes less than a right angle, whatever division the first line changes position on, as a base for the new alignment, the second line will effect its change of front on the exactly corresponding, and opposite division.

491. Each line is to change front on a halted, or fixed pivot, conforming to the directions which have been fully detailed for the changes of front of one line; excepting in the cases pointed out, relative to the second line, in Nos. 457 and 458 of this article.

492. If, in changes of front, the new directions of both lines are not parallel to each other, it will result, either that the second line will intersect the first, or that one flank will be nearer to, or farther from its corresponding flank of the first line than it ought, a thing which it becomes of the utmost importance to prevent: now, as the means which have been detailed in this article, for establishing the parallelism of the two lines (and which their simplicity has rendered more eligible than, and preferable to methods more geometrically accurate, but longer in their operation, and more complex), may produce a small difference between the respective angles which the first and second lines form with the new direction, occasioning a considerable want of parallelism between extensive lines, the commander of the second line will, with the utmost care observe, that the lines run

L 1 2

parallel,

taille oblique, c'est-à-dire, en refusant une aile à l'ennemi, et en renforçant celle qu'il veut attaquer.

C'est ainsi que Frédéric-le-Grand, aux batailles de Rosbach et de Lissa, a pris en flanc, et vaincu, des armées quatre fois supérieures à la sienne."

See, *Le Militaire expérimenté* du Général Wempffen, page 133.

parallel, as soon as he has two, or three, battalions formed in the new direction. If he perceives that the direction of the second line is not parallel to that of the first, he must rectify the defect of parallelism, immediately, and quickly, by advancing, or throwing back the colours of the battalions already formed in line; the battalions which are marching towards the line forming on, are, when arrived on the line, to align on the colours already dressed; and it will be easy, by these means, to ensure the parallelism of the two lines.

493. Oblique changes of front diminish the interval between the two lines, and this diminution will be more considerable, as the angle formed by the original, and new direction, approaches to a right angle. If subsequent to the change of position, the commander in chief deems it necessary to re-establish the interval between the two lines, he will send an order, to that purpose, to the commandant of the second line, who will, on that, order the line to face to the right about, march, and resume its proper distance from the first *.

494. In changes of front, either oblique, or perpendicular, the second line, after the change, will outflank the first on one of the wings, and will be outflanked by the first, on the other wing; if the commander in chief sees it requisite to have the flank of the second line situated, perpendicularly, behind that of the first, he will send an order to that purpose, to the commandant of the second line, who will, on that, cause the line *to file from line into column, to the rear, from the right (or left) of companies, (par peloton en arrière à droite (ou à gauche),* and march, in column, in order to bring the flank of the second line, perpendicularly, behind that of the first. If the proximity of the enemy does not afford time for the execution of this movement, the flanks of both lines can be made, thus, to correspond, by marching the outflanking battalions, from one line to the other.

Article

* See note, page 380.

Article Eleventh.

Echelon Movements of the Line.

Ordre en échelon *.

495. A position parallel to that of the enemy may be rendered oblique to it; or a position forming an angle with that of the enemy, may be rendered parallel, by throwing the line into echellons. Echellons may be formed from the right or left of the line, either by regiment, or by brigade, as will be explained.

First supposition †.

Première supposition.

496. The line being supposed parallel to that of the enemy, the commander in chief, intending that the line shall advance in echellons, from the right flank, will order,

1. *The line will advance in direct echellons of regiments (or of brigades) from the right flank, with a parallel distance of (so many) paces between the echellons. (Echellons par régiment (ou par brigade), à (tant) de pas ‡.)*

(Pl. XXXVII. Fig. 1.)

This order having been repeated, the commander in chief gives the word,

L 1 3

2. *The*

* See Rules, Line, Echelon Movements of the Line, page 323.

See Rules, Battalion, Echelon, from page 195, to page 218.

† See Rules, Line, § 197, where direct echellons advance from a flank. When the Prussian line has not a sufficient number of battalions, to have the refused wing, in an echelon-attack, at a sufficient distance from the enemy, the attack is made in echellons of three ranks; and the rear rank of the refused wing is formed into additional battalions, two deep.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, page 393.

‡ See Rules, Line, § 198,—200, No. 1, 4, and 7.

If the English, at the battle of Fontenoy, had attacked in direct echellons, instead of attacking with a column formed from the centre, the flanks of which became more and more exposed as it advanced, their victory would have been certain; as their cavalry would, from the intervals, have completed the constant and progressive impression made by the echelon-attack.

2. *The line will march off in successive echellons, from the right flank. (En avant par la droite, formez les échellons.)*

497. This order having been repeated, the colonel of the regiment or the commandant of the brigade, on the right of the line, will order,

- 1st, *The battalion will advance, (bataillon en avant);*
2dly, MARCH, (*marche.*)

498. Upon the first word of command, the rank of the bearer of the colours, and the two general directors of each of the two battalions which are to constitute the first echellon, will move out, six paces, to the front.

499. On hearing the second word of command, which is to be briskly repeated, these two battalions will step off together, to the front.

500. The battalion on the right of the first, or leading echellon, being that which regulates the march of all the succeeding echellons, it is essentially necessary that it should march directly perpendicular to the front; and, consequently, the commander in chief, when he may deem it requisite, will cause camp-colourmen to be placed behind this battalion, in order, thus, to ensure the accuracy of the direction.

501. The following echellons towards the left of the line, will march off, successively, when the echellon, immediately on the right, has acquired the proper distance of the echellons from each other; and each echellon is to step off, by word of command given by the superior officer of it, who, to ascertain the distance of echellons, will direct the number of paces taken to the front, by the echellon immediately on his right, to be counted.

502. A non-commissioned officer belonging to the company on the right of each echellon, will post himself, perpendicularly, behind the file on the left of the preceding echellon, and he is to march covering that file, exactly, in the track of it, and dressing in the line of his own battalion. By this means, the lieutenant colonel of the battalion on the right of each echellon, will readily perceive, whether or not his battalion preserves, or loses its parallelism to the preceding battalion, or inclines behind it.

503. The

503. The battalion on the right of each echellon must be enjoined to preserve the flank interval, or distance, which ought to subsist between it, laterally, and the battalion on the left of the preceding echellon. The other battalions of each echellon, will march in line with that on the right, each preserving its interval from the next battalion on the right.

504. Great echellons are formed from the left flank, on the same principles. The battalion on the left of the first, or leading echellon, will be the regulating battalion.

505. The ordinary, or usual parallel distance, between echellons, will be one hundred paces; but this distance may vary, and be more or less, according to the views of the commander in chief *.

506. Should the commander in chief judge it eligible to reform the line from direct echellons, marching as has been explained, he will order the commander of the leading echellon to halt, and dress it, in general alignment. This commander having halted the first echellon, will proceed to its right flank, ordering the bearer of the colours, and the general directors of the battalion on the right, to face towards him. He will align them, as nearly as possible, in a parallel direction to the original line; and will, afterwards, order, 1st, *Colours, and general directors, cover on the line, (drapeaux, et guides généraux sur la ligne)*; 2dly, *Directors advance, and cover on the line, (guides sur la ligne)* †.

507. These orders having been repeated by the lieutenant colonels of the battalions composing the first echellon, and executed conformable to the directions given in Nos. 362, and 364, each of them will, immediately command; *by the centre = DRESS, (sur le centre = alignement.)*

508. During this time, the following echellons will continue to march to the front; and will be halted, successively, by their respective commanding officers, when within four paces of the line to be formed on ‡.

509. The

* See Rules, Line, § 200, No. 1.

† See Rules, Line, Echellon Movements of the Line, No. 4.

‡ See Tactique Prussienne, from page 376, to page 380. Where
an

509. The second echellon having been halted, the superior officer of it will, immediately, order, 1st, *Colours and general directors, cover on the line, (drapeaux et guides généraux, sur la ligne)*; the bearer of the colours, and the two general directors of each battalion, will face to the right, and dress, quickly, in the alignment of the colours of the first echellon; this being done, the superior officer of the second echellon will command: *Directors advance, and cover on the line, (guides sur la ligne)*; and each lieutenant colonel, seeing the directors of companies established on the line, will order, *By the centre = DRESS, (sur le centre = alignement.)*

510. The following echellons will be dressed on the line, successively, by a similar procedure.

511. Each superior officer commanding an echellon, will order, *Directors = to your PLACES, (guides = à vos places)*, as soon as his echellon is aligned; but the bearer of the colours, and the two general directors of each battalion, are not to resume their places, till the commander in chief, on perceiving the last echellon aligned, gives the order, *Colours to your places, (drapeaux à vos places.)*

512. The first echellon being aligned, the commander in chief may direct it to commence firing by battalions, by wings, by companies, or by independent files; the following echellons commence firing, in their respective turns, when established on the line; in this case, the two general directors of each battalion resume their places in line, but the bearer of the colours is not to fall back into his situation, till the commander in chief, after the line is completely formed, has given the order, *Colours, to your places, (Drapeaux, à vos places.)*

513. The

an enemy must be dislodged from a post by means of fire, oblique attacks will be inefficient. Direct attacks where one part of an army is refused, while the other attacks, have produced the use of echellons. They throw a line oblique to an enemy into direct echellons of attack, or the reverse. The Prussians form their echellons within musquet shot of each other; but make this distance depend on the distance at which the refused wing is to be from the enemy. They form echellons by the echellon-movement of companies. They, generally, increase the battalion-intervals, previous to forming oblique echellons, to remedy the inconvenience of doubling.

513. The commander in chief can, equally, cause the line to retire by direct echellons ; and, to effect this, he will order,

1. *The line will form direct echellons of regiments (or of brigades), at the parallel distance, one from the other, of (so many) paces. (Echelons par regiment (ou par brigade) à (tant) de pas.)*

This order having been repeated, the commander in chief gives the word,

2. *The line will retire by direct echellons, formed from the right (or left) flank. (En retraite par la droite (ou par la gauche) formez les échelons.)*

(Pl. XXXVII. Fig. 2.)

514. This second command having been repeated, the commandant of the first echellon will put it to the right about, and march it off to the rear.

515. The commandant of the second echellon will face it to the right about, when the first has marched, nearly, two thirds of the distance which is to intervene between the one and the other ; and he will cause his echellon to step off, at the moment when he perceives the first echellon at the requisite distance.

516. Each of the succeeding echellons will, in its turn, conform to the directions that regulate the movements of the second echellon.

517. When the commander in chief deems it necessary to reform the line, he will direct the commandant of the first echellon, to halt, front, and dress it in general alignment.

518. The following echellons continue to march, are halted, successively, by their respective commandants, when they have passed about four paces beyond the line ; and will be fronted, afterwards, (*feront ensuite demi tour à droite*), and dressed in line, as already detailed.

*Second Supposition *.*

Deuxième supposition.

519. The direction of the line being supposed to form an angle with that of the enemy, when the commander in chief

* See Rules, Line, § 199, § 195, § 200, No. 2.

chief deems it necessary to throw the line into echellons parallel to the line of the enemy, this movement can be executed by regiments, or by brigades, as follows.

520. If the direction of the enemy's line is such, that the right flank, or wing, is nearer to the enemy than the left, the commander in chief will proceed to the right, and thence ascertain, by following the directions laid down in No. 465, a new direction which he may judge to run parallel to that of the enemy.

521. The adjutant-major of the battalion on the right, on receiving an order from the commander in chief, will lay off the angle which the echellon is to form with the present direction of the line, according to the directions laid down in No. 466.

522. Let it be supposed that the adjutant-major has marked off 60 paces, as the measure of the angle formed by the two directions.

523. The commander in chief will send an order to the commandant of each brigade, to direct each brigade, or each regiment of each brigade, to change position forward on the right company, in the angle given by 60 paces measured off by the adjutant-major, to the front of the battalion on the right of each brigade, or regiment, according as the echellon is to consist of a brigade, or of a regiment *.

524. If the echellons are to consist, each, of one brigade, the commandants of brigades will, as soon as they have received orders from the commander in chief, proceed, each, to the right of his brigade, and will direct the adjutant-major of the battalion on the right, to mark off

* Under the old regime, there were two regiments in a brigade. At present, there are six battalions, or three regiments, in a brigade. Three battalions are termed a *demi-brigade*, an appellation more frequently used than that of regiment.

In addition to notes under "*Chequered retreat*," it is remarked here, that the even, or left hand Prussian battalions commence the chequered retreat; unless some of them cover artillery or strong ground. The battalions nearest to the enemy form flanks *en potence*; and heights are occupied in retreating. Two lines are three hundred paces from each other. The first line retires through the second; and the second, in its turn, through the first, by a chequered retreat. They pass through each other, as in the passage of lines.—See *Tactique Prussienne*, from page 380 to page 384.

off the requisite number of paces for ascertaining the angle, informing him, also, of the nature of the movement to be executed.

525. The adjutant-major of each brigade is, immediately, on this, to conform to the instructions given in No. 466.

(Plate XXXVIII. Fig. 1.)

526. Each commandant of brigade, will align the company on the right of his brigade, on the adjutant-major stationed on the new direction; and he will, then, cause the whole brigade to change position, forward, on this placed company.

527. If the echellons are to consist of regiments, that is, of one regiment, each, the colonel of the regiment will receive his orders from the commandant of the brigade such * regiment belongs to; the colonels will proceed to the

* 527. "Si les échellons ne doivent être que d'un regiment, les *chefs de régiment* en recevront l'ordre du *chef de leur brigade*; et se porteront aussi-tôt au bataillon de droite de leur regiment, &c. &c." The reader is to recollect, that "*chef de regiment*" means the colonel of a regiment, and that a colonel may be a "*chef de brigade*" if he is one of the oldest colonels of those in each brigade. The *chef de brigade*, in this case, discharges the duty of a general of brigade. From this it appears, that a *chef de regiment*, and a *chef de brigade*, may be, actually, one and the same person, acting in different capacities according to circumstances.

"Toutes les brigades seront composées de deux demi-brigades, ou de six bataillons.

Les plus anciens régimens seront chefs de brigades.

Chaque brigade fera commandée par un général de brigade.

Le plus ancien chef de brigade de la brigade, commandera la brigade, en l'absence du general de brigade."

"Reglement provisoire sur le service de infanterie en campagne, ann. vii. pag. 4, de la formation des brigades."

"Subordination graduelle."

"En tout ce qui concerne le bien du service et l'honnêteté publique, le gouvernement ordonne, que le soldat obeisse au caporal; le caporal au sergent; le sergent au sergent-major; le sergent-major au sous-lieutenant; le sous-lieutenant au lieutenant; le lieutenant au capitaine; le capitaine au chef de bataillon; le chef de bataillon (who is the lieutenant colonel) au chef de brigade (the colonel); le chef de brigade au general de brigade; le général de brigade au général divisionnaire."

"Reglement concernant le service intérieur, la police, et la discipline de l'infanterie, an ix. 1801."

N. B.—These

the right of their regiments, respectively, directing the adjutant-major of the battalion on the right of each regiment, to mark off the requisite number of paces for ascertaining the new direction; the colonels will wheel forward the company on the right, into the new direction marked by the adjutant-major; and they will, then, direct the regiment to change front, forward, on this placed company.

(Pl. XXXVIII. Fig. 2.)

528. Should the commander in chief see it necessary to close up the formed echellons to the front one, nearer than they stand after changing position from line into echelon, he will give an order to that effect; the commandant of each of the echellons, will, immediately, march it off, halting it at the directed distance from the echelon immediately preceding; and the first echelon is to stand fast.

529. The commandant of the echelon will dress it immediately on halting it, ordering, as soon as this is accomplished, *The battalions will advance, (bataillons en avant).*

530. The

N.B.—These two volumes, from which these notes are extracted, contain much useful matter relative to the internal regulations, police, and economy, of the armies of the French Republic. Should the translator find leisure, he may, probably, give an English edition of these small works, which enumerate duties applicable to *any army*.—See *Note, Preface—respecting these Works*.

“ Une grande valeur animoit le *chef de brigade* dupleffés: il desiroit depuis long temps trouver l'occasion de se signaler. Il ne peut voir arriver de sang froid l'ennemi, et son courage impatient lui fait oublier l'exécution des ordres qu'il à reçus; il se porte à quinze pas en avant *de son regiment*, et fait sonner la charge.”

“ Relation des Campagnes du General Bonaparte en Egypte et en Syrie, par le general de division Berthier, &c.”

This extract shews that the “*chef de brigade*,” and the colonel of a regiment, are one and the same person. It was necessary to give the reader defined ideas of these military titles expressive of the same rank, having higher rank, according to circumstances. Of late, instead of *regiment*, the term “*demi brigade*” has been used, but there is this difference, that, *regiment* is formed of two battalions, and *demi brigade* of three battalions. A colonel commands either. The *chef de demi brigade* is a colonel; and the *chef de brigade*, is the senior colonel who, occasionally, acts as a general of brigade, in the absence of that officer.

530. The leading echellon will, afterwards, march, on a caution given by the commander in chief; the commandants of each of the following echellons, will, each, march off his echellon at the instant he perceives that the preceding one has stepped off; and the echellons will preserve the same distance from each other.

531. The battalion on the right of the leading echellon is to be the *regulating battalion*; and markers are to be placed, at right angles in its rear, to ensure the accuracy of its march perpendicular to its front. The other battalions of this echellon are to march, accurately, in line with the right hand regulating battalion*.

532. The battalion on the right of each of the following echellons, is to march at the prescribed distance from that which precedes it; a non-commissioned officer from the supernumerary rank of this battalion, will place himself in the rear of, and covering the file of the colours of the battalion on the left of the preceding echellon; he will march, accurately covering this centre file, and, also, in the line of the front rank of his own battalion, in order that if the echellon should incline to the right or left of the parallel direction, the commandant of it, may readily perceive such deviation, or lateral inclination. The other battalions of each echellon, will regulate their march on the battalion on the right of their respective echellons.

533. If the left of the original line, should be nearer to the line of the enemy, than the right, echellons may be formed from the left, on the same principles.

Remarks on Echellons formed, so as to render a Line oblique to that of the Enemy, parallel to it, in Echellon-march.

Observations relatives aux Echelons formés en partant d'une direction oblique à celle de l'ennemi.

534. The greater the angle formed by the echellons with the original direction, or in other words, the more the outer flanks of the echellons are thrown up, the more

VOL. I.

M m

the

* See Rules, Line, Echellon Movements, page 323, Nos. 2, and 8.

the echellons will be, in part, doubled behind each other ; and the more space there will be between each.

535. Although echellons formed in this manner, are doubled more or less behind each other, nevertheless, it becomes easy to reform the line in various manners *.

Article Twelfth.

Chequered Retreat of the Line.

Retraite en échiquier †.

536. The chequered retreat is to be executed by the even, and odd, or second and first, or left and right battalions, alternately, as will be explained,

(Plate XXXIX. Fig. 1.)

537. To execute this movement, the commander in chief orders,

1. *The line will retire by the chequered retreat of one hundred paces. (Retraite en échiquier à cent pas.)*

This order having been repeated, the commander in chief will give the word,

2. *The odd (or even) battalions will commence the movement. (Bataillons impairs (ou pairs) commencez le mouvement.)*

538. The second command having been repeated, the lieutenant colonels of the battalions that are to begin the movement, will, immediately afterwards, order, 1st, *Battalion, to the right about* = FACE, (*bataillon, demi-tour* = *a droite*;) 2dly, *The battalion will retire, (bataillon en avant.)*

The commander in chief will, then, order,

3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

539. Upon this word of command, which is to be repeated briskly, by the lieutenant colonels of the battalions that have faced about, these battalions step off to the rear, in ordinary time, and march perpendicular to the line, by the means pointed out in the *Discipline of the Battalion*; and they will be halted by their respective lieutenant colonels, when they have retired the requisite number of paces.

540. Each

* See Rules, Line, § 199, No. 1.

† See Chequered Retreat of the Line, page 353, Part IV.

540. Each lieutenant colonel of a battalion, having halted his battalion, will face it to the right about, and align it parallel to the first line, without occupying his attention with dressing it on the other battalions.

541. As soon as the second division of battalions has fronted, the commandant of the first will order,

1. *Battalions, to the right about* = FACE. (*Bataillons, demi-tour* = à droite.)

2. *The battalions will retire.* (*Bataillons en avant.*)

These orders having been repeated and executed, he will order,

3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

542. The first line will retire by the directions given above, will pass through the intervals of the second, will march one hundred paces beyond it, will halt, face about, and align as has been explained above.

543. The second line become the first, will, in its turn, go through the same movement, and so on, alternately.

544. The lieutenant colonels of battalions of the first line, are, always, to direct the bearer of the colours to conduct his march through the interval of the battalions of the second line, and to march, exactly, for the middle of such interval. The bearers of the colours are to reckon the prescribed number of paces from this interval, towards the rear.

(Plate XXXIX. Fig. 2.)

545. When the commander in chief sees it necessary to reform the line, he will order a roll of the drum, after the first line has marched off to the rear, and this ruffle, or roll, is to be, quickly, repeated by the drums of all the battalions of this line; the lieutenant colonels of the battalions of the first line will, then, halt their respective battalions when in the intervals of the second, fronting and aligning them; and the commander in chief can then, if requisite, cause the line to take a general alignment.

Remarks on the chequered direct Retreat.

Observations relatives à la retraite en échiquier direct.

546. If the bearers of the colours are as well trained as they ought, in the cadence and length of the step, the

battalions, after retiring the same number of paces, will be very nearly in proper line. If, however, one of these battalions should be, evidently, to the front, or in the rear of the others, the lieutenant colonel of such battalion is to cause it to fall back, or move up to its proper line.

547. The commander in chief can order the retreating distance between lines to be one hundred paces, but never less.

Article Thirteenth.

Passage of Lines.*

Passage des Lignes.

548. When the commander in chief intends that the second line shall remain posted, and that the first shall retire and pass through it, he will order the first line to retire; and when it arrives within fifty or sixty paces of the second line, he will order,

1. *The retiring line will turn to the left, (or right) on the march, from line into file, and wheel from the left (or right) of companies, by files, to the rear, to pass through the second line. (Par le flanc gauche (ou le flanc droit) passez la ligne.)*

This order having been repeated, the lieutenant colonels of battalions, will, immediately afterwards, order, 1st, *Battalion, left (or right) turn, (Bataillon, par le flanc gauche (ou le flanc droit);* 2dly, *By files, from the right (or left) of companies, to the right (or left) wheel, (par peloton par file à droite (ou à gauche.)*

The commander in chief will, then, order,

2. *Quick = MARCH. (Pas accéléré = marche.)*

549. Upon this word, smartly repeated, the battalions of the first line will execute the movement prescribed in the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

550. The commander in chief must have cautioned the commandant of the second line, relative to the nature of the movement about to be gone through by the first line; and the latter on perceiving the near approach of the first line,

* See Rules, Line, Passage of Lines, paragraph fourth, page 358.

line, will, in sufficient time not to interrupt the march of the first line, order,

1. *Form subdivisions in close order. (Doublez les Sections.)*

551. The lieutenant colonels of battalions of the second line will, immediately afterwards, order, 1st, *Second or left subdivisions, will face to the right. (Secondes sections, par le flanc droit)*; 2dly, *To the right = FACE, (à droite.)*

The commandant of the second line will, then, order,

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

552. At this word, smartly repeated, the second subdivisions double in rear of the first, conforming to the directions given in the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

553. As soon as the first line has passed through the second, the lieutenant colonels, without waiting for any general order, will direct the subdivisions in the rear to move up, and form companies.

554. The commander in chief will halt the first line, when he may judge that it has marched to a sufficient distance in rear of the second; he will front it, and after arranging the pivot flank of the column in the direction which he intends giving to the line, he will wheel up the column *to the left (or right) into line, (à gauche ou à droite) en bataille.*

555. When the commander in chief, instead of causing the first line to retire, deems it more eligible that the second line should advance, and pass through the first, he will send an order to the commandant of the second line, to direct that line to advance*.

556. The second line advances marching in line, and when arrived at the distance of fifty or sixty paces from the first, the commander of the second line will order,

1. *Form subdivisions in close order. (Doublez les sections.)*

This order having been repeated, the commandant of the second line will give the word,

2. *Second subdivisions = MARCH. (Secondes sections = marche.)*

557. Upon this word, smartly repeated, the second subdivisions will double close behind the first, conforming to the directions given in the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

M m 3

558. The

* See Rules, Line, Passage of Lines, paragraph second and fifth.

558. The commander of the first line, on perceiving that the second line has gone through that movement, will order,

1. *The first line will pass through the second, by filing to the rear, from the right (or left) flank of companies.— Par le flanc droite (ou par le flanc gauche) passez la ligne.*

This order having been repeated, the lieutenant colonels of the battalions of the first line, will, immediately afterwards, order, 1st, *The battalion will face to the right (or to the left ;)* (*Bataillon par le flanc droit (ou par le flanc gauche ;)*) 2dly, *To the right (or left) = FACE,* (*à droite (ou à gauche ;)*) 3dly, *From the flanks of companies, by files, to the right (or left) wheel ; (par peloton, par file à droite (ou à gauche.)*

The commandant of the first line will, then, order,

2. *Quick = MARCH. (Pas accéléré = marche.)*

559. At this word, smartly repeated, the battalions of the first line are to conform to the directions laid down in the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

560. The battalions of the first line, having passed through the second, will march with their leading flanks of columns well aligned ; the lieutenant colonels, the adjutants-major, and adjutants will attend to this, and see that the companies preserve their accurate distances, and battalion-columns, their intervals from each other ; these intervals and distances are to be taken from the left, if the companies have filed from the right, and from the right, if the companies have filed from the left*.

561. As soon as the first line has passed through the second, the commandant of the second orders,

1. *Form*

* See Rules, Line, Passage of Lines, paragraph third and second. The formation of lines is deduced from the Roman system of Tactics. They formed their armies in three lines, Hastati, Principes, and Triarii; independent of the Velites, or light armed troops which commenced the battle. The intervals in one line were covered by the divisions of the next. If the first line was defeated, it fell back into, or through the intervals of the ranks of the second.—Both renewed the attack. If overcome, they both retired into the intervals of the Triarii, when the three lines attacked “*compressis ordinibus*.” Hence the phrase, “*Ventum est ad Triarios*,” expressive of a last effort. These intervals in the lines of the ancients were requisite, on account of the depth of their formation. Modern lines have their intervals covered by the next line, on the principle of the Roman formation. See on this head, the 6th chapter of Polybius, and Adams’s Roman Antiquities, pages 378, 383.

1. *Form companies, (Doublez les sections.)*

This order having been repeated, the commandant of the second line will direct,

2. *Second subdivisions = MARCH. (Secondes sections = marche.)*

562. Upon this order, briskly repeated, the second subdivisions move up into line, conforming to the directions given in the *Discipline of the Battalion*.

563. The second subdivisions having formed up into line on the first, the commandant of the second line will halt it, unless the commander in chief has given him orders to advance farther to the front.

Article Fourteenth.

When the column of march forms an oblong hollow square, six deep, in order to oppose cavalry.*

Disposition contre la cavalerie.

564. Let it be supposed that a column of four battalions with the right in front, is marching in column of companies, and that this column is in danger of being harassed by the hussars, or cavalry of the enemy. The commander in chief will order the column to close up to subdivision distance, and then to form grand divisions from a halt, after which he will give the word,

Prepare the column against cavalry.

Colonne contre la cavalerie.

(Plate XL. Fig. 1.)

565. After this command has been repeated, the commander in chief will cause the column, a second time, to close up to subdivision distance.

566. The lieutenant colonels of the three rear battalions, will, respectively, halt their leading grand division, at about the length and a half of a company, from the rear of the battalion which precedes theirs, respectively.

567. During the time that these arrangements are executing, the guns of the regiment, on an order being given to that purpose by the commander in chief, are to be posted on

* See Rules, Line, § 207. See Rules, Battalion, § 178, No. 10.

on the two flanks of the column, opposite to the intervals of the battalions they are relatively attached to ; and the tumbrils will, each, follow its corresponding field-piece.

568. The column being, thus, prepared, the commander in chief will put it in march, either as a column of route, or as a column of march with a cadenced step ; he will, if necessary, cause a certain number of the rear ranks of the grand divisions, to move out at the distance of fifteen or twenty paces from the two flanks of the column, and to fire, as fast as they can load and take aim, at the hussars and cavalry of the enemy when they approach within the range of their pieces ; these riflemen, or marksmen, are to carry on their fire and march, at the same time, along with the column, nearly opposite to the grand divisions they, respectively, belong to ; and the guns are to march between them and the column, at the distance of eight or ten paces from the column.

569. The column will march in this order as long as possible ; but, if the commander in chief perceives the enemy approaching in force, and preparing to charge, he is to halt the column ; he is to direct the riflemen to be called in to join their respective grand divisions, and he will, then, order,

1. *Form the square. (Formez le carré.)*
(Plate XL. Fig. 2.)

570. This order having been repeated, the officer commanding the second grand division of the battalion at the head of the column, will order it to close up to within one pace of the supernumerary rank of the leading grand division ; and the leading, or first battalion grand division, stands fast.

571. The captain commanding the battalion grand division immediately preceding that of the rear of the column, will order his grand division to close up to within one pace of the supernumerary rank of the grand division immediately in his front ; and the captain commanding the battalion rear grand division of the column, will cause it to close up, in like manner, to the grand division before it, or in other words, to the last but one of the rear of the column.

572. The adjutant-major and adjutant of the leading battalion of the column will proceed, a little in front, face
towards

towards the directors of the left, and right, of the first grand division of the column, and will, quickly, align the directors of the left, and right, of the following grand divisions on the directors of the left, and right, of the rear grand division ; and the adjutant of the rear battalion will caution the directors of the rear grand division to stand fast, causing them to raise their firelocks, perpendicularly, before, or in front of the middle of the body.

573. The directors being aligned, the commander, in chief will order,

2. *By subdivisions, right and left wheel into line. (Par section à droite et à gauche en bataille.)*

574. This order having been repeated, the officers of subdivisions that are to wheel, will place themselves in front of the centre of their respective subdivisions, cautioning them relative to the wheel about to take place.

The commander in chief will, then, order,

3. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

575. Upon this order, smartly repeated by the lieutenant colonels, and captains commanding grand divisions, with the exception of the captains commanding the two front, and two rear grand divisions, the two subdivisions on the right of each, will *wheel to the right into line, (à droite en bataille)*; and the two subdivisions on the left of each grand division, excepting those mentioned, will *wheel to the left into line, (à gauche en bataille.)*

576. The officers of subdivisions having halted their subdivisions, will place themselves on the line ; those of the two subdivisions on the right of the centre of each grand division will order, *Left = DRESS, à gauche = alignement ;*) and those of the two subdivisions on the left of the centre of each grand division, will order, *Right = DRESS, (à droite = alignement.)*

577. The two grand divisions at the head of the column are to stand fast ; the two grand divisions forming the rear face of the square, *will face to the right about (feront demi-tour à droite,)* by word of command from their respective captains ; and the supernumerary rank of each will move into the rear of, or behind the front rank of their grand division, which front rank is now become the third, or rear rank, from having faced about.

578. If there is a company of grenadiers at the head of the

the column, and another in the rear of it, they are to be stationed by subdivisions on the flanks of the two first, and two last grand divisions of the column, so as to cover them.

579. The guns are stationed immediately in front of the intervals of the battalions; and these intervals are closed up with the tumbrils, or waggons *.

580. The square being formed, the commander in chief will order,

4. *Directors, to your places. (Guides, à vos places.)*

581. Upon this word, to be repeated by the lieutenant colonels of battalions, the directors situated in front of the exterior subdivisions of the two flanks, or sides of the square, must resume their places, as if the whole were in line; and the directors of the subdivisions which have wheeled *to the right into line, (à droite en bataille)*, are to move to the right of their respective subdivisions.

582. The captains of the two front, and two rear grand divisions forming the front and rear faces of the oblong square, are also to resume the same situations which they occupy in line; and the captains of the two rear grand divisions are to post themselves in the third, or rear rank of their grand divisions, which rear rank, from having faced about, has become the temporary front rank.

583. The commander in chief, the superior officers, the adjutants-major, and adjutants, as also the drummers and musicians, are to occupy the interior of the square †.

584. Should

* The Prussians deem a hollow square weak, if only one company in depth. They form them simply: the 4th and 5th companies close to each other. All the other companies face about. The companies move into square by a continued wheel on a moveable pivot.—The sixth and seventh form the left flank; the second and third the right flank, and the first and eighth the rear face. This square marches with two sides in line, and two in file. See Saldern's Tactics, page 159.

† The above hollow square is more readily formed, and possesses more security and strength than the hollow square which General Saldern forms from a line of battalions. The formation is only three deep. A grand division placed before the front, and rear faces, constitutes front and rear guards. The guards throw their flanks into a right angle, in order to flank the square. Flanking parties of subdivisions are posted, at equal distances, eight or twelve paces from the flanks of the square. The flanking parties at the angles,

584. Should the commander in chief see it necessary to direct the square to fire by independent files, he will order,
1. *The square will fire by independent files. (Feu de deux rangs.)*

585. The lieutenant colonels of battalions having repeated this command, the general in chief, immediately afterwards, orders, *Subdivisions within the square, support = ARMS. (Sections intérieures, l'arme = au bras.)*

586. The interior subdivisions are to support arms, on which the lieutenant colonels of battalions are to order, *Exterior subdivisions = READY. (Sections extérieures = armez.)*

The commander will, then, order,

2. *Commence independent file-firing. (Commencez le feu.)*

587. At this word, repeated by the lieutenant colonels of battalions, the subdivisions forming the four faces of the oblong square, are to fire by independent files, and the fire is to commence from the right of each subdivision. The grand division in front of the front-face of the square, and the grand division in rear of the rear face of the square, are also to fire by independent files, commencing their fire from the right of each company.

588. The sub-divisions within the square will remain at supported arms, and they are not to fire.

589. Should the fire of the artillery, and that of the exterior subdivisions, prove insufficient ; and should the enemy advance in order to charge, the commander in chief will order,

1. *The interior subdivisions will close up to the subdivisions in their front. (Sections intérieures, serrez en masse.)*
(Plate XL. Fig. 3.)

590. Upon this word of command, repeated by the lieutenant colonels of battalions, the supernumerary ranks of the exterior subdivisions of each side face, are to move behind the interior subdivisions. The supernumerary rank of the exterior, or outer grand division of the front and rear faces of the square, are also to move to the rear of the interior, or inner grand division.

The

gles, are in the form of a right angle. The marching changes of direction, and reduction from oblong to square, and the reverse, are movements of a very complex description. The French square is, in all respects, preferable.—See Saldern's *Tactics*, page 304.

The commander in chief, is, then, to order,

2. MARCH. (*Marche.*)

591. Upon this word of command, to be smartly and loudly repeated by the lieutenant colonels of battalions, the inner subdivisions, as also the inner grand division of the front and rear faces, are to move up to within one foot of the rear rank of the subdivisions, and grand division, immediately, in their respective fronts.

592. The charge made by the enemy having been repulsed, the commander in chief, to cause the fire to cease, is to order a roll, or ruffle of the drums. On this signal, the firing is to cease, and the exterior subdivisions will load and shoulder.

593. If the order of march is to be resumed, the commander in chief orders,

1. *Form grand divisions.* (*Formez les divisions.*)
(Plate XL. Fig. 4.)

594. The lieutenant colonels of battalions having repeated this order, will, immediately afterwards, direct, 1st, *The flankfaces of the square will face to the left, and right.* (*Bataillon par le flanc gauche, et le flanc droit.*) 2dly, *Inwards = FACE,* (*à gauche et = à DROITE*); --- 3dly, *Subdivisions, by files, to the left, and right wheel,* (*par section, par file à gauche, et à droite.*)

595. At the first caution, the officers of the interior and exterior subdivisions of the two flank faces, are to caution their respective subdivisions, that they are to face, as ordered.

596. The captains of the two grand divisions forming the front face, are to caution them to stand fast.

597. The captains of the two grand divisions forming the rear face of the square, are to caution these grand divisions, *that they are to face to the right about,* (*qu'elles devront faire demi-tour à droite.*)

598. At the second word of command, the inner and outer subdivisions of the right face of the square, are *to face to the left* (*feront à gauche*); and those of the left face of the square, *are to face to the right,* (*feront à droite.*) The two grand divisions forming the rear face, *are to face to the right about,* (*feront demi-tour à droite.*)

599. At the third caution the officers of the subdivisions of the two flank faces of the square, are to caution their
respective

respective subdivisions relative to the movement about to be executed.

The commander in chief must, afterwards, order,

2. MARCH*. (*Marche.*)

600. Upon this word of command, smartly repeated by the lieutenant colonels of battalions, the subdivisions of the right face will wheel their heads, by files, to the left, and those of the left face will wheel their heads, by files, to the right; the two inner subdivisions of each grand division are to march towards each other, in order to unite, and are to be halted by their respective officers; the outer subdivisions will follow the rear file of the interior subdivision of their grand division, and will be halted by their respective officers at the instant when the files of the grand division cover, accurately, at proper file-distance. The captain commanding the grand division will, then, order, 1st, *grand division*, (*division*); 2d, FRONT, (*front.*)

601. During the time that grand divisions are, thus, forming, those of the head, or that constituted the front face, are, by word of command from their respective captains, to resume subdivision distance between themselves and the grand division following, or next to them, respectively; the two grand divisions forming the rear face stand fast; and the rear grand division will resume its proper distance, after the column is put in march.

602. If subdivisions of grenadiers flanked the angles, they are to resume their situations at the head, and in the rear of the column, during the reduction of the square into column of grand divisions, at half company-distance.

603. The column being reformed, the commander puts it in march, by the words of command, and mode of proceeding prescribed; and he will, again, order out marksmen, or flankers, in order to keep the enemy at a distance,

VOL. I.

N N

and

* These squares, in the presence of cavalry, are always formed; they are marched readily, and line is formed, promptly, from them, to the flanks, front, or rear. “Bonaparte reconnoit la position (*des Mamlouks*) et forme l’armée. Elle étoit composée de cinq divisions; chaque division forme un carré qui présente à chaque face, six hommes de hauteur (*six deep*); l’artillerie est placée aux angles; au centre sont les équipages et la cavalerie. Les grenadiers de chaque carré forment des pelotons qui flanquent les divisions, et sont destinés à enforcer les points d’attaque.”—Campagnes de Bonaparte en Egypt, et en Syrie, par le général de division Berthier.

and in check. The battalion-guns are to march opposite to the battalion-intervals.

Remarks on the formation of the hollow square, as a defence against the attack of cavalry.

Observations relatives à la disposition contre la cavalerie.

604. The angles of the square must be covered with the limbers of the field pieces; if there are subdivisions of grenadiers stationed at the angles, they will take post behind the limbers; and if there should be no grenadiers attached to the column, men taken from the rear rank of the inner subdivisions of the square, would occupy the angles in lieu of grenadiers.

605. If, notwithstanding the fire of the artillery and small arms, the enemy should charge in order to break the square, the exterior subdivisions would keep up their fire till the enemy approached very near to them; they would, then, charge bayonets on their ground; the inner subdivisions would make ready; they would, front rank standing, fire on the cavalry close to them, taking a steady aim at the dragoons; they would then, without moving, charge bayonets; and the ranks would support each other in a firm steady attitude, calculated to sustain the shock.

606. Two, or four battalions in line, threatened with being turned, or surrounded, might form the square as here directed; by forming from line, a column of grand divisions, at subdivision-distance, on the centre grand division, with either the right, or left, in front.

607. If a column consisting of several battalions in close column, should be pressed, and menaced with an attack by the cavalry of the enemy, a species of solid square might be formed as follows*.

608. The two leading grand divisions would stand fast; the two rear grand divisions would face about, and all the others would face outward, or to the right, and left; the front grand division, the rear grand division, the three files on the right, and the three files on the left of each of the other grand divisions, would fire by independent files.

609. A

* See Rules, Line, § 189.

609. A column formed from one battalion, menaced with an attack of cavalry, must, always, form the solid square in this manner*.

When regiments are to pass a reviewing general in ordinary time, and are to pay military honours†.

Ordre dans lequel les régimens devront défilér.

610. The commander, to effect this, causes the column to break to the right, or left, and will afterwards order,

The column will pass in review. (Pour défilér.)

611. After this order has been repeated, the drums and musicians of regiments will take post at their respective heads.

612. The commander in chief will put the column in march with a cadenced step, and supported arms. He will direct the column to march by that flank on which the personage to whom military honours are to be paid, is situated.

613. Regiments are to march past with an interval of forty paces between each.

614. When the head of the column has arrived within about fifty paces of the person to whom military honours are to be rendered, the lieutenant colonel of the leading battalion will order it to carry arms, and the music to commence playing.

615. When the drummers and musicians of the first regiment have passed, the drum-major will cause them to draw up some paces clear of the column, beyond it, and opposite to the person to whom honours are paid; the music continues playing till the rear company has passed; it, then, ceases playing, and with the drums, will follow the rear of the regiment it is attached to.

616. All the battalions of the column are to carry arms, on receiving the word from their respective lieutenant colonels, as they arrive, relatively, within fifty paces of the person to whom honours are rendered. When the rear division has passed the same number of paces beyond this
N n 2 person,

* See Rules, Line, § 189.

† See Rules end of Part III, Inspection or Review.

person, the battalion is to be ordered, again, to support arms.

617. When the band of the first regiment ceases playing, that of the succeeding regiment will commence; when the drums and band of the second regiment have passed, they are to occupy the situation quitted by those of the first regiment; they will remain there, and continue playing, till the rear division of their regiment has passed; they will, then, follow in the rear of the regiment they belong to; and the bands of music and drummers of all the following regiments, are to act similarly.

618. The commanders of brigades* will pass at the head of their brigades, four paces in front of the field-officers (*officiers superieurs*;) and the aid-de-camp of such commandants is to be on their left.

619. The colonels of regiments pass at the head of their regiments, four paces in front of the officer commanding the first division; and the colonels have on their left, the lieutenant colonel or chief of battalion, (*Chef de Bataillon*.)

620. The lieutenant colonel of the second battalion will pass, four paces in front of the officer of the leading division of the battalion.

621. If the personage receiving military honours is situated on the left, the commandants of brigades, and colonels of regiments, are to pass on the left of their aid-de-camp, and lieutenant colonel; by which means these officers, respectively, will be between their aid-de-camp, or lieutenant colonel, and the reviewing general, when they pass in ordinary time.

622. The adjutant-major of each battalion will pass on the opposite side, to the personage to whom honours are rendered; the adjutant-major is to be in a line with the leading division, at the distance of six paces from the flank he is on; and the adjutant will be similarly situated on the flank of the rear division.

623. The

* When "*Chef de Brigade*" is opposed to "*Colonel de Regiment*," the former seems to imply a colonel with the rank of a brigadier-general, as he commands a brigade. Regiments are now chiefly applied to cavalry. A demi-brigade conveys nearly the same idea as a regiment, being the term frequently used to express the word regiment.

623. The captains of companies are to pass in ordinary time, at the distance of two paces in front of the centre of their companies.

624. All the other officers, and non-commissioned officers, are to march past in the situations assigned to them in the open column in march *.

625. The soldiers and directors will carry, or hold their heads direct to the front, in passing. The field officers, officers of superior rank, and officers commanding divisions, are to throw back the shoulder a little, and to look steadily in passing, at the personage to whom military honours are paid.

626. The bearers of the colours remain in the ranks when passing.

627. The commander of the column must, previously, detach two aids-de-camp, or two mounted officers, who are to post themselves at the distance of fifty paces in front of the head of the column, one behind the other; they will face towards the directors of the right, or of the left of the column, according as the person to whom honours

* What the accounts from Paris, termed *Bonaparte's Reviews*, were nothing more than general parades which he held, *twice a month*, in the *Place de Garoufel*. They were conducted on the principles above detailed. The translator of this work gave some account of one of these Parades, in one of four letters published in the *Sun* and *True Briton*, in November 1802, after he returned from France, through Holland, in order to ascertain some circumstances relative to the state of discipline in garrison-towns. The importance of mathematical and engineering knowledge to an officer, has been mentioned in different notes attached to this work. This is exemplified in the instance of Bonaparte. At the siege of Toulon, it became necessary to place a battery on a commanding height of very difficult access. To effect this, required a knowledge possessed by engineers. Bonaparte, ever the foremost in the ranks of ambition, whatever might be the object, by an ingenious and ready application of mechanical powers, mastered the difficulty, and, thus, attracted the notice of Dugommier, who, immediately, brought him forward. Women, both good and bad, ever had, and ever will have, an influence in society. To Madame Beauharnois's interest with Barras, Bonaparte owed the command of the army of Italy. His good fortune and daring ambition have done the rest; and Providence, for the punishment of mankind, or for other wise purposes, has placed him in a situation surely not merited by his virtues:—for a full account of which we refer, particularly, to Sir Robert Wilson's Book.—See *Note, Preface*.

nours are paid, is situated on the right or left flank of the column; and they are to remain in their situations till the rear of the column has passed the general.

628. If the column is composed of a considerable number of battalions, the commander in chief can march it as a column of route marching at ease. When each battalion arrives within fifty paces of the personage before whom the column is passing in order to pay military honours, the lieutenant colonel of such battalion will order it to form, and close up ranks, to resume the cadenced march, and to carry arms. When the rear of the battalion has passed the same distance beyond the reviewing general, the lieutenant colonel will direct it to march at ease, in column of route.

629. If the general-officer commanding the line, is of inferior rank to, or under the orders of the general to whom military honours are to be rendered, such general officer will pass, four paces in front of the commandant of the leading brigade.

Military honours paid to the Holy Sacrament, or consecrated Host.

Honneurs au Saint Sacrement.

630. If a body of men is halted in line, at any time when the consecrated Host approaches towards them, the commanding officer will order arms to be presented. He will, then, order, *kneel*, (*genou à terre*;) on which the drums will beat—to the field*.

631. If the corps is marching, the commanding officer will halt it, and wheel it into line, so as to make front to the consecrated Host. He will, then, order arms to be presented, and the corps to kneel.

632. On receiving the word, *kneel*, (*genou à terre*;) the three ranks are to assume the position directed to be taken by the front rank when firing.

633. Should

* “*Les tambours battront aux Champs* ;” in the French service, “*le premier*,” or, “*aux champs*,” beats to indicate that some particular detachment is to march. “*Le second*,” or, “*la générale*,” puts the whole army in motion. With us, the beat termed “*the general*,” indicates a march: and the next, called “*the assembly*,” directs the troops to fall in, ready to march off.

633. Should the body of men consist of a regiment, or battalion, all the officers, not only captains of companies, but the officers also in the supernumerary rank, must salute with their swords; the bearers of the colours must salute with the colours, at the same time that the troops present arms; and they are to kneel, also, along with the general body.

634. All the non-commissioned officers, whether covering serjeants, or belonging to the supernumerary rank, and, likewise those attached to the guard of the colours, are to present arms, and kneel, at the same time, that the general body kneels*.

635. The colonel will take post at the distance of six paces in front of the centre of his regiment, and each lieutenant colonel, at the distance of six paces in front of the centre of his battalion; they will face towards the consecrated Host, after giving the word, *Kneel*, (*genou à terre*;) they must salute with their swords, and kneel, afterwards, if they are on foot.

636. The adjutants-major and adjutants, stationed in rear of the wings they respectively belong to, are to salute, and kneel at the same time that the battalion kneels to which they are attached.

637. When the consecrated Host is passing, the officers, non-commissioned officers, and soldiers, are to bow their heads.

638. The consecrated Host having passed, the commander of the troops will direct the drums to cease beating, and he will order, *Attention*, (*garde à vous*.) The officers, non-commissioned officers, and soldiers, will raise their heads.

639. The commandant of the troops will, immediately, order, *Rise*, (*debout*.)

640. Upon this word of command, the officers, non-commissioned officers, and soldiers, are to rise up. The non-commissioned officers and soldiers are to resume the position

* The edition of 1792 has in it this religious military ceremony. The latest edition, that of 1793, omits it, for the best of all possible reasons, because there was no religion in France. We translate it here, in hopes that the French army will again revert to a sense of religion, the very best foundation of discipline in any country.

position of presented arms. The officers and bearers of the colours will keep, the former, the points of their swords, and the latter, the point of the spear of the colours, lowered, or in the saluting position, until the commandant gives the word, *Shoulder = ARMS*, (*portez = vos armes.*)

641. When the corps has risen from the kneeling attitude, the commandant will order arms to be shouldered.

The edition of 1792 concludes thus :

*“ Given out at Paris, October first 1791.” Signed,
“ LOUIS ;” and under, “ DUPORTAIL.”*

The Republican edition omits this conclusion.

END OF VOL. I.





Rules and regulations for the field exercise and manoeuvres of the French
Infantry, issued August 1, 1791 with explanatory notes and ill.
references to the British, and Prussian systems of tactics ...
Bd.: 1

(1803)

Bamberg, Staatsbibliothek -- R.mil.o.86-b(1
urn:nbn:de:bvb:12-bsb11765928-8